

12.1.1

Unit Overview

“I’m for truth, no matter who tells it.”

Text	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley
Number of Lessons in Unit	28

Introduction

In the first unit of Module 12.1, students are introduced to the skills, practices, and routines of close reading and evidence-based writing and discussion, and engage regularly in the critical analysis of narrative texts and practice of narrative writing techniques. Throughout the module, students learn, practice, and apply narrative writing skills to produce a complete personal essay suitable for use in the college application process.

In this unit, students read *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* as told to Alex Haley, an autobiographical account of the life and struggle of Malcolm X. Students analyze the text to determine how the author develops central ideas over the course of the text through the use of style, content, and narrative techniques. Additionally, students begin to examine the structure of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* in preparation for writing their own personal narratives in the form of college essays. Students also analyze how narrative techniques can be used to contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

In addition, students are asked to begin the process of drafting a narrative essay in this unit. Students examine various narrative techniques in order to provide a deeper understanding of how to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences.

There are two formal assessments in this unit. In the Mid-Unit Assessment, students produce a written response to a prompt that asks them to determine the author’s purpose and analyze how the structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text. For the End-of-Unit Assessment, students produce a written response to a prompt that asks them to analyze how three key events in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* interact to develop one or more central ideas in the text.

Literacy Skills and Habits

- Read closely for textual details
- Annotate texts to support comprehension and analysis
- Analyze the impact of style and content on the text
- Engage in productive evidence-based discussions about text
- Independently develop questions for further textual analysis
- Collect and organize evidence from texts to support analysis in writing
- Independently read and annotate text in preparation for evidence-based discussion
- Make claims about texts using specific textual evidence
- Use vocabulary strategies to define unknown words
- Write informative texts to convey complex ideas
- Write narratives to develop real experiences or events
- Independently practice the writing process outside of class
- Practice speaking and listening skills in preparation for a college interview

Standards for This Unit

College and Career Readiness Anchor Standards for Reading	
None.	
CCS Standards: Reading — Literature	
None.	
CCS Standards: Reading — Informational Text	
RI.11-12.1	Cite strong and thorough textual evidence to support analysis of what the text says explicitly as well as inferences drawn from the text, including determining where the text leaves matters uncertain.
RI.11-12.2	Determine two or more central ideas of a text and analyze their development over the course of the text, including how they interact and build on one another to provide a complex analysis; provide an objective summary of the text.
RI.11-12.3	Analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.
RI.11-12.4	Determine the meaning of words and phrases as they are used in a text, including figurative, connotative, and technical meanings; analyze how an author uses and

	refines the meaning of a key term or terms over the course of a text (e.g., how Madison defines <i>faction</i> in <i>Federalist</i> No. 10).
RI.11-12.5	Analyze and evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.
RI.11-12.6	Determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.
CCS Standards: Writing	
W.11-12.2.a-f	<p>Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Introduce a topic; organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; include formatting (e.g., headings), graphics (e.g., figures, tables), and multimedia when useful to aiding comprehension. b. Develop the topic thoroughly by selecting the most significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience's knowledge of the topic. e. Use appropriate and varied transitions and syntax to link the major sections of the text, create cohesion, and clarify the relationships among complex ideas and concepts. Use precise language, domain-specific vocabulary, and techniques such as metaphor, simile, and analogy to manage the complexity of the topic. Establish and maintain a formal style and objective tone while attending to the norms and conventions of the discipline in which they are writing. f. Provide a concluding statement or section that follows from and supports the information or explanation presented (e.g., articulating implications or the significance of the topic).
W.11-12.3.a, b, c, d, e, f	<p>Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Engage and orient the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance, establishing one or multiple point(s) of view, and introducing a narrator and/or characters; create a smooth progression of experiences or events. b. Use narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, to develop experiences, events, and/or characters.

	<p>c. Use a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).</p> <p>d. Use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters.</p> <p>e. Provide a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative.</p> <p>f. Adapt voice, awareness of audience, and use of language to accommodate a variety of cultural contexts.</p>
W.11-12.4	Produce clear and coherent writing in which the development, organization, and style are appropriate to task, purpose, and audience.
W.11-12.5	Develop and strengthen writing as needed by planning, revising, editing, rewriting, or trying a new approach, focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific purpose and audience.
W.11-12.9.b	<p>Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research.</p> <p>b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i>, presidential addresses]”).</p>
CCS Standards: Speaking & Listening	
SL.11-12.1.a-c	<p>Initiate and participate effectively in a range of collaborative discussions (one-on-one, in groups, and teacher-led) with diverse partners on <i>grades 11–12 topics, texts, and issues</i>, building on others’ ideas and expressing their own clearly and persuasively.</p> <p>a. Come to discussions prepared, having read and researched material under study; explicitly draw on that preparation by referring to evidence from texts and other research on the topic or issue to stimulate a thoughtful, well-reasoned exchange of ideas.</p> <p>b. Work with peers to promote civil, democratic discussions and decision-making, set clear goals and deadlines, and establish individual roles as needed.</p> <p>c. Propel conversations by posing and responding to questions that probe reasoning and evidence; ensure a hearing for a full range of positions on a topic or issue; clarify, verify, or challenge ideas and conclusions; and promote divergent and</p>

	creative perspectives.
SL.11-12.4	Present information, findings, and supporting evidence, conveying a clear and distinct perspective, such that listeners can follow the line of reasoning, alternative or opposing perspectives are addressed, and the organization, development, substance, and style are appropriate to purpose, audience, and a range of formal and informal tasks.
SL.11-12.6	Adapt speech to a variety of contexts and tasks, demonstrating a command of formal English when indicated or appropriate. (See grades 11–12 Language standards 1 and 3 for specific expectations.)
CCS Standards: Language	
L.11-12.1	Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English grammar and usage when writing or speaking.
L.11-12.2.b	Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English capitalization, punctuation, and spelling when writing. b. Spell correctly.
L.11-12.3	Apply knowledge of language to understand how language functions in different contexts, to make effective choices for meaning or style, and to comprehend more fully when reading or listening.
L.11-12.4.a-c	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of strategies. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word's position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase. Identify and correctly use patterns of word changes that indicate different meanings or parts of speech (e.g., <i>conceive</i>, <i>conception</i>, <i>conceivable</i>). Consult general and specialized reference materials (e.g., dictionaries, glossaries, thesauruses), both print and digital, to find the pronunciation of a word or determine or clarify its precise meaning, its part of speech, its etymology, or its standard usage.
L.11-12.5.a	Demonstrate understanding of figurative language, word relationships, and nuances in word meanings. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Interpret figures of speech (e.g., hyperbole, paradox) in context and analyze their

	role in the text.
--	-------------------

Note: Bold text indicates targeted standards that will be assessed in the unit.

Unit Assessments

Ongoing Assessment	
Standards Assessed	RI.11-12.2, RI.11-12.3, RI.11-12.5, RI.11-12.6, W.11-12.2.a, b W.11-12.3.a-e, W.11-12.9.b
Description of Assessment	Students participate in reading and discussion, write informally in response to text-based prompts, present information in an organized and logical manner, and participate effectively in evidence-based collaborative discussion. Students engage in focused writing to develop personal narratives that utilize effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences.

Mid-Unit Assessment	
Standards Assessed	RI.11-12.5, RI.11-12.6, W.11-12.2.a, b, W.11-12.9.b
Description of Assessment	Students write a formal, multi-paragraph response to the following prompt: Determine the author's purpose and analyze how the structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text.

End-of-Unit Assessment	
Standards Assessed	RI.11-12.2, RI.11-12.3, W.11-12.2.a-f, W.11-12.9.b, L.11-12.1, L.11-12.2.b
Description of Assessment	Students write a formal, multi-paragraph response to the following prompt: Analyze how three key events in <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> interact to develop one or more central ideas in the text.

Unit-at-a-Glance Calendar

Lesson	Text	Learning Outcomes/Goals
1	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 1–4	In this first lesson of the unit, students read and analyze pages 1–4 of <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> , focusing on how the author make his points clear, convincing, and engaging in the beginning of the text.
2	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 1	In this lesson, students begin to develop a narrative essay for a college application by identifying a specific audience and purpose. Students discuss the task, purpose, and audience of <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> , and then draft a statement of purpose for their own narrative essays. The lesson also introduces Accountable Independent Writing, an important component of the curriculum.
3	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 35–40	In this lesson, students read and analyze pages 35–40 of the text, focusing on how Malcolm Little develops over the chapter. Additionally, students engage in a discussion around the concept of character development and its role in constructing narrative.
4	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 42–46	In this lesson, students work in pairs to read and analyze pages 42–46 of the text. Then in small groups, students examine the development of central ideas and where they emerge in the text. Students also begin annotating the text to keep track of evidence they will use in the lesson and unit assessments.
5	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 59–62	In this lesson, students read and analyze pages 59–62 of the text, considering how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text. Students are also introduced to the Performance Assessment task, a practice college interview at the end of the module.
6	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapters 1–4	In this lesson, students draft an introduction to their personal narratives. Students also examine the opening structure of <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> , paying close attention to the ways in which this introductory paragraph orients the reader to the text.

Lesson	Text	Learning Outcomes/Goals
7	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 77–83	In this lesson, students work in small groups to read and analyze pages 77–83 of the text, focusing on how the style and content of the passage develop Malcolm X’s point of view.
8	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 93–110	In this lesson, students read and analyze pages 93–110 of the text, examining how central ideas interact and build on one another in this section.
9	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 114–120	In this lesson, students form pairs to read and analyze pages 114–120 of the text, discussing how events within the text contribute to the development of central ideas.
10	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 148–153	In this lesson, students read and analyze pages 148–153 of the text, focusing on identifying the author’s purpose and intent. Students also track and analyze stylistic and content choices used for rhetorical effect.
11	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 165–171	In this lesson, students work in pairs to read and analyze pages 165–171 of the text, examining the structural choices the author makes in this section and how these choices make the author’s points clear, convincing, or engaging.
12	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapters 1–10	In this lesson, students use examples from <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> to explore different narrative techniques and then apply those techniques to their own narrative writing in a paragraph response to one of the Common Application prompts. Students have the choice of expanding on their narratives from 12.1.1 Lesson 6 or choosing to respond to a new prompt.
13	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 172–188	In this lesson, students participate in a jigsaw discussion to analyze four sections of text from pages 172–188. Students discuss these sections and the ways in which they show how Malcolm Little has developed.
14	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 1–194	Students complete the Mid-Unit Assessment by writing a multi-paragraph response to the following prompt: Determine the author’s purpose and analyze how the structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text.

Lesson	Text	Learning Outcomes/Goals
15	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 202–206	In this lesson, students read and analyze pages 202–206 of the text, identifying the author’s style and content choices and examining how these choices enhance the power or beauty of this section.
16	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 215–217, 237–239	In this lesson, students read and analyze pages 215–217 and 237–239 of the text, considering how events in this section contribute to Malcolm X’s development.
17	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 242–251	In this lesson, students form pairs to read and analyze pages 242–251 of the text, discussing how central ideas in this section interact and build on one another.
18	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapters 1–14	In this lesson, students draft a paragraph response to one of the Common Application prompts by focusing on sequencing events to create a coherent whole.
19	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 268–270	In this lesson, students read and analyze pages 268–270 of the text, examining the effectiveness of the author’s structural choices in this section.
20	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 284–287	In this lesson, students work in pairs to read and analyze pages 284–287 of the text, discussing how the author makes his points clear, convincing, and engaging in this section.
21	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 305–309	In this lesson, students read and analyze pages 305–309 of the text, considering on how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the section.
22	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 309–315	In this lesson, students form pairs to read and analyze pages 309–315 of the text, focusing on how the author uses structure to make his points clear, convincing, and engaging in this section.
23	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 345–348	In this lesson, students read and analyze pages 345–348 of the text, examining how events, individuals, and ideas interact and develop over the course of the text.

Lesson	Text	Learning Outcomes/Goals
24	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapters 1–17	In this lesson, students draft or revise a response to a Common Application essay prompt, integrating precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences or setting presented in their essay.
25	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 367–370	In this lesson, students read and analyze pages 367–370 of the text, focusing on how Malcolm X’s explanations of his views develop central ideas in the text and how those ideas interact and build on one another.
26	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, pages 385–389	In this lesson, students form pairs to read and analyze pages 385–389 of the text, considering how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the section.
27	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley	For the End-of-Unit Assessment, students write a multi-paragraph response to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text: Analyze how three key events in <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> interact to develop one or more central ideas in the text.
28	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley	In this lesson, students draft or revise a paragraph response to a Common Application essay prompt focusing on creating a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of their essays.

Preparation, Materials, and Resources

Preparation

- Read and annotate *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* as told to Alex Haley.
- Review the Short Response Rubric and Checklist.
- Review the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist.
- Review the 12.1.1 Mid-Unit and End-of-Unit Text Analysis Rubrics and Checklists.
- Review all unit standards and post in classroom.

Materials and Resources

- Chart paper
- Copies of the text *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* as told to Alex Haley
- Writing utensils including pencils, pens, markers, and highlighters
- Methods for collecting student work: student notebooks, folders, etc.
- Access to technology (if possible): interactive whiteboard, document camera, and LCD projector
- Self-stick notes for students (optional)
- Copies of handouts and tools for each student: see materials list in individual lesson plans
- Copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (optional)
- Copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist
- Copies of the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist
- Copies of the Style and Content Tool (optional)
- Copies of the Character Development Tool (optional)
- Copies of the Central Ideas Tracking Tool (optional)
- Copies of the 12.1.1 Mid-Unit and End-of-Unit Text Analysis Rubrics and Checklists

12.1.1

Lesson 1

Introduction

In this first English Language Arts Lesson of 12th grade, students are introduced to important skills and practices that continue throughout the year: reading for textual details and the analysis of narrative structure. In this lesson, students examine the opening pages of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 1–4 (from “When my mother was pregnant with me” to “hunting birds and rabbits and other game”). In this excerpt, Malcolm X describes his parents and the circumstances surrounding his birth. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: How does the author make his points clear, convincing, and engaging in the beginning of the text?

For homework, students independently read chapter 1 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging. Students also consider several potential prompts for their own personal narratives.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.5	Analyze and evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.
Addressed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.1	Cite strong and thorough textual evidence to support analysis of what the text says explicitly as well as inferences drawn from the text, including determining where the text leaves matters uncertain.
W.11-12.3	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the

following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.

- How does the author make his points clear, convincing, and engaging in the beginning of the text?

① Throughout this unit, Quick Writes will be evaluated using the Short Response Rubric.

High Performance Response(s)

A High Performance Response should:

- Explain how the author makes points clear, convincing, and engaging in the beginning of the text (e.g., The way the first events of the text are laid out establishes that Malcolm X is born at a time in which racism and discrimination are a powerful part of the lives of African Americans. This racism is displayed in the behavior of the Klansmen who surrounded his house: “The Klansmen shouted threats” and shattered “every window pane with their gun butts” at Malcolm X’s pregnant mother (p. 1). The repetition of violent attacks against Malcolm X’s family helps to establish a clear and continuing system of violence in a racist society. In the beginning of the text, the author also provides several important facts about Malcolm X and his family early on, namely that the men often meet with violent deaths in his family and Malcolm X feels that he will see the same: “I, too, will die by violence” (p. 2), and also that Malcolm X hates his light complexion: “I learned to hate every drop of that white rapist’s blood” (p. 3). These powerful statements engage the reader in the world in which Malcolm X grew up and establishes some key components of Malcolm X’s character.).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)

- disseminate (v.) – to scatter or spread widely, as though sowing seed
 - prevailed (v.) – to have been or proven superior in strength, power, or influence
 - Uncle Tom (n.) – a black person who is eager to win the approval of white people and willing to cooperate with them
- ① The author uses the phrase “Uncle Tom” in the text. Explain to students that this can be a racially charged term. Students should use the author’s language when reading or citing textual evidence, but they should be sensitive to their use of the phrase “Uncle Tom” in discussion and in class as it may be considered offensive.

Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)

- dissention (n.) – strong disagreement; a contention or quarrel; discord

Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- flaring (v.) – shining or burning suddenly and briefly
- funnel (v.) – to send (something, such as money) to someone or something in usually an indirect or secret way
- permit (n.) – an official document that shows that a person is allowed to do or have something

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standards: RI.11-12.5, RI.11-12.1, W.11-12.3 • Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 1, pages 1–4 	
Learning Sequence:	
1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda	1. 10%
2. Reading and Discussion	2. 40%
3. Quick Write	3. 20%
4. Personal Narrative Prompts	4. 20%
5. Closing	5. 10%

Materials

- Copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool for each student (optional)
- Copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist for each student
- Copies of the Common Application Prompts Handout for each student
- Copies of the Text-Focused Questions Handout for each student (optional)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.

no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by outlining the goals for this module and unit. Explain to students that in this module they read, analyze, and write nonfiction narratives. In the first two units, students examine how authors use narrative to construct concepts of identity and culture through the exploration of moments and memories from their lives. Students analyze the impact of narrative devices and language in the development of events, experiences, and characters. Students then use these tools to construct their own personal narratives.

- Students listen.

Review the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.5. In this lesson, students begin their examination of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* by reading pages 1–4 and analyzing the effectiveness of the beginning of the text.

- Students look at the agenda.

❗ **Differentiation Consideration:** Distribute a copy of the [12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool](#) to those students who would benefit from the support of a tool.

Post or project standards RI.11-12.5, RI.11-12.1, and W.11-12.3. Instruct students to talk in pairs about what they think standard RI.11-12.1 means. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

💬 Student responses should include:

- The standard requires students to note what is stated in a text.
- The standard requires students to use inference to determine what is meant but not stated in a text.
- The standard requires students to identify areas of the text that support their opinions.

Instruct students to talk in pairs about what they think standard RI.11-12.5 means. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

💬 Student responses should include:

- The standard requires students to examine the text and determine how it is put together or ordered.
- The standard requires students to explain whether the structure helps to make the author's ideas clear and convincing.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *structure* means “the way an author organizes information in a text” and *exposition* means “writing primarily intended to convey information or to explain.”

Instruct students to talk in pairs about what they think standard W.11-12.3 means. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

💬 Student responses should include:

- The standard requires students to write narratives or stories about experiences or events.
- The standard requires students to use effective techniques or writing skills and components.
- The standard requires students to include well-chosen details that develop the story.
- The standard requires students to order story events in an effective way.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Remind students of their work with W.11-12.3 and writing narratives in Module 11.4. If necessary to support student understanding of the standard, inform students that *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* is a narrative. Then instruct students to consider the following questions:

What is a narrative?

💬 A narrative is a type of writing that tells a story.

What are the elements of a narrative?

💬 Most narratives have characters, plot, central ideas, dialogue, description, and reflection.

Explain to students that narratives may be either fiction or nonfiction. A written work that communicates an account of events or experiences (tells a story) is a narrative whether or not the work is true or fictitious.

Activity 2: Reading and Discussion

40%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text as they read and discuss.

Instruct student pairs to read from pages 1–4 (from “When my mother was pregnant with me” to “hunting birds and rabbits and other game”).

- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students throughout the lesson:

What information does Malcolm X’s story tell about his family?

Provide students with the following definitions: *disseminate* means “to scatter or spread widely, as though sowing seed,” *prevailed* means “to have been or proven superior in strength, power, or influence,” and *Uncle Tom* means “a black person who is eager to win the approval of white people and willing to cooperate with them.”

- ① Students may be familiar with some of these words. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing them to the group.
 - ▶ Students write the definitions of *disseminate*, *prevailed*, and *Uncle Tom* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *flaring* means “shining or burning suddenly and briefly,” *funnel* means “to send (something, such as money) to someone or something in usually an indirect or secret way,” and *permit* means “an official document that shows that a person is allowed to do or have something.”
 - ▶ Students write the definitions of *flaring*, *funnel*, and *permit* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① The author uses the word “Negro” to describe African Americans throughout the text. Students should use the author’s language when reading or citing textual evidence, but they should avoid using the word “Negro” in discussion when they are not quoting from the text. The author uses the term “Negro”, but subsequent leaders in the Civil Rights Movement objected to the term because of its association with slavery. African American is currently the most popular and widely accepted term used to describe Americans with African ancestry.
- ① Remind students that the author uses the word “nigger” in the text. Students may use the author’s language when reading or citing textual evidence, but they should avoid using the word “nigger” in discussion when they are not quoting from the text as the term is a racial slur. Refer to the Module Overview for more information about how to address the word “nigger” in the classroom.

How does the author structure the first paragraph of the text to communicate the setting and conflicts of the text?

- The first paragraph engages the reader by starting in the middle of a terrifying event. It establishes that Malcolm X and his family are the victims of persecution and racist treatment; men surround his house “brandishing their shotguns and rifles” (p. 1) simply because his father is encouraging African Americans to return to Africa. This opening establishes a period of deep racism and prejudice that Malcolm X is about to be born into.

How does the author introduce the character of Malcolm X’s father?

- Student responses may include:
 - The author writes that Malcolm X’s father “was not a frightened Negro” (p. 2) who would not be intimidated by racist attacks like those of the Ku Klux Klan or Black Legion.
 - He was a disciple of the separatist Marcus Garvey, and he believed “that freedom, independence and self-respect could never be achieved by the Negro in America” (p. 2).
 - He was determined to be “independent of the white man” so he tried to “lay away savings” to start a store (p. 3).

What distinction does this description draw between different people within the African-American community at the time?

- The author is establishing that there were African Americans who can be intimidated by racists such as the Ku Klux Klan and those who could not. He also establishes that “many still are today” (p. 2), making it clear that he believes many African Americans still live in fear and may be dependent on “the white man” (p. 2).

Why is Malcolm X’s father accused of “spreading unrest and dissention” (p. 3)? What does *dissention* mean in this context?

- Student responses may include:
 - Malcolm X’s father is spreading the teachings of Marcus Garvey who is “raising the banner of black-race purity” (p. 1).
 - Malcolm X’s father wants to own his own store, which racist white people consider “uppity” (p. 3).
 - Malcolm X’s father believes that African Americans will never be able to have “freedom, independence and self-respect” (p. 2) while they live with white people.

- Student responses should include:

- *Dissention* probably means disagreement or contention.

What is Malcolm X's opinion of his complexion, and how is that related to the "millions" (p. 3) that Malcolm X would meet?

- Malcolm X states that he is "the lightest child" (p. 2) in his family and he learns "to hate every drop" (p. 3) of white blood in him. He states his mother was ashamed of her whiteness. Malcolm X looks down on those who feel that light skin is a "status symbol"; he calls them "insane" (p. 3).

In the first four pages, what is the author making clear about the circumstances of Malcolm X's life?

- Student responses may include:
 - Malcolm X's family is surrounded by racism and violence that has existed since before he was born. This world is represented by men who "shouted threats" and smashed "every window pane with their gun butts" (p. 1).
 - Malcolm X lives in a world where violence and racism are commonplace and he does not think that he will live a long life. Four of Malcolm X's uncles have met with violent deaths, "three of them killed by white men" (p. 2). He is sure that he will "die by violence" (p. 2) as well.

How does the author use the events of the first four pages to introduce the ideas of racial tension and inequality?

- Student responses may include:
 - The text starts with a violent confrontation about race in which an African-American family is warned to stop "spreading trouble" among the "good' Negroes" (p. 1), which establishes that this is a story rooted in racial issues.
 - Malcolm X describes himself as "the lightest child" (p. 2) in his family. He then calls the African Americans who look on lighter skin as a status symbol "insane" (p. 3). The internal conflict and Malcolm X's statement that "still later" he would learn to hate his white blood, implies that Malcolm X's opinion on race may shift over the course of the text.
 - The existence of a "local hate society" (p. 3) in each town and laws that prevent African Americans from being in certain places at certain times establish the deep societal aspects of this racism.

What might be the "Nightmare" referenced in the chapter title?

- Student responses may include:

- It refers to the nightmare of the Black Legion attack on Malcolm X's home; he describes it as a "frightening confusion of pistol shots and shouting and smoke and flames" (p. 3).
- It refers to the greater nightmare of segregation and the oppression that Malcolm X's family suffers. The "white police and firemen" (p. 3) who stand around and watch Malcolm X's house burn to the ground, the family members who die "by the white man's hands" (p. 2) paint a grim picture of racism in the United States.

Activity 3: Quick Write

20%

Distribute and introduce the Short Response Rubric and Checklist. Briefly explain the purpose of the rubric and checklist: to help students improve their Quick Write and homework writing responses. Inform students that they should use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their own writing, and that they are to use the same rubric for both Quick Writes and homework writing.

- ① Lead a brief discussion of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist categories: Inferences/Claims, Analysis, Evidence, and Conventions. Review the components of high-quality responses. Quick Write activities continue to engage students in thinking deeply about texts, by encouraging them to synthesize the analysis they carry out during the lesson and build upon that analysis. Inform students that they typically have 4–10 minutes to write.
- ① Since this is the beginning of the school year, decide how best to collect, organize, and analyze assessments. This can be done through portfolios, journals, notebooks, etc., according to student needs.

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

How does the author make his points clear, convincing, and engaging in the beginning of the text?

Ask students to use this lesson's vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

- ① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.
- 🗣 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 4: Personal Narrative Prompts

20%

Explain to students that they will be working with a set of personal narrative prompts that appear on the 2014 Common Application throughout this module. Inform students that the Common Application is an undergraduate college admission application that applicants may use to apply to any of 517 member colleges and universities. Explain that as part of the Common Application, applicants must write a 650-word personal narrative in response to one of several writing prompts. These prompts are meant to engage students in the different potential subjects for writing personal narratives. Over the course of the module, students have an opportunity to work with different prompts as they learn to craft a personal narrative.

Display and distribute the Common Application Prompts Handout and work as a class to deconstruct the first prompt.

Some students have a background or story that is so central to their identity that they believe their application would be incomplete without it. If this sounds like you, then please share your story.

Read the prompt aloud, and then instruct students to Think, Pair, Share about the following questions:

What are the key words in the first Common Application prompt?

- Students might identify the following key words: *background, story, central, identity, incomplete*.

Based on these key words, what elements should a personal narrative response to this prompt include?

- Student responses may include:
 - The word *background* shows that the essay can be about the student's cultural, ethnic, regional, physical, familial, economic, etc. background or history. The student would have to explain and describe his/her background, so explanation and description would be key parts of this essay.
 - The word *story* shows that the essay can be a personal story that defines or is important to the student. A story suggests the essay may have characters, plot, and dialogue.
 - The word *central* demonstrates that the story or background the student chooses must be very important or essential to his/her identity. This means that the essay must communicate the centrality of this background or story either through reflection or a central idea.
 - The word *identity* is the most important key word. It shows that this essay must be about the student's identity or sense of self.
 - The word *incomplete* is like the word *central* and shows that the story is so important that a student could not fully represent him/herself without telling it.

Direct students to form groups of four. These are the “home” groups. Instruct student groups to decide among themselves which group member is responsible for deconstructing which of the following Common Application prompts.

- Recount an incident or time when you experienced failure. How did it affect you, and what lessons did you learn?
- Reflect on a time when you challenged a belief or idea. What prompted you to act? Would you make the same decision again?
- Describe a place or environment where you are perfectly content. What do you do or experience there and why is it meaningful to you?
- Discuss an accomplishment or event, formal or informal, that marked your transition from childhood to adulthood within your culture, community, or family.

Direct students to leave their home groups to form “expert” groups, so that groups are now based on the Common Application prompt for which each student is responsible (e.g., all students responsible for the second prompt come together to form a group). Inform students that “expert” groups are those that read the prompts aloud, identify the key words, and determine what each key word indicates about the components of the personal narrative response. Students in each “expert” group become class experts on their Common Application prompt so that they can share their understanding with their home groups.

- ▶ In expert groups, students read their assigned Common Application prompt, identify the key words in the prompt, and determine what those key words indicate about the components of the personal narrative response.

Direct students to return to their home groups to share how they deconstructed the prompt in their expert groups. Lead a brief, whole-class discussion of student responses.

Activity 5: Closing

10%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 1 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students need additional support in developing their discussion questions, distribute and review the *Text-Focused Questions Handout*.

Additionally students reread the Common Application prompts and choose a prompt that enables them to write the most compelling story about themselves. Then students write brief responses to the following questions, explaining their choice of prompt.

What do you want to communicate about yourself to a college admission board?

Which prompt will allow you to communicate this information best?

Which prompt will allow you to distinguish yourself from among thousands of other applicants? How?

- ① Consider explaining to students that while they should write about important moments of their lives in response to the Common Application prompts, their responses need not be as intense as the scenes from *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. Inform students that they will be reading other college essay models throughout the unit to inform their sense of appropriate topics, scope, and tone for a college essay.
 - ▶ Students follow along.
- ① Consider explaining to students that Accountable Independent Reading will begin in 12.1.2 and 12.1.3, so that in 12.1.1 students may read *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and engage in Accountable Independent Writing outside of class.

Homework

Read chapter 1 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

Also, reread the Common Application prompts and choose a prompt that will enable you to write the most compelling story about yourself. Then, write brief responses to the following questions, explaining your choice of prompt.

What do you want to communicate about yourself to a college admission board?

Which prompt will allow you to communicate this information best?

Which prompt will allow you to distinguish yourself from thousands of other applicants? How?

12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool

CCS Standards: Reading—Informational Text		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
RI.11-12.1	Cite strong and thorough textual evidence to support analysis of what the text says explicitly as well as inferences drawn from the text, including determining where the text leaves matters uncertain.			
RI.11-12.2	Determine two or more central ideas of a text and analyze their development over the course of the text, including how they interact and build on one another to provide a complex analysis; provide an objective summary of the text.			

CCS Standards: Reading—Informational Text		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
RI.11-12.3	Analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.			
RI.11-12.4	Determine the meaning of words and phrases as they are used in a text, including figurative, connotative, and technical meanings; analyze how an author uses and refines the meaning of a key term or terms over the course of a text (e.g., how Madison defines <i>faction</i> in <i>Federalist</i> No. 10).			

CCS Standards: Reading—Informational Text		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
RI.11-12.5	Analyze and evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.			
RI.11-12.6	Determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.			

CCS Standards: Writing		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
W.11-12.2	Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content.			
W.11-12.2.a	Introduce a topic; organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; include formatting (e.g., headings), graphics (e.g., figures, tables), and multimedia when useful to aiding comprehension.			

CCS Standards: Writing		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
W.11-12.2.b	Develop the topic thoroughly by selecting the most significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience's knowledge of the topic.			
W.11-12.2.c	Use appropriate and varied transitions and syntax to link the major sections of the text, create cohesion, and clarify the relationships among complex ideas and concepts.			
W.11-12.2.d	Use precise language, domain-specific vocabulary, and techniques such as metaphor, simile, and analogy to manage the complexity of the topic.			

CCS Standards: Writing		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
W.11-12.2.e	Establish and maintain a formal style and objective tone while attending to the norms and conventions of the discipline in which they are writing.			
W.11-12.2.f	Provide a concluding statement or section that follows from and supports the information or explanation presented (e.g., articulating implications or the significance of the topic).			
W.11-12.3	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences.			

CCS Standards: Writing		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
W.11-12.3.a	Engage and orient the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance, establishing one or multiple point(s) of view, and introducing a narrator and/or characters; create a smooth progression of experiences or events.			
W.11-12.3.b	Use narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, to develop experiences, events, and/or characters.			

CCS Standards: Writing		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
W.11-12.3.c	Use a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).			
W.11-12.3.d	Use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters.			
W.11-12.3.e	Provide a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative.			

CCS Standards: Writing		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
W.11-12.3.f	Adapt voice, awareness of audience, and use of language to accommodate a variety of cultural contexts.			
W.11-12.4	Produce clear and coherent writing in which the development, organization, and style are appropriate to task, purpose, and audience.			
W.11-12.5	Develop and strengthen writing as needed by planning, revising, editing, rewriting, or trying a new approach, focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific purpose and audience.			

CCS Standards: Writing		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
W.11-12.6	Use technology, including the Internet, to produce, publish, and update individual or shared writing products in response to ongoing feedback, including new arguments or information.			
W.11-12.9	Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research.			

CCS Standards: Writing		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
W.11-12.9.b	Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i> , presidential addresses]”).			

CCS Standards: Speaking & Listening		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
SL.11-12.1	Initiate and participate effectively in a range of collaborative discussions (one-on-one, in groups, and teacher-led) with diverse partners on <i>grades 11–12 topics, texts, and issues</i> , building on others' ideas and expressing their own clearly and persuasively.			
SL.11-12.1.a	Come to discussions prepared, having read and researched material under study; explicitly draw on that preparation by referring to evidence from texts and other research on the topic or issue to stimulate a thoughtful, well-reasoned exchange of ideas.			

CCS Standards: Speaking & Listening		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
SL.11-12.1.b	Work with peers to promote civil, democratic discussions and decision-making, set clear goals and deadlines, and establish individual roles as needed.			
SL.11-12.1.c	Propel conversations by posing and responding to questions that probe reasoning and evidence; ensure a hearing for a full range of positions on a topic or issue; clarify, verify, or challenge ideas and conclusions; and promote divergent and creative perspectives.			

CCS Standards: Speaking & Listening		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
SL.11-12.4	Present information, findings, and supporting evidence, conveying a clear and distinct perspective, such that listeners can follow the line of reasoning, alternative or opposing perspectives are addressed, and the organization, development, substance, and style are appropriate to purpose, audience, and a range of formal and informal tasks.			
SL.11-12.6	Adapt speech to a variety of contexts and tasks, demonstrating a command of formal English when indicated or appropriate.			

CCS Standards: Language		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
L.11-12.1	Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English grammar and usage when writing or speaking.			
L.11-12.2	Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English capitalization, punctuation, and spelling when writing.			
L.11-12.2.a	Observe hyphenation conventions.			
L.11-12.2.b	Spell correctly.			
L.11-12.3	Apply knowledge of language to understand how language functions in different contexts, to make effective choices for meaning or style, and to comprehend more fully when reading or listening.			

CCS Standards: Language		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
L.11-12.4	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of strategies.			
L.11-12.4.a	Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word's position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.			
L.11-12.4.b	Identify and correctly use patterns of word changes that indicate different meanings or parts of speech (e.g., <i>conceive</i> , <i>conception</i> , <i>conceivable</i>).			

CCS Standards: Language		I know what this is asking and I can do this.	This standard has familiar language, but I haven't mastered it.	I am not familiar with this standard.
L.11-12.4.c	Consult general and specialized reference materials (e.g., dictionaries, glossaries, thesauruses), both print and digital, to find the pronunciation of a word or determine or clarify its precise meaning, its part of speech, its etymology, or its standard usage.			
L.11-12.5	Demonstrate understanding of figurative language, word relationships, and nuances in word meanings.			
L.11-12.5.a	Interpret figures of speech (e.g., hyperbole, paradox) in context and analyze their role in the text.			

Short Response Rubric

Assessed Standard: _____

	2-Point Response	1-Point response	0-Point Response
Inferences/Claims	Includes valid inferences or claims from the text. Fully and directly responds to the prompt.	Includes inferences or claims that are loosely based on the text. Responds partially to the prompt or does not address all elements of the prompt.	Does not address any of the requirements of the prompt or is totally inaccurate.
Analysis	Includes evidence of reflection and analysis of the text.	A mostly literal recounting of events or details from the text(s).	The response is blank.
Evidence	Includes the most relevant and sufficient textual evidence, facts, or details to develop response according to the requirements of the Quick Write.	Includes some relevant facts, definitions, concrete details and/or other information from the text(s) to develop an analysis of the text according to the requirements of the Quick Write.	The response includes no evidence from the text.
Conventions	Uses complete sentences where errors do not impact readability.	Includes incomplete sentences or bullets.	The response is unintelligible or indecipherable.

Short Response Checklist

Assessed Standard: _____

Does my writing...	Did I...	✓
Include valid inferences and/or claims from the text(s)?	Closely read the prompt and address the whole prompt in my response?	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Clearly state a text-based claim I want the reader to consider?	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Confirm that my claim is directly supported by what I read in the text?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Develop an analysis of the text(s)?	Did I consider the author's choices, impact of word choices, the text's central ideas, etc.?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Include evidence from the text(s)?	Directly quote or paraphrase evidence from the text?	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Arrange my evidence in an order that makes sense and supports my claim?	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Reflect on the text to ensure the evidence I used is the most relevant and sufficient evidence to support my claim?	<input type="checkbox"/>
Use complete sentences, correct punctuation, and spelling?	Reread my writing to ensure it means exactly what I want it to mean?	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Review my writing for correct grammar, spelling, and punctuation?	<input type="checkbox"/>

Common Application Prompts Handout

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

The following prompts are from the 2014 Common Application:

Some students have a background or story that is so central to their identity that they believe their application would be incomplete without it. If this sounds like you, then please share your story.

Recount an incident or time when you experienced failure. How did it affect you, and what lessons did you learn?

Reflect on a time when you challenged a belief or idea. What prompted you to act? Would you make the same decision again?

Describe a place or environment where you are perfectly content. What do you do or experience there and why is it meaningful to you?

Discuss an accomplishment or event, formal or informal, that marked your transition from childhood to adulthood within your culture, community, or family.

Text-Focused Questions Handout

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Building effective focus questions:

- The goal of text-focused questions is to develop a thorough understanding of the text through careful examination. A well-developed text-focused question should do the following:
 - Identify a crucial component of the text that is valuable for comprehension.
 - Yield an answer that is more in depth than yes or no.
 - Require textual evidence to answer.

Example:

What does Malcolm X identify as the cause of his mother's mental breakdown?

- The long harassment of his family by the "state welfare people" (p. 15) whose visits "began to plant the seeds of division" (p. 17) in the minds of his family.

Using standards to frame questions:

- Throughout the course of this module you will be asked to frame the text-focused questions through the lens of different standards. Keep the language of the individual standards in mind as you craft these questions.

For example, if an assignment asks you to develop 2–3 questions focused on RI.11–12.5, the resulting questions should examine the structure of the text and whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.

12.1.1

Lesson 2

Introduction

In this lesson, students begin to develop their personal narratives, focusing on identifying a specific audience and purpose. Students first consider these elements and the impact they have on a text. Students discuss the task, audience, and purpose of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, chapter 1. Finally, students draft a statement of purpose that demonstrates an awareness of task and audience for one of the Common Application prompts. Student learning is assessed via the students' statement of purposes.

For homework, students read chapter 2 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. Students also develop discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging. In the closing of the lesson, teachers may choose to introduce students to the practice of Accountable Independent Writing (AIW), which will carry throughout the module as an optional homework assignment intended to reinforce in-class writing instruction.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.5	Develop and strengthen writing as needed by planning, revising, editing, rewriting, or trying a new approach, focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific purpose and audience.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.f	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. f. Adapt voice, awareness of audience, and use of language to accommodate a variety of cultural contexts.
W.11-12.4	Produce clear and coherent writing in which the development, organization, and style are appropriate to task, purpose, and audience.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a written response to the following prompt:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Draft a statement of purpose that demonstrates an awareness of task and audience for one of the Common Application prompts. <p>① Student responses will be evaluated using the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric.</p>
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Demonstrate an awareness of the task (e.g., As I write, I will maintain an awareness of the conventions of narrative writing and the maximum word count of 650 words.). Clearly state the purpose of the narrative essay (e.g., The purpose of my narrative essay is to distinguish myself from other applicants and demonstrate why I am an excellent applicant.). Demonstrate an awareness of the audience (e.g., Throughout my essay, I will use formal and vivid language and an interesting structure to catch and maintain the attention of an admission board member.).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*

*Because this is not a close reading lesson, there is no specified vocabulary. However, in the process of returning to the text, students may uncover unfamiliar words. Teachers can guide students to make meaning of these words by following the protocols described in 1e of this document http://www.engageny.org/sites/default/files/resource/attachments/9-12_ela_prefatory_material.pdf.

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: W.11-12.5, W.11-12.3.f, W.11-12.4 Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 1 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda 2. Homework Accountability 3. Writing Instruction: Task, Purpose, and Audience 4. Drafting 5. Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 10% 2. 20% 3. 35% 4. 30% 5. 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)
- Copies of the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist for each student

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: W.11-12.5. In this lesson, students consider the task, purpose, and audience for their personal narratives.

- ▶ Students look at the agenda.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

Post or project standards W.11-12.3.f, W.11-12.4, and W.11-12.5. Instruct students to talk in pairs about how they think these standards apply to their writing. Lead a brief discussion about the standards.

💬 Student responses for W.11-12.3.f should include:

- The standard asks students to write with a specific group of people in mind.
- The standard asks students to use different language for different cultural contexts.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If necessary, define *voice* as the combination of an author's stylistic choices in a text, including point of view and the use of language and syntax.

💬 Student responses for W.11-12.4 should include:

- Write using a style or way of writing that addresses a specific assignment, outcome, or group of people.
- Order paragraphs or sections so that the writing makes sense and is easy for the audience to follow.

① Throughout Unit 12.1.1, students will continually refer to the ideas of task, purpose, and audience but will pick up work with the remainder of standard W.11-12.4 in Unit 12.1.3.

💬 Student responses for W.11-12.5 should include:

- The standard asks students to continue to plan, draft, and revise their writing in order to achieve a purpose.
- The standard asks students to consider a specific group of people while planning, drafting, and revising their writing.

Explain to students that the writing process is iterative and recursive, which means that students frequently reassess and improve their work and their thinking through multiple drafts and revisions. Inform students they will draft, revise, peer review, and edit throughout this unit to create a well-crafted narrative essay.

- ① Remind students that the words *iterative* and *recursive* were taught in 11.4 and mean “repeating” and “doing again.”

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

20%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson’s homework assignment. (Read chapter 1 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about questions they developed for homework to support their analysis of chapter 1, specifically discussing how the structure was effective in engaging the reader and making points clear and convincing (RI.11-12.5).

- ☞ Student questions may include:

How does Malcolm X connect the past and present throughout the chapter?

- ☞ Malcolm X makes many references to his beliefs changing in the future. He uses phrases such as “My image of Africa, at that time” (p. 7) and “I know now” (p. 14) to indicate that these early views of the world would change as he grew older.

How does the author use the story of Malcolm X’s mother’s mental breakdown to introduce the reader to Malcolm X?

- ☞ The story of Malcolm X’s mother gives a number of important insights into his character. The long harassment of his family by the “state Welfare people” (p. 17), whose visits “began to plant the seeds of division” (p. 17) in the minds of his family, shows how Malcolm X’s negative opinions of American government might have started. It also demonstrates Malcolm X’s deep love and compassion for his mother. He goes so far as to say that he is “capable of killing a person” (p. 22) who spoke badly about his mother.

Instruct students to take out their writing homework from the previous lesson. (Reread the Common Application prompts and choose a prompt that will enable you to write the most compelling story about yourself. Then write brief responses to the following questions, explaining your choice of prompt.)

What do you want to communicate about yourself to a college admission board?

Which prompt will allow you to communicate this information best?

Which prompt will allow you to distinguish yourself from thousands of other applicants? How?

Instruct students to talk in pairs about the prompts they are considering.

- ▶ Students talk in pair about their prompts.

Explain to students that the prompt they selected for homework will be the focus of a statement of purpose they compose in this lesson. Students will have opportunities to work with different prompts in future lessons if they identify another prompt they prefer. Explain to students that for the purposes of this lesson they should select a prompt that they feel will provide them an opportunity to write the most interesting and compelling story.

- ▶ Students select a prompt.

Activity 3: Writing Instruction: Task, Purpose, and Audience

35%

Instruct students to consider what they have learned about the Common Application Essay in 12.1.1 Lesson 1, and then Think, Pair, Share about the following questions:

Describe the task of the Common Application Essay. What are applicants asked to do?

- The task of the Common Application Essay is to write a narrative essay of no more than 650 words.

Who is the audience for a college application essay?

- The audience is an admissions board of a college or university.

Given the audience, what are the purposes of the college application essay?

- Student responses may include:
 - The purpose of a college application essay is to allow the admission board to get to know the applicant.
 - The purpose is to demonstrate the applicant's writing abilities.
 - The purpose is to distinguish the applicant from other applicants.
 - The purpose is to be interesting and memorable to the admission board.

Remind students that college boards read thousands of application essays each year. Understanding how to use purpose, voice, and awareness of audience will allow students' work to reach their intended audience in the most effective way. Students should keep these ideas in mind as they work to draft and revise their narrative essays over the course of this module.

Instruct students to read the title of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and consider the author's task and audience. Direct students to consider the title of the text and Think, Pair, Share about the following question.

Given the title of the text, what is the author's task?

- ☞ To narrate the life of Malcolm X.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct students to turn to the first paragraph of the first chapter of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and consider the author's purpose and audience. Direct students to Think, Pair, Share about the following questions.

"When my mother was pregnant with me, she told me later, a party of hooded Ku Klux Klan riders galloped up to our home in Omaha, Nebraska, one night."

How does the first sentence of the text suggest the author's purpose?

- ☞ The first sentence of the text describes the Ku Klux Klan riders violently threatening Malcolm X's family. This honest description of racial violence suggests that one of the author's purposes is to vividly and honestly convey the racial injustices and tensions that affected him from the very beginning of his life.

Instruct students to reread the rest of the first paragraph.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider asking the following questions to aid student understanding.

How does the author portray the Klansmen in this paragraph?

- ☞ The author describes the Klansmen as violent men who are "[s]urrounding the house" and "brandishing their shotguns and rifles" (p. 1). Even when they see that there is only a pregnant woman and her small children in the house, they continue to shout "threats and warnings" (p. 1) at Malcolm X's mother, suggesting that they are not only violent but unfeeling toward defenseless people.

How does the author portray Malcolm X's parents?

- ☞ Student responses may include:
 - The author describes Malcolm X's mother bravely going "to the front door" and opening it even though she knows that men are "[s]urrounding the house" and "brandishing their shotguns and rifles" (p. 1). She is also not afraid to show the men "her pregnant condition"

or reveal the facts that she is “alone with her three small children” and that her husband is “away, preaching, in Milwaukee” (p. 1).

- The author describes Malcolm X’s father as a man who is committed to traveling far distances in order to teach the “preachings of Marcus Garvey” which include a “back to Africa” movement for African Americans, suggesting his pride in his African roots (p. 1).

What do the portrayals of the Klansmen and Malcolm X’s parents further suggest about the author’s purpose?

- The portrayal of the Klansmen as violent and unfeeling individuals contrasts starkly with the portrayal of Malcolm X’s parents as people who are brave, proud, and committed to their beliefs. This contrast of portrayals suggests that one of the author’s purposes is to depict how violent racism affects African Americans but also how they combat it.

What information does the author convey in the first paragraph?

- The author describes the Ku Klux Klan’s actions and explains the “preachings of Marcus Garvey” as having something to do with African Americans going “back to Africa” (p. 1).

What does this information suggest about the audience of the text?

- The fact that the author does not assume the readers know how the Ku Klux Klan members would act or what Marcus Garvey preached suggests that the audience is a wide readership that extends over time, place, generation, and race.

Explain to students that like the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, they should be aware of their task, purpose, and audience as they prewrite and plan for their narrative essays.

Remind students as they prewrite and plan for their narrative essays to be mindful of their use of voice and language as it pertains to their potential audience. This means that the writer’s voice and use of language should be appropriate for their audience. Direct students to Think, Pair, Share about the following question:

What kind of voice and language should a writer use for a college application essay?

- Student responses may include:
 - A writer may adopt a style that is formal but approachable or natural.
 - A writer may use language that is precise, engaging, and sophisticated, while still sounding natural or not forced.

- A writer may establish a strong voice and a compelling tone to make him/herself engaging to a college admissions board.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses. Inform students that throughout 12.1.1 and 12.1.3, they will revisit the use of voice and language in their narrative essays.

Activity 4: Drafting

30%

Inform students that this lesson will be assessed on their ability to draft a statement of purpose for one of the Common Application prompts. Explain to students that the statement of purpose should include statements about their awareness of task, purpose, and audience.

- ▶ Students listen.

Distribute the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist. Briefly explain the purpose of the rubric and checklist: to help students develop and hone their personal narrative writing. Inform students that they should use the rubric and checklist to guide their own writing, and that they will be using the same rubric for all of their personal narrative writing in this module.

Lead a brief discussion of the rubric and checklist categories: W.11-12.3.f and W.11-12.5. Review the components of high-quality responses.

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt.

Draft a statement of purpose that demonstrates an awareness of task and audience for one of the Common Application prompts.

- ▶ Students listen and read the writing prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent writing.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.

☛ See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

① Instruct students to keep their statements of purpose in a writing journal or folder as a portfolio of their personal narrative writing throughout the module.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 2 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused

on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

► Students follow along.

- ① Explain to students that part of the daily homework expectation is to write outside of class. Accountable Independent Writing (AIW) expects that all students engage in some aspect of the writing process regularly outside of class. The purpose of AIW is to encourage students to practice and improve writing skills and to enable them to learn through writing.

In addition to class work, developing independent writing and peer reviewing skills, consider other methods of facilitating writing and reviewing work outside of class. Ideas for creating online writing communities for your students include blogs, Google Docs, or other online sharing sites.

- ① For AIW homework, instruct students to continue planning their response to a Common Application prompt. Students can use their statements of purpose to revisit their choice of prompt. Then students should begin brainstorming ideas in response to one or more prompt. If necessary, explain to students that brainstorming is writing a list of ideas without stopping to correct, refine, or evaluate them.

Homework

Read chapter 2 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric

____ / ____ (Total points)

Criteria	4 – Responses at this Level:	3 – Responses at this Level:	2 – Responses at this Level:	1 – Responses at this Level:
Coherence, Organization, and Style The extent to which the response engages and orients the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance, establishing one or multiple point(s) of view, and introducing a narrator and/or characters; and creates a smooth progression of experiences or events. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.3 Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.3.a Engage and orient the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance, establishing one or multiple point(s) of view, and introducing a narrator and/or characters; create a smooth progression of experiences or events. The extent to which the response uses narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, to develop experiences, events, and/or characters. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.3.b	Skillfully engage and orient the reader by thoroughly and clearly setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance, establishing one or multiple point(s) of view, and introducing a narrator and/or characters; skillfully create a smooth progression of experiences or events. (W.11-12.3.a) Skillfully use narrative techniques such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, thoroughly developing experiences, events, and/or characters. (W.11-12.3.b) Skillfully use a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and clearly build toward a particular tone and outcome. (W.11-12.3.c) Skillfully use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language, conveying a complete and vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters. (W.11-12.3.d) Provide a conclusion that clearly follows from and skillfully reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative. (W.11-12.3.e) Skillfully adapt voice, awareness of	Engage and orient the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance, establishing one or multiple point(s) of view, and introducing a narrator and/or characters; create a smooth progression of experiences or events. (W.11-12.3.a) Use narrative techniques such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, developing experiences, events, and/or characters. (W.11-12.3.b) Use a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome. (W.11-12.3.c) Use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language, conveying a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters. (W.11-12.3.d) Provide a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative. (W.11-12.3.e) Adapt voice, awareness of audience, and use of language to accommodate a variety of cultural contexts. (W.11-12.3.f)	Somewhat effectively engage or orient the reader by partially setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance, establishing one or multiple point(s) of view, and introducing a narrator and/or characters; create an unclear progression of experiences or events. (W.11-12.3.a) Somewhat effectively use narrative techniques such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, partially developing experiences, events, and/or characters. (W.11-12.3.b) Somewhat effectively use techniques, or use unvaried techniques to sequence events so that they insufficiently build on one another to create a loosely connected whole or a particular tone and outcome. (W.11-12.3.c) Somewhat effectively use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language, conveying a clear picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters. (W.11-12.3.d) Provide a conclusion that loosely follows from and partially reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the text. (W.11-12.3.e)	Ineffectively engage or orient the reader by insufficiently setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance, establishing one or multiple point(s) of view, and introducing a narrator and/or characters; create a disorganized collection of experiences or events. (W.11-12.3.a) Ineffectively or rarely use narrative techniques such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, insufficiently developing experiences, events, and/or characters. (W.11-12.3.b) Ineffectively use techniques, creating a disorganized collection of events that fail to build on one another to create a coherent whole or a particular tone and outcome. (W.11-12.3.c) Ineffectively use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language, conveying an unclear picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters. (W.11-12.3.d) Provide a conclusion that does not follow from or reflect on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the text. (W.11-12.3.e) Ineffectively adapt voice, awareness

Criteria	4 – Responses at this Level:	3 – Responses at this Level:	2 – Responses at this Level:	1 – Responses at this Level:
<p>Use narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, to develop experiences, events, and/or characters.</p> <p>The extent to which the response uses a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome.</p> <p>CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.3.c</p> <p>Use a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).</p> <p>The extent to which the response uses precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters.</p> <p>CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.3.d</p> <p>Use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters.</p> <p>The extent to which the response provides a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved</p>	<p>audience, and use of language to thoughtfully accommodate a variety of cultural contexts. (W.11-12.3.f)</p>		<p>Somewhat effectively adapt voice, awareness of audience, and use of language to accommodate a variety of cultural contexts. (W.11-12.3.f)</p>	<p>of audience, and use of language, rarely accommodating a variety of cultural contexts. (W.11-12.3.f)</p>

Criteria	4 – Responses at this Level:	3 – Responses at this Level:	2 – Responses at this Level:	1 – Responses at this Level:
<p>over the course of the narrative.</p> <p>CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.3.e</p> <p>Provide a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative.</p> <p>The extent to which the response adapts voice, awareness of audience, and use of language to accommodate a variety of cultural contexts.</p> <p>CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.3.f</p> <p>Adapt voice, awareness of audience, and use of language to accommodate a variety of cultural contexts.</p>				
<p>Coherence, Organization, and Style</p> <p>The extent to which the response develops and strengthens writing during the writing process, addressing what is most significant for the specific purpose and audience.</p> <p>CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.5</p> <p>Develop and strengthen writing as needed by planning, revising, editing, rewriting, or trying a new approach, focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific purpose and audience.</p>	Thoroughly develop and strengthen writing during the writing process, skillfully addressing what is most significant for the specific purpose and audience.	Develop and strengthen writing during the writing process, addressing what is most significant for the specific purpose and audience.	Partially develop and strengthen writing during the writing process, somewhat effectively addressing what is most significant for the specific purpose and audience.	Insufficiently develop and strengthen writing during the writing process, ineffectively addressing what is most significant for the specific purpose and audience.

- A response that is a personal response and makes little or no reference to the task or text can be scored no higher than a 1.
- A response that is totally copied from the text with no original writing must be given a 0.
- A response that is totally unrelated to the task, illegible, incoherent, blank, or unrecognizable as English must be scored as a 0.

12.1 Narrative Writing Checklist

Assessed Standards: _____

	Does my response...	✓
Coherence, Organization, and Style	Engage and orient the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance? (W.11-12.3.a)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Establish one or multiple point(s) of view? (W.11-12.3.a)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Introduce a narrator and/or characters? (W.11-12.3.a)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Create a smooth progression of experiences or events? (W.11-12.3.a)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Use narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, to develop experiences, events, and/or characters? (W.11-12.3.b)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Use a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome? (W.11-12.3.c)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters? (W.11-12.3.d)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Provide a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative? (W.11-12.3.e)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Adapt voice, awareness of audience, and use of language to accommodate a variety of cultural contexts? (W.11-12.3.f)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Develop and strengthen writing during the writing process, addressing what is most significant for the specific purpose and audience? (W.11-12.5)	<input type="checkbox"/>

12.1.1

Lesson 3

Introduction

In this lesson, students read and analyze a section from chapter 2 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 35–40 (from “The summer of 1940, in Lansing, I caught the Greyhound Bus” to “I’d probably still be a brainwashed black Christian”), in which Malcolm X describes leaving Lansing for the more metropolitan Boston and explains how this period of his life affected him. Additionally, students engage in a discussion around the concept of character development and its role in constructing narrative. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: How does Malcolm Little develop over the course of chapter 2?

For homework, students read chapter 3 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. Students also develop questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.3	Analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.2.e	Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content. e. Establish and maintain a formal style and objective tone while attending to the norms and conventions of the discipline in which they are writing.
L.11-12.4.a	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of strategies. a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word’s position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> How does Malcolm Little develop over the course of chapter 2?
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Explain how Malcolm Little develops over the course of the chapter (e.g., Malcolm develops through his trip to Boston to stay with Ella. He starts out as someone who “couldn’t have looked much more obvious” (p. 35) about his rural origins. During his time in Boston he is exposed to people “whose big-city talk and ways” (p. 36) astonish him. After this trip he “drew away from white people” (p. 38) as he no longer felt comfortable in their presence and longed for what he calls “a mass of my own kind” (p. 37). This feeling is magnified after a conversation with his teacher in which Malcolm realizes that he would never be “intelligent enough, in their eyes, to become whatever [he] wanted to be” (p. 38). Through these events Malcolm realizes that as long as he stays in Lansing he will never be anything more than a “Mascot” for the community. Malcolm X ends the chapter by calling the trip to Boston “pivotal and profound” (p. 39) and praising Allah that he went to Boston, which shows that these events inspire him to take action for his own future. Malcolm X has separated himself from the “brainwashed” African Americans and is no longer reliant on “two-faced whites” (p. 40) in order to live his life.).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> feigned (v.) – made believe; pretended pivotal (adj.) – of vital or critical importance profound (adj.) – of deep meaning; of great and broadly inclusive significance menial (adj.) – lowly and sometimes degrading
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> gawked (v.) – stared stupidly; gaped treading (v.) – stepping or walking on, about, in, or along

Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- carpentry (n.) – the skill or work of making or fixing wooden objects or wooden parts of buildings
- arrangements (n.) – something that is done to prepare or plan for something in the future
- masses (n.) – a large number of people

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standards: RI.11-12.3, W.11-12.2.e, L.11-12.4.a • Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 2, pages 35–40 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda 2. Homework Accountability 3. Reading and Discussion 4. Analyzing Character Development 5. Quick Write 6. Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 10% 2. 15% 3. 40% 4. 15% 5. 15% 6. 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)
- Copies of the Character Development Tool for each student (optional)
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.

	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
▶	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
①	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and sharing the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.3. In this lesson, students read and discuss chapter 2 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 35–40, focusing on Malcolm X’s development over an excerpt of the text. Additionally, students engage in a group discussion around the concept of character development in narrative, focusing on how individuals and events interact and develop over the course of the text.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout the lesson:

What events happen in this chapter? How do they change Malcolm Little?

- ▶ Students look at the agenda.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

Post or project standards RI.11-12.3, W.11-12.2.e, and L.11-12.4.a. Instruct students to focus on RI.11-12.3 and talk in pairs about what they think the standard means. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

💬 Student responses should include:

- The standard requires students to identify and examine a set of ideas or events.
- The standard requires students to explain how people, ideas, or events interact and change throughout the text.

Instruct students to focus on W.11-12.2.e and talk in pairs about how they think the standard applies to their writing. Lead a brief discussion about the standard. Ask students the following questions:

How does standard W.11-12.2.e compare to standard W.11-12.3.f? How do the standards differ?

💬 Student responses should include:

- Standard W.11-12.2.e requires students to use a formal style and objective tone while writing.
- Similarly, standard W.11-12.3.f requires students to adapt voice to the audience.

- Both standards require students to be aware of the audience and adjust tone/voice based on this awareness.
- Standard W.11-12.2.e focuses more on style and tone, whereas standard W.11-12.3.f focuses on voice.

① Students were introduced to W.11-12.3.f in 12.1.1 Lesson 2.

Instruct students to focus on L.11-12.4.a and talk in pairs about what they think the standard means. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

💬 Student responses should include:

- The standard requires students to determine word meaning from context.
- The standard requires students to use the word's part of speech as a clue to its meaning.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read chapter 2 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing how the structure is effective in engaging the reader and making points clear and convincing (RI.11-12.5).

💬 Student questions may include:

Why does Malcolm Little go “into hiding” (p. 25) after his first boxing match against Bill Peterson?

- 💬 He lost badly and a boxing ring was “the only place a Negro could whip a white man and not be lynched” (p. 25). The loss was a blow to Malcolm Little's reputation and the neighborhood looked down on him for such a bad loss.

What does Malcolm Little mean by saying that “even though they appeared to have opened the door, it was still closed” (p. 28)?

- 💬 Although the Swerlins treated him with respect and affection, they still did not think of him as a person. He was, in their eyes, “a pedigreed pup” (p. 28).
- ▶ Students discuss the questions that they have developed.

- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Lead a brief whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk(*).)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

40%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text as they read and discuss.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 35–37 (from “The summer of 1940, in Lansing, I caught the Greyhound bus” to “But I found I couldn’t”).

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout the lesson:

What events happen in this chapter? How do they change Malcolm Little?

- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.

Provide students with the following definition: *feigned* means “made believe; pretended.”

- ① Students may be familiar with this word. Consider asking students to volunteer a definition before providing it to the group.

- ▶ Students write the definition of *feigned* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

Post or project the following questions for students to discuss in pairs before sharing out with the class.

How does the description of Malcolm Little on page 35 demonstrate his character at the beginning of his journey to Boston?

- ☛ He has a cardboard suitcase and he’s wearing his “green suit” (p. 35). He states, “If someone had hung a sign, ‘HICK,’ around my neck, I couldn’t have looked much more obvious” (p. 35). This description shows that Malcolm is from a rural area and that he is aware he must have stood out given his attire.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle, consider posing the following question to support their understanding.

What specific words and phrases does the author use to describe Malcolm Little and his actions on page 35?

💬 Student responses may include:

- He is wearing a “green suit” and has a “cardboard suitcase” (p. 35).
- He looks like a “‘HICK’” or country person (p. 35).
- He sits in the “back of the bus” which emphasizes the discrimination he faces (p. 35).
- He “gawked out of the window at white man’s America rolling past,” which shows he feels interested and separated from what he sees (pp. 35–36).

How might Malcolm Little look out the window at “white man’s America rolling past” (pp. 35–36)?

💬 He might look out with fear or interest at things he hasn’t seen before. Since he does not describe feelings of fear, he is likely looking with interest.

What, then, does *gawked* mean in this context?

💬 The word *gawked* means looking with interest or staring at something.

① Consider drawing students’ attention to their work with L.11-12.4.a as they use context clues to determine the meaning of a word.

Why could Malcolm Little not have “feigned indifference” to the society of Boston (p. 36)?

💬 The city environment of Boston is dramatically different from the environment of Lansing. Malcolm states, “I didn’t know the world contained as many Negroes as I saw thronging downtown Roxbury at night, especially on Saturdays. Neon lights, nightclubs, poolhalls, bars, the cars they drove!” (p. 36) Because all of these things are new and exciting, there is no way he could have pretended to not be interested in them.

Why does Malcolm X state that he “found [he] couldn’t” describe Boston (p. 37)?

💬 The world of Boston is too different from Lansing. All of the city sights and the culture, the “black-white couples strolling around arm in arm” (p. 36), awe him so much that he cannot communicate it. Malcolm was not prepared for how different the African-American community in Boston was and finds this contrast hard to communicate to his family back in Lansing.

***In pages 35–37, how does Malcolm X begin to draw distinctions between the African-American and white societies?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- The section starts with Malcolm X looking at “white man’s America” from “the back of the bus” (p. 35) as he travels to Boston, which emphasizes the control that white people have, both in America and over the African-American population.

- In Boston, Malcolm X talks about the “black society” (p. 36) of which Ella is a part and mentions that the Roseland State Ballroom performers play one night for a white audience and the next night for an African-American one.
- ① Students may not be familiar with the historical reference to segregated buses. If necessary to support student comprehension, inform students that until 1956 many bus lines required African-American passengers to enter through the back of the bus and give their seats up to white people if asked.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct students to form pairs and read pages 37–40 (from “My restlessness with Mason—and for the first time in my life” to “I’d probably still be a brainwashed black Christian”). Post or project the following questions for students to discuss.

Provide students with the following definitions: *pivotal* means “of vital or critical importance,” *profound* means “of deep meaning or of great and broadly inclusive significance,” and *menial* means “lowly and sometimes degrading.”

- ① Students may be familiar with these words. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing them to the group.
- ▶ Students write the definitions of *pivotal*, *profound*, and *menial* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *carpentry* means “the skill or work of making or fixing wooden objects or wooden parts of buildings,” *arrangements* means “something that is done to prepare or plan for something in the future,” and *masses* means “a large number of people.”
- ▶ Students write the definitions of *carpentry*, *arrangements*, and *masses* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

***What changes come over Malcolm Little when he returns from Boston?**

- 💬 Student responses may include:
- Malcolm Little’s understanding of the white community in Lansing and his place in it has changed. He calls Mr. Ostrowski’s advice “in his nature as an American white man” (p. 37), and states that he sees only a future where Malcolm Little is in his place. Malcolm Little’s experience in Boston has made him long for a future in which he doesn’t have to “wash dishes” (p. 38).

- Malcolm Little is restless and troubled. He has “a restlessness with being around white people” (p. 37) for the first time in his life. The people around him notice as well, saying that Malcolm Little is “‘acting so strange’” and asking him, “‘[w]hat’s the matter?’” (p. 37).

***What does Malcolm X identify as the root of this change?**

- Malcolm experienced an entirely different type of African-American community in Boston, one that for him felt more natural. He states, “I know now that it was the sense of being a real part of a mass of my own kind, for the first time” (p. 37).

What does Malcolm X mean by saying that Mr. Ostrowski’s advice was “in his nature as an American white man” (p. 37)?

- Malcolm X states that Mr. Ostrowski’s advice was in his nature “as an American white man” (p. 37) because white culture didn’t accept the idea that an African-American student was capable of being lawyer. Mr. Ostrowski simply didn’t believe, as almost all white people didn’t at the time, that any African American could achieve a career of that sort. While his advice is deeply prejudiced, it wasn’t personally directed at Malcolm.

Why did Mr. Ostrowski’s advice “just [keep] treading around in [Malcolm X’s] mind” (p. 38)? What does *treading* mean in this context?

- Student responses may include:
 - Malcolm is smarter than most of the other students in his school and yet he was the only person who was not encouraged in his aspirations because he was African American. “The topmost scholastic standing” (p. 37) in the school shifts between Malcolm and two other students, but the other students “all reported that Mr. Ostrowski encouraged what they had wanted” (p. 38).
 - Malcolm states, “The more I thought afterwards about what he said” (p. 38) which implies that he cannot stop thinking about this advice. When taken in context of something happening in his “mind,” *treading* probably means walking or running around.

Why does Malcolm X characterize the interaction with Mr. Ostrowski as “the first major turning point of [his] life” (p. 39)?

- Student responses may include:
 - Mr. Ostrowski’s advice makes it clear to Malcolm that despite all of his hard work, his intelligence, and his popularity among his peers, Malcolm would not be allowed to overcome the racism within society. This realization is reinforced by the fact that as soon as Malcolm seems to not be “happy there anymore” (p. 39), he is moved into a foster home.

- Because of this conversation, he makes a conscious choice to change his life. He writes to Ella “almost every other day” and tells her he wants to “come there and live” in Boston (p. 39). He then states, “Whatever I have done since then, I have driven myself to become a success at it” (p. 40), indicating that he sees the move from Lansing as the first real choice he made for himself.

***How does Malcolm Little further change after his conversation with Mr. Ostrowski?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- He becomes even more withdrawn and resentful of his treatment: “It became a physical strain simply to sit in Mr. Ostrowski’s class” (p. 38).
- Malcolm Little begins to notice and react negatively to people’s use of the word “nigger” to describe him or other African Americans: “Where ‘nigger’ had slipped off my back before, wherever I heard it now, I stopped and looked at whoever said it” (p. 38).

① Remind students that the author uses the word “nigger” in the text. Students may use the author’s language when reading or citing textual evidence, but they should avoid using the word “nigger” in discussion when they are not quoting from the text as the term is a racial slur. Refer to the Module Overview for more information about how to address the word “nigger” in the classroom.

Why does Malcolm X state that going to live with Ella was the most “pivotal and profound” move in his life (p. 39)?

- 💬 If Malcolm had stayed in Mason he might have been “successful” by society’s standards for African Americans at the time. Malcolm states he might have gotten one “of the other menial jobs which, in those days, among Lansing Negroes, would have been considered ‘successful’” (p. 40). By saying that the change is “pivotal and profound” (p. 39), Malcolm implies that his life has since taken a much different course.

How does Malcolm X characterize what his life would have been like if Mr. Ostrowski had encouraged him to be a lawyer?

- 💬 Although it might have looked like a “successful” life, in Malcolm’s opinion he would have been just as subservient to the white community as he was in his childhood. Malcolm states that he might have had a life of luxury, “sipping cocktails” and pretending to be a “community spokesman” and “leader” (p. 40). In actuality, he would have been trying “to grab a few more crumbs from the groaning board of the two-faced whites” (p. 40).

Why might Malcolm X look negatively on this lifestyle?

- He states that he could have been a “brainwashed black Christian” (p. 40). The use of “brainwashed” suggests that he doesn’t think the “black Christian[s],” and by inference the “professional black bourgeoisie,” are thinking for themselves (p. 40).

What does this point of view indicate about how Malcolm X views himself?

- It indicates that he considers himself separate from the “brainwashed” African Americans and is not reliant on “two-faced whites” (p. 40) in order to live his life.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Activity 4: Analyzing Character Development**15%**

Explain to students that one of the key elements of narrative writing is the development of characters over the course of the text. Character development consists of the information that the author provides about the characters in the text. Character development includes the physical aspects of the character, their actions, their environment, and their words or thoughts.

It can be helpful to think of character development as tied to events that occur in a narrative story or essay; by examining the events of a text and the way in which the character acts and reacts, the reader can learn more about the character. Over the course of this chapter, Malcolm Little undergoes a number of changes. Instruct students to Think, Pair, Share about the following questions to show the relationship of Malcolm Little’s actions and reactions to events in his life.

What events happen to Malcolm Little over the course of the chapter?

- Student responses may include:
 - He loses two boxing matches against a white opponent.
 - He acts out in school and is sent to a reform school.
 - He goes to live with the Swerlins.
 - He is enrolled in Mason Junior High School.
 - Ella visits him.
 - He takes a trip to Boston.
 - Mr. Ostrowski advises him to find a “realistic” (p. 38) career.
 - He leaves the reform school and goes to live with the Lyons family.
 - He finishes eighth grade and moves to Boston to live with his sister, Ella.

Lead a brief class discussion of student responses. Post or project student responses. Instruct students to examine these events and answer the following question to determine how each event might demonstrate Malcolm Little's character development.

What changes occur in Malcolm Little's character over the course of the chapter?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Malcolm, ashamed of his loss, trains himself for a second boxing match.
- After being reprimanded by a teacher, Malcolm acts out against him, displaying a disdain for authority.
- Malcolm describes the Swerlins as good people but feels that their behavior is hypocritical: they don't think of him as a person.
- At Mason Junior High, Malcolm is treated as a "mascot" (p. 27) but he still involves himself in all of the activities.
- Ella is the "first really proud black woman" (p. 34) he has seen. He is impressed by her pride and power.
- In Boston, he is exposed to a broad African American community that was previously unknown to him. This exposure makes it impossible for him to be comfortable back at the Swerlins's.
- Malcolm realizes he can no longer be happy in Mason and leaves for Boston.

Explain to students that these events and changes give us an important window into Malcolm X's character. Students should consider how to use character development in their own writing to give the reader a larger understanding of who they are.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the Character Development Tool to record character development they have identified and discussed.

Activity 5: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

How does Malcolm Little develop over the course of chapter 2?

Ask students to use this lesson's vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to establish and maintain a formal style and objective tone while writing. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

- ① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.
- ① If necessary, remind students to use their notes from the previous lesson's homework to provide evidence and support their comprehension of Malcolm Little's development over the course of the chapter.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.
- 🗨 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 6: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 3 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

- ▶ Students follow along.
- ① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue planning their response to a Common Application prompt. Students can continue brainstorming or begin outlining their responses. Additionally, instruct students to read one model essay and write an objective summary of the essay. Model essays can be found at <http://www.jhu.edu/> (search term: Essays That Worked). Consider assigning students different model essays, so the class reads a wide variety. Also, consider establishing online protocols, so students can post their summaries to the class's online writing community. If necessary, read a model essay with the class and demonstrate writing a brief, objective summary.

Homework

Read and annotate chapter 3 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

Character Development Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Analyze the character development that you encounter in the text. Identify the events that are connected to this development. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Character Development	Event	Evidence

Model Character Development Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Analyze the character development that you encounter in the text. Identify the events that are connected to this development. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Character Development	Event	Evidence
Malcolm Little shows a disdain for authority.	Malcolm Little deliberately wears a hat to class and puts a tack on his teacher's chair.	"I came into a classroom with my hat on. I did it deliberately." (p. 25) "I passed behind his desk, snatched up a thumbtack and deposited it in his chair." (p. 26)
Malcolm Little develops an understanding of casual racism while living with the Swerlins.	The Swerlins talk negatively about African Americans in front of Malcolm Little, as if he was not there or could not understand their conversation.	"I suppose that in their own minds they meant no harm." (p. 27)
The things Malcolm Little sees while visiting Ella broaden his worldview.	Malcolm Little is exposed to a larger community of African Americans in Boston.	"I saw and met a hundred black people there whose big-city talk and ways left my mouth hanging open." (p. 36)
Malcolm Little becomes uncomfortable and unable to live in Mason as a "mascot" for white people.	Malcolm Little acts withdrawn from people in Mason and is no longer comfortable.	"I drew away from white people." (p. 38) "Nobody, including the teachers, could decide what had come over me." (p. 39)

12.1.1

Lesson 4

Introduction

In this lesson, students read and analyze a section from *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, chapter 3, pages 42–46 (from “So I went gawking around the neighborhood” to “find a friend as hip as he obviously was”), in which Malcolm Little adjusts to the fast-paced life of Boston and observes first-hand the class and race distinctions that exist there. In addition, students engage in a small group discussion to develop an understanding of how central ideas develop and where they emerge. Student learning in this lesson is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: Analyze how two central ideas in pages 42–46 interact and build on one another.

For homework, students read chapter 4 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. Students also develop discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.2	Determine two or more central ideas of a text and analyze their development over the course of the text, including how they interact and build on one another to provide a complex analysis; provide an objective summary of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.9.b	<p>Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research.</p> <p>b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i>, presidential addresses]”).</p>
L.11-12.4.b	<p>Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i>, choosing flexibly from a range of strategies.</p> <p>b. Identify and correctly use patterns of word changes that indicate different</p>

	meanings or parts of speech (e.g., <i>conceive</i> , <i>conception</i> , <i>conceivable</i>).
--	--

Assessment

Assessment(s)

Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.

- Analyze how two central ideas in pages 42–46 interact and build on one another.

High Performance Response(s)

A High Performance Response should:

- Identify two central ideas (e.g., racial identity, integration vs. separation, or systemic oppression).
- Explain how those ideas interact and build on one another (e.g., This section of text explores the central ideas of systemic oppression and racial identity by contrasting the African Americans who live on “the Hill” and the African Americans who live in “the ghetto” (p. 42). The idea of oppression is explored through the lens of racial identity by examining how well-off African Americans interact with poorer African Americans in the same neighborhood. Malcolm X states that at the time, he thought the African Americans who lived on the Hill were “high-class, educated, important Negroes, living well, working in big jobs and positions” (p. 42). He now believes that they were only “breaking their backs trying to imitate white people” (p. 42). The class distinctions between African Americans with “professional” jobs (p. 43) reinforce the systemic oppression toward the poorer African Americans. Instead of sharing a cultural identity, the African Americans of Roxbury are creating their own system of classist discrimination. The population of the Hill that is relatively well-off emulates the behavior of white people and looks “down their noses” (p. 42) at the other African Americans even though they live “no further away than you could throw a rock” (p. 42).).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)

- haughty (adj.) – disdainfully proud; snobbish
- misapprehension (n.) – a failure to understand fully
- euphemism (n.) – the mild, indirect, or vague expression substituted for one thought to be offensive, harsh, or blunt

- inconspicuously (adv.) – not easily noticed or seen; not prominent
- putting on airs (idiom) – acting in a way that shows you think you are better than other people

Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)

- dignity (n.) – nobility or elevation of character; worthiness
- dignified (adj.) – characterized or marked by dignity of aspect or manner
- indignity (n.) – an injury to a person's dignity; slighting or contemptuous treatment

Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- strivers (n.) – those who try very hard to do or achieve something
- scramblers (n.) – persons or things that move or act quickly to do, find, or get something often before someone else does
- jammed (v.) – filled (a place) completely

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standards: RI.11-12.2, W.11-12.9.b, L.11-12.4.b • Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 3, pages 42–46 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda 2. Homework Accountability 3. Reading and Discussion 4. Central Ideas Discussion 5. Quick Write 6. Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 10% 2. 15% 3. 40% 4. 15% 5. 15% 6. 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)
- Copies of the Central Ideas Tracking Tool for each student (optional)

- Copies of the Annotation Markings Bookmark for each student (optional)
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.2. In this lesson, students read and discuss chapter 3 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* focusing on the early emergence of central ideas in the text and how they interact and build on one another.

- Students look at the agenda.

❗ **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

Post or project standards RI.11-12.2, W.11-12.9.b, and L.11-12.4.b. Instruct students to focus on RI.11-12.2 and talk in pairs about what they think the standard means. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

💬 Student responses should include:

- The standard requires students to identify central ideas within a text.
- The standard requires students to analyze how the central ideas develop.
- The standard requires students to identify how central ideas are related.

Instruct students to focus on W.11-12.9.b and talk in pairs about how they think the standard applies to their writing. Lead a brief discussion about the substandard.

💬 The standard requires students to use evidence from literary nonfiction texts to support ideas in writing.

Instruct students to focus on L.11-12.4.b and talk in pairs about what they think the standard means. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

● Student responses should include:

- The standard requires students to identify patterns of word changes and use the patterns or word parts to determine word meaning.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read chapter 3 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing how Malcolm Little develops over the course of the events in the text (RI.11-12.3).

● Student questions may include:

Why does Malcolm X call the conk an “emblem of his shame” (p. 57)?

- Since the conk is an attempt to make African-American hair more like a white person's hair, it represents for Malcolm X a shameful attempt to emulate another culture. It is his “first really big step toward self-degradation” (p. 56) because it symbolizes that African Americans are perceived to be inferior to white people and are better if they look more like white people.

- ① If similar examples emerge from student responses, consider drawing students' attention to the various examples of African-American self-expression that Malcolm X highlights. Consider leading a class discussion focusing on how these examples communicate information about Malcolm X and his views.

How has Freddie “schooled” Malcolm Little (p. 51)?

- Freddie teaches Malcolm that “everything in the world is a hustle” (p. 51). Malcolm finds out that most of Freddie's income came from “selling liquor and reefers” (p. 51).

- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Lead a brief whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

40%

Instruct students to form pairs. Instruct student pairs to reread pages 42–44 (from “So I went gawking around the neighborhood” to “I actually looked older than most of them”). Instruct students to annotate for central ideas (using the code CI) throughout the reading and discussion. Remind students that annotating helps them to keep track of evidence they will use later in lesson assessments and the End-of-Unit Assessment, which focus on the development of central ideas.

- ① This focused annotation supports students’ engagement with W.11-12.9.b, which addresses the use of textual evidence in writing.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use the Central Ideas Tracking Tool to record the central ideas they identify and discuss.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students need support with annotation, provide the following questions and explanations:

What are some purposes for marking the text?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Marking the text helps you to remember what you are reading by writing your thoughts about the text.
- Marking the text helps you to keep track of important ideas.
- Marking the text helps you to think about unfamiliar words.
- Marking the text helps you to question the text or make connections between ideas.

Consider explaining to students that annotation is a skill for reading closely. Also consider noting the relationship of annotation to standard RI.11-12.1: annotation helps students look closely at text evidence to determine a text’s explicit and implicit meanings.

How does annotation change the way you read?

💬 Student responses may include:

- It connects you to the text more deeply by helping you pay close attention to details.
- It makes it difficult for you to just skim because it slows down your reading.

Explain that readers use shorthand ways of marking text so as not to take time away from their reading. Display and explain the following codes:

- Box unfamiliar words.
- Star (*) important or repeating ideas.

- Put a question mark (?) next to a section you are questioning or confused about, and write your question down.
- Use an exclamation point (!) for connections between ideas or ideas that strike or surprise you in some way, and provide a brief note explaining the connection.

Share with students that, besides using the codes, annotating the text with their thoughts is important. Explain that the codes are used throughout the year, beginning with their reading of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. Annotating using codes help students think more deeply about the details in the text and keep track of their thinking.

To help students remember annotation codes, post the codes in the classroom, make sure students have copied the codes in their notebooks or agendas, and provide copies of the Annotation Markings Bookmark.

- ▶ Students write the annotation codes in their notebooks or refer to the Annotation Markings Bookmark that includes their explanations.

Provide students with the following definitions: *haughty* means “disdainfully proud; snobbish,” *misapprehension* means “a failure to understand fully,” and *euphemism* means “the mild, indirect, or vague expression substituted for one thought to be offensive, harsh, or blunt.”

- ① Students may be familiar with some of these words. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing them to the group.
 - ▶ Students write the definitions of *haughty*, *misapprehension*, and *euphemism* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *strivers* means “those who try very hard to do or achieve something,” *scramblers* means “persons or things that move or act quickly to do, find, or get something often before someone else does,” and *jammed* means “filled (a place) completely.”
 - ▶ Students write the definitions of *strivers*, *scramblers*, and *jammed* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students throughout the lesson:

What central ideas does the author introduce in this chapter? How do the central ideas build on each other?

Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss in pairs before sharing out with the class.

How does Malcolm X describe the Waumbeck and Humbolt Avenue Hill section of Roxbury?

- Malcolm X compares it to Sugar Hill in Harlem. He describes it as “a snooty-black neighborhood” where the African-American inhabitants “looked down their noses” (p. 42) at the people who lived in the nearby ghetto.

Why does Malcolm X state that the inhabitants of the Hill are “brainwashed even more thoroughly” (p. 42)?

- Malcolm X states that the apparent “haughty and dignified” (p. 42) behavior of the African Americans in this neighborhood is no different from the “‘successful’ Negro bootblacks and janitors back in Lansing” (p. 42). The residents of the Hill think that they have achieved success, but they have only managed to imitate successful white people.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle, consider posing the following questions to support their understanding.

What different forms of the word *dignity* does Malcolm X use to describe the inhabitants of the Hill?

- Student responses may include:
 - They look “haughty and dignified” (p. 42).
 - They pride themselves on being “‘cultivated’; ‘dignified’” (p. 42).
 - They are “dignity-posturing” (p. 43).
 - They “could stand the indignity of that kind of self-delusion” (p. 43).

What does the word *dignity* mean in this context?

- The word *dignity* means self-worth or high status.

Using the definition of *dignity* and examining the word parts and patterns, what definitions can you infer for the words *dignified* and *indignity*?

- Dignified* means “with dignity”: Malcolm X states that the African Americans on the Hill “walked ... looking haughty and dignified” (p. 42). *Indignity* means “without dignity.” Malcolm X is describing people under a “self-delusion” (p. 43), which implies that the inhabitants of the Hill are incorrect in their self-perception.

Why does Malcolm X use both “dignified” and “indignity” to describe the inhabitants of the Hill?

Malcolm X is suggesting that the dignity of the inhabitants of the Hill is false. They believe they are “better off” (p. 42) than others, but they are not.

- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their work with L.11-12.4.b as they use context clues to determine the meaning of a word.

What does Malcolm X mean when he states that “[f]oreign diplomats could have modeled their conduct” (p. 43) on the postmen and dining car waiters of the Hill?

He is implying that the “successful” people who lived on the Hill were so comically refined in their actions that they seemed like international dignitaries. They acted as if they had a high-status job, when in reality they were in the service industry.

How does the behavior of the residents of the Hill relate to the idea of integration?

Although the African Americans who live in the Waumbeck and Humbolt Avenue Hill area have property and some social station, they are still separate from the white community. They are attempting to imitate the behavior of rich or important white people, such as those “in banking” (p. 43) or “in securities” (p. 43), when in fact they are “forty- and fifty-year-old errand boys” (p. 43).

***How is the behavior of the residents of the Hill divisive among the African-American community?**

The residents’ behavior creates a system in which some African Americans believe they are “better off than their black brethren down in the ghetto” (p. 42). Even the people who live on the Hill are divided, with the “snooty New-Englanders” looking down on the “Southern strivers and scramblers and West Indian Negroes” (p. 42).

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Central Ideas Tracking Tools to record the central ideas they identified and discussed.

Instruct student pairs to reread pages 44–46 (from “I didn’t want to disappoint or upset Ella” to “find a friend as hip as he obviously was”). Remind students to annotate for central idea (using the code CI) throughout the reading and discussion.

Provide students with the following definitions: *inconspicuously* means “not easily noticed or seen; not prominent,” and *putting on airs* means “acting in a way that shows you think you are better than other people.”

① Students may be familiar with some of these words. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing them to the group.

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *inconspicuously* and *putting on airs* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

Why does Malcolm X feel more comfortable down in the “ghetto”?

- 🗣 He feels more at home around people who are “being their natural selves” (p. 45). Even though he lives on the Hill, he does not think of himself as better than any other African Americans. This feeling is in direct contrast to the other African Americans who live on the Hill, who look down on anyone who lived in the “so-called ‘town’ section” (p. 42).

What might this preference indicate about how Malcolm X views himself?

- 🗣 Malcolm X states that his “instincts were never—and still aren’t—to feel myself better than any other Negro” (p. 45), which implies that Malcolm X considers himself someone who is “not putting on airs” of superiority (p. 45). He thinks of himself as someone who behaves naturally and does not need to emulate white people or look down on other African Americans.

*How do Malcolm X’s views further refine the difference between the “ghetto” and the “Hill”?

- 🗣 Malcolm X has defined the Hill as a place where “successful” African Americans who were maids and butlers to white families “talked so affectedly” (p. 43) that people couldn’t understand them. This behavior contrasts with the African Americans who live in the “ghetto,” who are more relaxed and natural and are not “putting on airs” (p. 45).

*How does Malcolm X’s reaction to the inhabitants of the Hill contrast with his reaction to the inhabitants of the ghetto?

- 🗣 He is critical of the African Americans on the Hill, calling them “brainwashed” (p. 42) and suffering from “self-delusion” (p. 43). However, young Malcolm Little is drawn to the “cool-looking ‘cats’” (p. 45) of the ghetto. The attitude and style of the hip young people with their hair that is “like white men’s hair” (p. 45) enralls him.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle to identify the differences Malcolm X establishes between the two African-American sections of Boston, consider providing additional support through a teacher-led discussion of the words Malcolm X uses to describe each group.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Activity 4: Central Ideas Discussion

15%

Instruct students to form small groups and review their annotations and responses from the Reading and Discussion activity before responding to the following question:

***What is a central idea developed in pages 42–46? How do the events in these pages develop the central idea?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X’s descriptions of the inhabitants of the “Hill” and the “ghetto” and their day-to-day lives develop the central idea of systemic oppression. The class-based system of the Boston African-American community, where people who live on the Hill feel “better off than their black brethren down in the ghetto” (p. 42) shows that that even within the African-American community there is no equality. The use of the phrase “‘slave’” (p. 46) to refer to work indicates that the world Malcolm X lives in is not too far removed from the days of actual slavery.
- Malcolm X develops the central idea of racial identity through his observations of African Americans in Boston. Malcolm X’s observations of those on the Hill “breaking their backs trying to imitate white people” (p. 42) and those in the ghetto with “hair that was straight and shiny like white men’s hair” (p. 45) establish the pressure that society placed on African Americans to be more like white people.

- ① Consider providing students with the terms *systemic oppression* and *racial identity* to describe concisely the central ideas they identify.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle to identify central ideas, consider instructing them to return to pages 42–46 and to use the annotation code CI to note where an important or recurring idea emerges.

💬 Student annotations may include:

- “looked down their noses at the Negroes of the black ghetto” (p. 42) (systemic oppression)
- “better off than their black brethren down in the ghetto” (p. 42) (systemic oppression)
- “the ones [African Americans] had been brainwashed even more thoroughly” (p. 42) (racial identity)
- “breaking their backs trying to imitate white people” (p. 42) (racial identity)
- “hair that was straight and shiny like white men’s hair” (p. 45) (racial identity)
- “A ‘slave’ meant work, a job” (p. 46) (systemic oppression)

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Central Ideas Tracking Tools to record the central ideas they identified and discussed.

Activity 5: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze how two central ideas in pages 42–46 interact and build on one another.

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson’s vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

- ① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.

- 🗣 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 6: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 4 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text (RI.11-12.2). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

- ▶ Students follow along.

- ① For Accountable Independent Writing (AIW) homework, instruct students to continue planning their response to a Common Application prompt. Students can continue brainstorming or outlining their responses. Additionally, instruct students to read one more model essay and write an objective summary of the essay. If teachers have established online communities, students can read their peer’s summaries from 12.1.1 Lesson 3’s AIW homework to assist them in choosing a new model essay to read. Model essays can be found at <http://www.jhu.edu/> (search term: Essays That Worked).

Homework

Read and annotate chapter 4 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text (RI.11-12.2). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

Central Ideas Tracking Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Identify the central ideas that you encounter throughout the text. Trace the development of those ideas by noting how the author introduces, develops, or refines these ideas in the texts. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Text:	
--------------	--

Page #	Central Ideas	Notes and Connections

Model Central Ideas Tracking Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Identify the central ideas that you encounter throughout the text. Trace the development of those ideas by noting how the author introduces, develops, or refines these ideas in the texts. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Text:	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told by Alex Haley
--------------	---

Page #	Central Ideas	Notes and Connections
Pages 42–43	Systemic oppression	Malcolm X talks about the split between people who live on the Hill and people who live in the ghetto and how the inhabitants of the Hill think imitating “white people” will make them “better.” This division based on class and status is part of a system of oppression in America.
Page 45	Racial identity	Malcolm Little is “entranced” by the hip young men of the ghetto and their hair that is “straight and shiny like white men’s hair.” This idea of “white” hair being the cool and attractive style and African American hair being undesirable is connected to the idea of racial identity.

Annotation Markings Bookmark

Annotation Markings Bookmark	Annotation Markings Bookmark	Annotation Markings Bookmark	Annotation Markings Bookmark
Box unfamiliar words.	Box unfamiliar words.	Box unfamiliar words.	Box unfamiliar words.
Star (*) important or repeating ideas.	Star (*) important or repeating ideas.	Star (*) important or repeating ideas.	Star (*) important or repeating ideas.
Put a question mark (?) next to a section you're questioning or confused about.	Put a question mark (?) next to a section you're questioning or confused about.	Put a question mark (?) next to a section you're questioning or confused about.	Put a question mark (?) next to a section you're questioning or confused about.
Use an exclamation point (!) for connections between ideas or ideas that strike you or surprise you in some way.	Use an exclamation point (!) for connections between ideas or ideas that strike you or surprise you in some way.	Use an exclamation point (!) for connections between ideas or ideas that strike you or surprise you in some way.	Use an exclamation point (!) for connections between ideas or ideas that strike you or surprise you in some way.
<i>Remember</i> to write notes in the margin as you read to record your ideas and thoughts.	<i>Remember</i> to write notes in the margin as you read to record your ideas and thoughts.	<i>Remember</i> to write notes in the margin as you read to record your ideas and thoughts.	<i>Remember</i> to write notes in the margin as you read to record your ideas and thoughts.

12.1.1**Lesson 5****Introduction**

In this lesson, students continue their analysis of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and continue to explore techniques of narrative writing. Students read the opening section of chapter 4, pages 59–62 (from “Shorty would take me to groovy, frantic scenes” to “I never missed a Roseland lindy-hop as long as I stayed in Boston”), in which Malcolm X describes how he learned to dance and adjusted to life in Boston. Student groups answer questions focused on determining the author’s purpose and how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text. Students also begin working with standard W.11-12.3.a, which asks them to focus on using narrative techniques in their own writing. Student learning in this lesson is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 4.

At the end of the lesson, students are introduced to the Performance Assessment task, a practice college interview at the end of the module. Students discuss the task, purpose, and audience for a college interview. For homework, students write a list of ideas about how they would respond to the following college interview question: What three adjectives best describe you?

Also for homework, students review the first paragraph of chapter 1 and respond briefly in writing to the following prompt: In chapter 1, how does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* engage and orient the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishing one or multiple point(s) of view; and introducing a narrator and/or characters? Also for homework, students reread their personal narratives from 12.1.1 Lesson 2 and consider whether they would like to expand those personal narratives into longer compositions or try a different Common Application prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 6.

Standards

Assessed Standard	
RI.11-12.6	Determine an author’s point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.a	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. a. Engage and orient the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance, establishing one or multiple point(s) of view, and introducing a narrator and/or characters; create a smooth progression of experiences or events.
W.11-12.9.b	Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research. b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i> , presidential addresses]”).
SL.11-12.4	Present information, findings, and supporting evidence, conveying a clear and distinct perspective, such that listeners can follow the line of reasoning, alternative or opposing perspectives are addressed, and the organization, development, substance, and style are appropriate to purpose, audience, and a range of formal and informal tasks.
L.11-12.4.a	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of strategies. a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word’s position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students answer the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 4.
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify examples of effective style (e.g., use of slang, metaphors, and imagery). Identify examples of content (e.g., the idea that Malcolm gained a better sense of his identity through learning to dance).

- Analyze how style contributes to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 4 (e.g., The author opens the chapter with a paragraph written completely in slang to show how Malcolm used to talk when he lived in Boston: “Shorty would take me to groovy, frantic scenes in different chicks’ and cats’ pads, where with the lights and juke down mellow” (p. 59). This sentence is an example of how style contributes to the power of a text because the use of slang is a surprising or unexpected beginning to the chapter and shows the reader how Malcolm spoke instead of describing the way he spoke.).
- Analyze how content contributes to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 4 (e.g., The author describes how learning to dance was a way for him to better understand his identity. He states that learning to dance made him feel “as though somebody had clicked on a light” (p. 60). This insight contributes to the beauty of the text by showing how natural dancing felt to Malcolm. He states that he could feel his “long-suppressed African instincts” (p. 60) breaking through. This content demonstrates how Malcolm becomes more aware of his own identity in Boston, among his “own less inhibited people,” an awareness he could not attain in “Mason’s white environment” (p. 60).).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)

- red-letter day (n.) – a memorably important or happy occasion
- sauntered (v.) – walked in a casual manner, strolled

Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)

- inhibited (adj.) – overly restrained

Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- adornments (n.) – things added to make a person or thing more attractive
- initiative (n.) – the power or opportunity to do something before others do
- harbored (v.) – had (something, such as a thought or feeling) in your mind for a long time
- prestige (n.) – the respect and admiration that someone or something gets for being successful or important

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.6, W.11-12.3.a, W.11-12.9.b, SL.11-12.4, L.11-12.4.a Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 4, pages 59–62 Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability Reading and Discussion Quick Write Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 15% 15% 40% 15% 15%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)
- Copies of the Style and Content Tool for each student (optional)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
☞	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

15%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.6. In this lesson, students continue to analyze *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, reading the first section of chapter 4 in order to determine the author's purpose as well as how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text.

- ▶ Students look at the agenda.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

Post or project standard RI.11-12.6. Explain to students that *rhetoric* refers to the specific techniques that writers or speakers use to create meaning in a text, enhance a text or a speech, and, often, persuade readers or listeners.

Explain to students that *style* and *content*, two of the other key terms in this standard, are both related to *rhetoric*. Inform students that *style* refers to how the author expresses content, which frequently includes the use of figurative language or rhetorical devices. *Content* refers to what the author writes, including events, ideas, and details the author chooses to include. Both style and content may have rhetorical effects on a text, which is to say that an author's choices around style and content may advance his or her point of view and purpose in the text, or contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

In this unit, students consider how the use of rhetoric affects the power and beauty of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. By discussing rhetoric in terms of how the author uses style and content, students' narrative writing is supported as they learn that stylistic choices are distinct from—but not unrelated to—content choices.

Provide students with the following definitions: *point of view* is “an author's opinion, attitude, or judgment” and *purpose* is “an author's reason for writing.”

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use the Style and Content Tool to track the author's stylistic and content choices and determine how these choices contribute to the author's point of view and purpose as well as to the power or beauty of the text. Students may record the definitions of *rhetoric*, *style*, *content*, *point of view*, and *purpose* on their tools.

Instruct students to talk in pairs about what they think RI.11-12.6 means. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

💬 Student responses should include:

- The standard asks students to figure out an author's point of view or purpose.
- The standard asks students to analyze how the author uses rhetoric in the text.

- The standard asks students to analyze how the style of the text (i.e., how it is written) and the content (i.e., the material the author includes) help to make the text more powerful, persuasive, or beautiful.

Post or project standard W.11-12.3.a. Instruct students to talk in pairs about how the standard applies to their writing. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

🗨 Student responses should include:

- The standard requires students to get the reader's attention at the beginning of the story, creating a setting and identifying a situation or problem to be discussed.
- The standard requires students to introduce a narrator and/or other characters at the beginning of the story.
- The standard requires students to clearly establish one or more points of view (i.e., that of the narrator and other characters).
- The standard requires students to write about the events at the beginning of the story in a smooth and clear way.

Inform students that for homework they should consider how the author engages and orients the reader in the introduction of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, and they will continue to explore standard more deeply in the next lesson.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read and annotate chapter 4 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text (RI.11-12.2). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about the discussion questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing central ideas that emerged in earlier chapters and further develop in this section of the text (RI.11-12.2).

🗨 Student questions may include:

How do Malcolm Little's reactions to the customers in the drug store develop a central idea in the text?

- 🗨 Malcolm X states, "They soon had me ready to quit, with their accents so phonied up that if you just heard them and didn't see them, you wouldn't even know they were Negroes" (p.

63). This description demonstrates that Malcolm X thinks the African Americans on the Hill are trying to adopt the behaviors of white people. This example develops the central idea of “racial identity” by showing how Malcolm X is uncomfortable among African Americans whom he sees as acting phony.

How do the reactions in Roxbury to Malcolm Little’s relationship with Sophia develop a central idea in the text?

Malcolm X states that since he was “with the best-looking white woman who ever walked in those bars and clubs ... even the big, important black hustlers and ‘smart boys’ ... were clapping me on the back, setting us up to drinks at special tables” (p. 71). This description shows how the people in Roxbury treated him better once he had a white girlfriend. He goes on to explain, “In the ghetto, as in suburbia, it’s the same status struggle to stand out in some envied way from the rest ... she had her own fine ‘rubber’ as we called a car in those days. And I had her, which was even better” (p. 71). Having a white girlfriend increased Malcolm’s status in the African American community of Roxbury and develops the ideas of racial identity and systemic oppression, because his friends are impressed with Sophia because she is white.

- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief, whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

40%

Instruct students to form small groups. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text as they read and discuss.

Instruct student groups to read pages 59–62 (from “Shorty would take me to groovy, frantic scenes” to “After that, I never missed a Roseland lindy-hop as long as I stayed in Boston”).

- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout this lesson:

How does the author make this part of the text powerful or beautiful?

Instruct students to Think, Pair, Share on the following question:

***What is the author's purpose in this excerpt?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- The author's purpose is to show how Malcolm Little adjusts to life in Boston by describing how he started to talk like the people with whom he spent time and started to go to the dances that were popular at the time.
- This excerpt shows how Malcolm Little has changed since his arrival in the city.
- The excerpt demonstrates that Malcolm Little is now comfortable with city life and has adapted to the culture of "hipsters" and the big dances at the ballroom.

Instruct students to read page 59 from "Shorty would take me to groovy, frantic scenes" to "I was talking the slang like a lifelong hipster" and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Instruct students to annotate for rhetorical devices, using the code RD throughout the reading and discussion. Remind students that annotating helps them to keep track of evidence they will use later in lesson assessments and the Mid-Unit Assessment, which focus on rhetoric.

① This focused annotation supports students' engagement with W.11-12.9.b, which addresses the use of textual evidence in writing.

*** How does the author's use of slang advance his purpose and contribute to the power of this excerpt?**

💬 The use of slang in the first paragraph contributes to the author's purpose of showing what Malcolm X's life was like in the past and how he has changed. By stating that the slang "was used by everyone I respected as 'hip' in those days" (p. 59), Malcolm X implies that he no longer uses the same kinds of words. The paragraph has words like "chicks," "cats," "groovy," and "hip" as examples of the kind of slang he used to use. The effect of this style is to show the reader how Malcolm X used to talk rather than just describing his speech; this use of language makes Malcolm X's character come alive.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider asking the following optional extension question to deepen students' understanding of style in the text:

How does Malcolm X use slang rhetorically to develop his point of view in this chapter?

💬 Malcolm X uses the slang to describe how he used to speak, but it is clear from the rest of the chapter that he no longer speaks with slang. By inserting the paragraph of slang, Malcolm X is

distinguishing between the person he was, who respected people as “hip,” and the new values of the person he has become.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct students to read pages 59–60 from “Like hundreds of thousands of country-bred Negroes” to “he said he’d known I’d soon outgrow it anyway” and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Why is Malcolm Little humiliated that he cannot dance?

🗣 Student responses may include:

- Malcolm is humiliated that he cannot dance because dancing is an important part of the social life in Boston. Malcolm X explains that he had “acquired all the other fashionable ghetto adornments” in order to “erase [his] embarrassing [country] background” (p. 59). Malcolm viewed the fact that he could not dance as another part of his “embarrassing background” (p. 59).
- Malcolm is also “humiliated” that he cannot dance because he views dancing as an important part of his racial identity. Malcolm describes how growing up in Mason made him think dancing was “a certain order or pattern of specific steps” (p. 60) but learns in Boston that dancing is different among his “own less inhibited people” (p. 60). Here Malcolm X draws a distinction between the way African American people and white people danced at the time and shows that he is trying to identify more with African Americans.

How does the style and content of Malcolm X’s description of learning to dance contribute to the power or beauty of the text?

🗣 Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X states that learning to dance was “as though somebody had clicked on a light” (p. 60). This insight contributes to the beauty of the text by showing how natural dancing felt to Malcolm. He states that he could feel his “long-suppressed African instincts” (p. 60) breaking through. This content demonstrates how Malcolm is becoming more aware of his own identity in Boston, among his “own less inhibited people,” an awareness he could not attain in “Mason’s white environment” (p. 60).
- Malcolm X also uses figurative language when he compares himself to a “‘dancing jigaboo’ toy[.]” (p. 60). He states, “I was like a live [toy]—music just wound me up” (p. 60). This simile contributes to the power of the text by creating an image of the energy that Malcolm felt when he started dancing.

How do these descriptions of learning to dance impact the development of Malcolm X's character?

These descriptions develop Malcolm X's character by demonstrating how in Boston he began to view dancing as a natural and essential part of his African-American identity. Malcolm X discusses the difference he sees between white and African-American styles of dancing and states that dancing done by whites "involved a certain order or pattern of specific steps" (p. 60), but that "here among [his] own less inhibited people" (p. 60) he discovered a more "natural" way of dancing (p. 60). In this way, Malcolm X is better able to connect with his own identity and distinguish the person he was becoming in Boston from the person he was growing up in "Mason's white environment" (p. 60).

① If necessary, remind students that the use of figurative language such as metaphor and simile is a stylistic choice.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle, consider asking the following questions:

What contrast does Malcolm X draw between the way white people in Mason danced and the way African Americans in Boston danced?

Malcolm X states that "[his] people" were "less inhibited" (p. 60) than whites who danced according to specific steps and patterns, while he describes dancing among his people as "letting your feet, hands, and body simultaneously act out whatever impulses were stirred" (p. 60).

How does this contrast help you determine the meaning of *inhibited* as used in the text?

In this context, *inhibited* means the opposite of spontaneous or free, so *inhibited* means "restrained" or "following a set of rules."

① Consider drawing students' attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of determining the meaning of words through context.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider asking the following optional extension question to deepen students' understanding of style in the text.

How is the language Malcolm X uses to contrast what he considers "white" dancing and African American dancing an example of using rhetoric to advance a purpose? How does this stylistic choice contribute to the power in the text?

Malcolm X uses language like "order" and "pattern" to describe the way white people dance, which suggests that there is one correct way of dancing in the "white environment" in which he was raised (p. 60). Malcolm X describes his own experience of learning to dance, on the other hand, as having his "long-suppressed African instincts [break] through" (p. 60). He associates words like *spontaneously* and *impulse* and *natural* with the African American way of dancing

while stating that those African Americans who cannot dance are “inhibited” because they are “integrated” (p. 60). Malcolm X’s purpose in this example is to suggest that white society keeps African Americans from being themselves and dancing, which in Malcolm X’s experience, is a symbol of how this denial of identity works. Malcolm X advances his purpose of showing how dancing is related to identity by creating associations in the readers’ minds for each kind of dancing, which adds power to the text by sharply distinguishing each form of dancing in the reader’s mind and thus helping Malcolm X to make his larger point about racial oppression in America.

What is Ella’s reaction to Malcolm Little quitting his job? How does Ella’s reaction develop her character?

- Malcolm X states that when he told her why he quit, Ella “laughed aloud” (p. 60). He explains that “[s]he was glad, because she had never liked the idea of [his] working at that no-prestige job” (p. 60). The reason she is glad he quit is different from his own reasons. Ella wants him to get a more respectable job while Malcolm wants to make more time to go out dancing. This example develops her character by demonstrating how she is protective of Malcolm and is more concerned with his social status and the “prestige” of his job than he is.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Style and Content Tools to record stylistic or content choices they identified and discussed.

Instruct students to read pages 60–62 (from “Shorty could dance all right himself, but for his own reasons” to “After that, I never missed a Roseland lindy-hop as long as I stayed in Boston”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definitions: *red-letter day* means “a memorably important or happy occasion” and *sauntered* means “walked in a casual manner, strolled.”

- ① Students may be familiar with some of these words. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing them to the group.
 - ▶ Students write the definitions of *red-letter day* and *sauntered* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *adornments* means “something added to make a person or thing more attractive,” *initiative* means “the power or opportunity to do something before others do,” *harbored* means “had (something,

such as a thought or feeling) in your mind for a long time,” and *prestige* means “the respect and admiration that someone or something gets for being successful or important.”

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *adornments*, *initiative*, *harbored*, and *prestige* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

***How does Malcolm X’s description of his purchase of his second zoot suit advance his purpose in this excerpt?**

☞ Student responses may include:

- He describes the color as “shark-skin gray” and the pants “ballooning out at the knees and then tapering down to cuffs so narrow that I had to take off my shoes to get them on and off” (p. 61), to create a vivid picture of how he looked.
- The descriptions of this suit further develop how Malcolm was adopting the style of the “hipsters” in Boston.
- The description of the zoot suit purchase also develops Malcolm’s character by showing how important he thought the selection of the right suit was. Malcolm X states that he went to the clothing shop “the morning after I quit Roseland” (p. 61), which shows that even though he no longer had a job he was willing to spend money on a new suit.

How does Malcolm X’s mention of his “first barbershop conk” (p. 61) develop his character?

☞ Student responses may include:

- Previously, Malcolm had got his conk done with Shorty using a homemade formula. Having his first barbershop conk meant that he spent more money on doing it.
- Malcolm’s “first barbershop conk” (p. 61) demonstrates how he was adapting to the lifestyle of African Americans in the city as opposed to where he came from.

***Who is Malcolm Little’s “replacement” (p. 61)? How does Malcolm X use imagery to describe their interaction?**

☞ Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X states that his replacement is “a scared, narrow-faced, hungry-looking, little brown-skinned fellow just in town from Kansas City” (p. 61). He uses the word “replacement” figuratively to say that this young man was just like Malcolm when he first came to the city: he “couldn’t keep down his admiration and wonder” (p. 61).
- Malcolm demonstrates how much he has adapted to his new life when he advises his replacement to “keep cool” and “that he’d soon catch on to the happenings” (p. 61).
- The description of his replacement suggests that Malcolm was similar to the young man when he first arrived in Boston, but that Malcolm had successfully adopted the dress and

style of the city well enough to cause “admiration and wonder” (p. 61) in someone who was just coming from the country.

How does the author vary sentence length and syntax to contribute to the power or beauty of the text in the paragraph beginning “I’d been lindyng previously only in cramped little apartment”?

☛ The author switches between short and long sentences that describe what Malcolm experienced while dancing in the ballroom. The variety of sentences creates a sense of movement and conveys the fast pace of the dance, where Malcolm is “snatching partners” and going “wild” (p. 63). Then the author uses a short sentence such as “Hamp’s band wailing” (p. 63) to emphasize a description and keep up the fast pace of the paragraph. The author alternates between starting sentences with “I” and starting sentences with verbs like “boosting” and “whirling,” which avoids repetition and creates interest in the text. These varied sentences make the text interesting and create a fast pace that mimics the pace of the scene being described.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the definition of *syntax*: “the way in which words are put together to form phrases, clauses, or sentences.” Explain to students that *syntax* is the order of the words in a sentence (e.g., noun, verb, object).
- ① Inform students that authors vary sentence length and syntax to avoid repetition and add emphasis. This variation is a rhetorical device or stylistic choice called *variations in syntax*. Define *variations in syntax* as “changes in sentence length, style, or complexity for stylistic effect.”

How does the content of this paragraph contribute to the power of the text?

☛ Malcolm X lists descriptions of all the types of people at the dance: “Black girls, brownskins, high yellows, even a couple of the white girls” (p. 62) to show the variety of people who came to the dance and how he danced with all kinds of women. Malcolm X informs the reader that he “wasn’t quite sixteen” but “looked like twenty one” which gives the reader a clear sense of what Malcolm looked like at the time (p. 63). This description creates power in the text by creating strong visual images of the scene Malcolm experienced.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Style and Content Tools to record stylistic or content choices they identified and discussed.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 4.

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson's vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.

💬 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing**15%**

Explain to students that for the Performance Assessment at the end of the module they will practice a college interview, which many colleges and universities require as part of the application process. Inform students that they will prepare for this college interview throughout the module.

- ① The questions that students will practice are also suitable for career interviews. Teachers may adapt any of the language of instruction and the language of the college interview preparation to address career interviews as well.
- ① If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to take it out and refer to it for this portion of the lesson closing.

Post or project standard SL.11-12.4. Instruct students to talk in pairs about what they think the standard means. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

💬 Student responses should include:

- The standard requires students to orally share information demonstrating a clear opinion.
- The standard requires students to choose a structure, topic, and way of speaking that demonstrate an awareness of purpose, audience, and task.

Instruct students to take out and review their statements of purpose for their college application essays. Ask students to Think, Pair, Share about the following questions:

What is the purpose of a college interview? What makes the college interview similar to and different from the college essay?

💬 Student responses may include:

- The purpose of a college interview is to allow the interviewer to get to know the applicant and make a recommendation to the school about whether or not the applicant should be accepted.
- The purpose is to give the applicant the opportunity to demonstrate his/her speaking abilities.
- The purpose is to give the applicant the opportunity to present him/herself as interesting and memorable to the admission board.
- The purpose of an interview is basically the same as the purpose of a college essay, but the skills an applicant demonstrates in the interview are verbal and not written.

Who is the audience of a college interview? How is this audience similar to and different from a college essay?

💬 Student responses may include:

- The audience is either an admissions board member or a graduate representing and reporting to the admissions board.
- Although the people reading the essay or conducting the interview may be different, they have the same goal in mind, which is to determine whether or not the applicant should be accepted by the school.

What is the task of a college interview? How is this task similar to and different from a college essay?

💬 Student responses may include:

- The task of a college interview is to answer questions that the interviewer poses.
- This task is similar to a college essay in that the applicant is relating information about him/herself.
- The task differs from a college essay in that it is a speaking task without strict word-limits.
- In an interview, the applicant generally answers many questions, not just one as in a college essay.

Lead a brief, whole-class discussion of student responses. Then allow time for students to add to their statements of purpose a few sentences about their purpose, audience, and task for a college interview.

① Remind students to keep their statements of purpose in a writing journal or folder as a portfolio of their narrative writing throughout the module.

Display or distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to write a list of ideas about how they would respond to the following college interview question. Remind students to keep in mind their task, purpose, and audience as they consider their response. Inform students that they will practice responding to this interview question in the following lesson.

What three adjectives best describe you?

Also for homework, instruct students to reread pages 1–4 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and then respond briefly in writing to the following prompt about W.11-12.3.a:

In chapter 1, how does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* engage and orient the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishing one or multiple point(s) of view; and introducing a narrator and/or characters?

Additionally, instruct students to reread their statements of purpose from 12.1.1 Lesson 2 and consider if the Common Application prompt they have chosen still seems to achieve their statements of purpose. If not, students should choose a new prompt to respond to in 12.1.1 Lesson 6.

① Students who have been completing their Accountable Independent Writing each night should gather their brainstorm and finalize their outlines and/or story maps to bring to class for their work in 12.1.1 Lesson 6. Students who have access to the Internet at home should post their outlines and/or story maps to the online writing community for peer review in subsequent lessons.

► Students follow along.

Homework

Write a list of ideas about how you would respond to the following college interview question. Remember to keep in mind your task, purpose, and audience as you consider your response. You will practice responding to this interview question in the following lesson.

What three adjectives best describe you?

Also, reread pages 1–4 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and then respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

In chapter 1, how does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* engage and orient the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishing one or multiple point(s) of view; and introducing a narrator and/or characters?

Additionally, reread your statements of purpose from 12.1.1 Lesson 2 and consider if the Common Application prompt you have chosen still seems to fulfill your statement of purpose. If not, choose a new prompt to respond to in 12.1.1 Lesson 6.

Style and Content Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Use this tool to track the stylistic or content choices you encounter in the text, as well as examples and explanations of these choices. Be sure to note the rhetorical effect of each choice on the text.

RI.11-12.6: Determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

Rhetoric: _____

Style: _____

Content: _____

Point of View: _____

Purpose: _____

Example of style (figurative language or rhetorical device) or content (events, ideas, details) (with page reference)	Rhetorical effect (power, beauty, point of view, purpose)

Model Style and Content Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Use this tool to track the stylistic or content choices you encounter in the text, as well as examples and explanations of these choices. Be sure to note the rhetorical effect of each choice on the text.

RI.11-12.6: Determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

Rhetoric: the specific techniques that writers or speakers use to create meaning in a text, enhance a text or a lecture, and often, persuade readers or listeners

Style: how the author expresses content, which frequently includes the use of figurative language or rhetorical devices

Content: what the author writes, including events, ideas, and details the author chooses to include

Point of View: an author's opinion, attitude, or judgment

Purpose: an author's reason for writing

Example of style (figurative language or rhetorical device) or content (events, ideas, details) (with page reference)	Rhetorical effect (power, beauty, point of view, purpose)
Malcolm X uses slang to open the chapter and states, "[I]n no time at all, I was talking the slang like a lifelong hipster" (p. 59), to show how he adapted to his new circumstances in Boston and began talking like the people around him.	Malcolm X uses the slang to describe how he used to speak, but it is clear from the rest of the book that he no longer talks that way. By inserting the paragraph of slang, Malcolm X is distinguishing between the person he was (who respected people as "hip") to the person who he has become, a person with different values.
Malcolm X uses figurative language when he states that it was "as though somebody had clicked on a light" (p. 60) when he first learned to dance.	This metaphor contributes to the power of the text by describing how natural dancing felt to Malcolm once he began dancing. This realization and the way Malcolm X describes it contributes to the power of the text by demonstrating how dancing helped him to understand himself and his identity.

Malcolm X also uses figurative language when he compares himself to a “‘dancing jigaboo’ toy[]” (p. 60). He states, “I was like a live [toy]—music just wound me up” (p. 60).	This simile contributes to the power of the text by creating an image of the energy that Malcolm felt when he started dancing.
Malcolm X describes how while he was working, he could not help but react to the music. He writes, “My shine rag popped with the rhythm of those great bands rocking the ballroom” (p. 60).	Malcolm X uses interesting verbs like “popped” and “rocking” to describe his experience in a powerful way. These words also sound like the slang Malcolm X uses at the beginning of the chapter. By using these kinds of words, the author creates a powerful experience by showing, through specific language, how Malcolm felt during the time he was describing.
Malcolm X uses language like “order” and “pattern” to describe the way white people dance, which suggests that there is one correct way of dancing in the “white environment” in which he was raised (p. 60). Malcolm X describes his own experience of learning to dance, on the other hand, as having his “long-suppressed African instincts [break] through” (p. 60). He associates words like “spontaneously” and “impulse[]” and <i>natural</i> with the African-American way of dancing while stating that those African Americans who cannot dance are “inhibited” because they are “integrated” (p. 60).	Malcolm X’s purpose in this example is to suggest that white society keeps African Americans from being themselves and dancing, which in Malcolm’s experience is a symbol of how this denial of identity works. Growing up, Malcolm thought there was only one correct way of dancing, which he did not know how to do, but he learns in Boston that there is another way of dancing, and he can dance in this other way. Malcolm X advances his purpose of showing how dancing is related to identity by creating associations in the readers’ minds for each kind of dancing, which adds power to the text by sharply distinguishing each form of dancing in the reader’s mind and thus helping Malcolm X to make his larger point about racial oppression in America.
The author uses variations in syntax in the paragraph beginning “I’d been lindyng previously only in cramped little apartment living rooms” (p. 62).	Varying syntax makes the text interesting and powerful. Short sentences also create a fast pace that mimics the pace of the dancing scene the author describes.

<p>Malcolm X lists descriptions of all the types of people at the dance: “Black girls, brownskins, high yellows, even a couple of the white girls” (p. 62) to show the variety of people who came to the dance and how he danced with all kinds of women. Malcolm X informs the reader that he “wasn’t quite sixteen” but “looked like twenty one,” which gives the reader a clear sense of what Malcolm looked like at the time. (p. 63)</p>	<p>This description of the types of people at the dance, including Malcolm X, creates power in the text by creating strong visual images of the scene Malcolm experienced.</p>
---	--

12.1.1

Lesson 6

Introduction

In this lesson, students begin to draft their personal narratives. Students examine the opening structure of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, paying close attention to the ways in which this introductory paragraph orients the reader to the text. Student learning in this lesson is assessed via students' draft introductions.

For homework, students read chapter 5 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on RI.11-12.6, boxing any unfamiliar words in the chapter and looking up their definitions.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.a	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. a. Engage and orient the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance, establishing one or multiple point(s) of view, and introducing a narrator and/or characters; create a smooth progression of experiences or events.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.f	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. f. Adapt voice, awareness of audience, and use of language to accommodate a variety of cultural contexts.
W.11-12.5	Develop and strengthen writing as needed by planning, revising, editing, rewriting, or trying a new approach, focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific purpose and audience.
L.11-12.4.c	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of strategies. c. Consult general and specialized reference materials (e.g., dictionaries, glossaries, thesauruses), both print and digital, to find the pronunciation of a word or determine

	or clarify its precise meaning, its part of speech, its etymology, or its standard usage.
--	---

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a written response to the following prompt:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Draft an introduction in response to one of the Common Application prompts, focusing on engaging and orienting the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishing one or multiple point(s) of view; and introducing a narrator and/or characters. <p>① Student responses will be evaluated using the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric.</p>
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Engage and orient the reader (e.g., If my life to date were a novel, the motif would be “shoes.” Shoes have made a huge impact on my life in ways varied and unexpected.). Set out a problem, situation, or observation (e.g., Shoes have shaped my college and career plans, and shoes have even affected me personally.). Establish one or multiple points of view and introduce a narrator and/or characters (e.g., A passion for shoes is a family trait. My father was a long-distance runner and an early athletic-shoe aficionado who later became CFO of an athletic shoe manufacturer, where he helped develop some of the first high-tech running shoes. Following in my father’s footsteps, I acquired a passion for learning about shoes and have amassed an impressive collection of athletic shoes.).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*

*Because this is not a close reading lesson, there is no specified vocabulary. However, in the process of returning to the text, students may uncover unfamiliar words. Teachers can guide students to make meaning of these words by following the

protocols described in 1e of this document http://www.engageny.org/sites/default/files/resource/attachments/9-12_ela_prefatory_material.pdf.

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: W.11-12.3.a, W.11-12.3.f, W.11-12.5, L.11-12.4.c Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapters 1–4 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability Writing Instruction: Engaging and Orienting the Reader Drafting and Assessment Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 10% 20% 20% 45% 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)
- Student copies of their statements of purpose from 12.1.1 Lesson 2
- Student copies of the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 2)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
☞	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
①	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: W.11-12.3.a. In this lesson, students begin drafting the introductions of their personal narratives. Additionally, students engage in a group discussion around the effective use of introductions in personal narrative by examining the introduction to *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. This work also supports W.11-12.5, which asks students to develop and strengthen writing as needed by planning, revising, editing, rewriting, or trying a new approach, focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific purpose and audience.

- ▶ Students look at agenda.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

Post or project standard L.11-12.4.c. Instruct students to talk in pairs about what they think the standard means. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

💬 Student responses should include:

- The standard asks students to use reference materials like dictionaries and glossaries to determine the meaning of words they do not know.
- The standard asks students to use reference materials to find out more information about a word, like its part of speech, its origin, and how it is used in a sentence.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

20%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Write a list of ideas about how you would respond to the following college interview question. Remember to keep in mind your task, purpose, and audience as you consider your response. What three adjectives best describe you?)

Instruct students to form pairs to ask and answer the college interview question. For this initial practice session, students should focus on communicating their information by speaking clearly and making eye contact.

- ▶ Students practice asking and answering the college interview question.

① Instruct students to keep their interview preparation notes in a writing journal or folder as a portfolio of their interview preparation throughout the module.

Instruct students to take out their second homework assignment. (Reread pages 1–4 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and then respond briefly in writing to the following prompt: In chapter 1,

how does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* engage and orient the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishing one or multiple point(s) of view; and introducing a narrator and/or characters?)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about their answers to the prompt.

Student responses may include:

- The author begins the story before Malcolm X is born: “When my mother was pregnant with me, she told me later” (p. 1). He describes an attack by the Ku Klux Klan on his house. By beginning with this intense event, the author immediately engages the reader and sets out the situation of the world he was born into, which was racist, dangerous, and violent.
- The author introduces the character of Malcolm X’s father by describing how he was “enraged” (p. 1) by the attack from the Klan and decided to move his family, even though “he was not a frightened Negro” (p. 2). The author depicts Malcolm X’s father as a strong man who believed that “freedom, independence, and self-respect could never be achieved by the Negro in America” (p. 2). Malcolm X’s father had already seen four of his brothers die by violence, and he was willing to “risk and dedicate his life” to spreading the philosophy that African Americans should “return” to their “land of origin” (p. 2). The reader gets a strong impression of the character of Malcolm X’s father and learns about his history at the beginning of the narrative.
- Malcolm X connects himself, as narrator, to his father and his father’s siblings and their struggle in America by stating, “It has always been my belief that I, too, will die by violence” (p. 2). This statement helps to establish Malcolm X’s point of view that his life will also be a struggle, connecting him to the struggle of his ancestors.
- Malcolm X makes the observation that the University of Michigan is located near the town where he used to live, and he describes an occasion later in life when he spoke to a group of students at the university. He tells the students that when he was young, the people in the town nearby had “harassed [his family] so much that [they] had to move” (p. 4). By jumping forward in time to describe how he speaks to a group of students, Malcolm X shows how he has gone from being harassed by the people in the town to being asked to speak at the university, which foreshadows how much his life is going to change in the course of the text.

Instruct students to discuss in pairs the third part of the homework assignment. (Reread your statement of purpose from 12.1.1 Lesson 2 and consider which Common Application prompt will allow you to best achieve your purpose.)

① Consider posting or projecting for student reference the following prompts from the Common Application:

- Some students have a background or story that is so central to their identity that they believe their application would be incomplete without it. If this sounds like you, then please share your story.
- Recount an incident or time when you experienced failure. How did it affect you, and what lessons did you learn?
- Reflect on a time when you challenged a belief or idea. What prompted you to act? Would you make the same decision again?
- Describe a place or environment where you are perfectly content. What do you do or experience there and why is it meaningful to you?
- Discuss an accomplishment or event, formal or informal, that marked your transition from childhood to adulthood within your culture, community, or family.

Explain to students that they should now select a prompt to use in this lesson to craft an introduction. Students will have opportunities to work with different prompts in future lessons if they identify a prompt that will better help them accomplish their task and purpose and appeal to their audience.

- ▶ Students choose a Common Application prompt.

Activity 3: Writing Instruction: Engaging and Orienting the Reader

20%

Explain to students that the introduction of a personal narrative is different from the introduction of a formal essay or research-based argument paper. The introduction to a personal narrative should establish a relationship between the narrator and the reader, and orient the reader to the problems or events that will be addressed in the rest of the narrative.

① Consider reminding students of their work with narrative writing and W.11-12.3 in Module 11.4.

Lead a whole-class discussion to allow students to consider the language of W.11-12.3.a. Ask students the following questions.

What does it mean to “engage” a reader?

- 💬 To involve the reader in the story by capturing his or her interest.

What does it mean to “orient” a reader?

- 💬 To give the reader a sense of where and when he or she is in the story.

Why does an author need to engage and orient their reader?

- 💬 An author engages and orients the reader in order to capture the reader’s attention, encourage the reader to continue reading the story, and explain what the narrative is about.

According to standard W.11-12.3.a, how might the author engage and orient the reader?

- By setting out a problem or situation, or making an observation and explaining or suggesting why it is important.

Instruct students to turn to the opening paragraph of chapter 1 in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and consider how the first paragraph engages and orients the reader. Ask students to consider the first sentence:

“When my mother was pregnant with me, she told me later, a party of hooded Ku Klux Klan riders galloped up to our home in Omaha, Nebraska, one night.” (p. 1)

How does the first sentence of the text establish a narrator and set out a problem or situation?

- The first sentence establishes that the narrator is the unborn child. The story is taking place in Omaha, Nebraska, where a group of Ku Klux Klan riders have surrounded the house.

Instruct students to consider the second sentence of the paragraph:

“Surrounding the house, brandishing their shotguns and rifles, they shouted for my father to come out.” (p. 1)

How does the second sentence further develop the problem or situation?

- The second sentence adds clarifying details to the situation, and it raises the tension of the encounter. Now the reader knows that not only have the Klansmen arrived in the night, they are armed and have surrounded the house.

Instruct students to consider the third and fourth sentences of the paragraph:

“My mother went to the front door and opened it. Standing where they could see her pregnant condition, she told them that she was alone with her three small children, and that my father was away, preaching, in Milwaukee.” (p. 1)

What information do these sentences establish about the narrator’s mother and father?

- The opening sentences inform the reader that the narrator’s father is a traveling preacher. They also show that the narrator’s mother is not easily scared: she goes to the front door and tells the armed men threatening her and her family that the person they are looking for is not there.

Instruct students to consider the final sentence of the paragraph:

“The Klansmen shouted threats and warnings at her that we had better get out of town because ‘the good Christian white people’ were not going to stand for my father’s ‘spreading trouble’ among the ‘good’ Negroes of Omaha with the ‘back to Africa’ preachings of Marcus Garvey.” (p. 1)

How does the final sentence of the paragraph continue to orient the reader to the situation?

- The final sentence shows that the Klansmen are threatening Malcolm X's family out of prejudice and racism, because they believe Malcolm X's father is causing trouble and inciting the rest of the African-American community.

How does the first paragraph establish a point of view? What is the tone of the first paragraph?

- The first paragraph establishes the narrator's point of view as someone who did not witness the incident but knows the details. The narrator's use of unemotional, factual statements to describe the Klansmen's terrifying visit creates an ominously calm tone. The narrator also puts some phrases in quotes to indicate that he does not agree with the Klansmen's descriptions; this use of quotations creates a sarcastic or angry tone. This tone helps to establish the narrator's point of view about the incident by suggesting that he views the actions of the Klansmen with disdain and anger.

Explain to students that they should provide the same level of information and vivid detail in their own introductions to orient and engage the reader with the text. However, the scope of their personal narratives may focus on a much shorter amount of time and the events may be less intense than Malcolm X's experiences.

Explain to students that it is helpful to keep in mind who the reader is in order to engage and orient him or her. Inform students that they should always consider the task, purpose, and audience as they craft their introductions. Instruct students to take out their statements of purpose from 12.1.1 Lesson 2 and consider whether they would like to revise their statements of purpose based on their Accountable Independent Writing (AIW) work over the past several days. In reading model college application essays and brainstorming, students may have refined their understanding of purpose, task, or audience. If students would like to revise their statements of purpose, allow time for them to do so.

Direct students to Think, Pair, Share about the following questions.

- ① [Students were introduced to the concepts of task, purpose, and audience in 12.1.1 Lesson 2.](#)

How does the task inform your introduction?

- Student responses may include:
 - When writing a personal essay, the task of the introduction is to engage the reader in the story from the beginning.
 - The introduction should orient the reader to the situation or problem in the story so that the reader can follow the narrative more easily.

- In an essay of 650 words, the introduction should quickly and effectively engage and orient the reader in order to leave space for the narrative to develop and conclude.

How does your purpose inform your introduction?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Since the purpose is to allow a college admissions board to get to know the applicant better and to convince the board to accept the applicant, the introduction should convey the writer's point of view and use a style that is formal, yet also personal.
- The introduction, like the rest of the essay, should be well written, using a clear and logical style to demonstrate the applicant's writing abilities to a college admissions board.
- The introduction should be interesting and memorable and grab the attention of a college admissions board in order to help the applicant stand out from other applicants.
- The introduction should set out a problem that will be solved over the course of the essay.

How does your audience inform your introduction?

💬 Student responses may include:

- The introduction should be written with a tone appropriate for a college admissions board.
- Since a college admissions board does not know the applicant, he or she needs to explain anything that may be personal or unfamiliar in the introduction.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses. Remind students to be mindful of their task, purpose, and audience as they craft their introductions.

Activity 4: Drafting and Assessment

45%

Explain to students that this lesson assesses how effectively they engage and orient the reader; set out a problem, situation, or observation; and establish one or multiple points of view. Remind students to keep in mind their task, purpose, and audience as they draft their introductions.

- ▶ Students listen.

Remind students to use the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist to guide their writing. Lead a brief discussion of the rubric and checklist categories: W.11-12.3.a and W.11-12.3.f. Review the components of a High Performance Response.

Instruct students to respond in writing to the following prompt. Remind students to pay close attention to how their language creates an engaging progression of events.

Draft an introduction in response to one of the Common Application prompts, focusing on engaging and orienting the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishing one or multiple point(s) of view; and introducing a narrator and/or characters.

- ▶ Students listen and read the writing prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent writing.

① Consider drawing students' attention to their work with W.11-12.3.f as they adapt voice and language use to reflect their appropriate audience.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.

☞ See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

① Instruct students to keep their narratives in a writing journal or folder as a portfolio of their narrative writing throughout the module.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display or distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 5 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (RI.11-12.6). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

Also, direct students to box any unfamiliar words in the chapter and look up their definitions. Instruct them to choose the definition that makes the most sense in context, and write a brief definition above or near the word in the text.

① Students may also annotate for parts of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* that they find engaging and where they would like to consider using similar techniques in their own writing.

- ▶ Students follow along.

① For AIW homework, instruct students to continue drafting their narratives. Students can continue the draft they worked on during this lesson or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt. Remind students to focus on engaging and orienting the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishing one or multiple point(s) of view; introducing a narrator and/or characters; and creating a smooth progression of experiences or events.

Homework

Read and annotate chapter 5 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (RI.11-12.6). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

Also, box any unfamiliar words in the chapter and look up their definitions. Choose the definition that makes the most sense in context, and write a brief definition above or near the word in the text.

12.1.1

Lesson 7

Introduction

In this lesson, students continue their analysis of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* by reading an excerpt of chapter 5, pages 77–83 (from “Up and down along and between Lenox and Seventh and Eighth Avenues” to “and I left Lansing shocked and rocked”). In this section, Malcolm X discusses his impressions of Harlem and describes a visit back to Lansing, Michigan. Students reread a section of chapter 5 and engage in a group discussion, analyzing how the style and content of the passage advance Malcolm X’s point of view. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: How do style and content in this excerpt advance Malcolm X’s point of view?

For homework, students read chapter 6 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.6	Determine an author’s point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.2.a	Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Introduce a topic; organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; include formatting (e.g., headings), graphics (e.g., figures, tables), and multimedia when useful to aiding comprehension.
W.11-12.9.b	Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of

	constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i> , presidential addresses]").
L.11-12.4.a	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of strategies. a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word's position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.
L.11-12.5.a	Demonstrate understanding of figurative language, word relationships, and nuances in word meanings. a. Interpret figures of speech (e.g., hyperbole, paradox) in context and analyze their role in the text.

Assessment

Assessment(s)

Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.

- How do style and content in this excerpt advance Malcolm X's point of view?

High Performance Response(s)

A High Performance Response should:

- Determine the point of view (e.g., When he first came to Harlem, Malcolm Little was "mesmerized" (p. 78) and proud to adapt to the style, but looking back on it, he has a negative view of how he dressed and behaved.).
- Describe examples of style that develop the point of view (e.g., Malcolm X uses figurative language to describe his reaction to Harlem. He states that he was "mesmerized" (p. 78) by the "technicolor bazaar" (p. 77) of Harlem. These words show that he was excited and overwhelmed by everything he saw, a point of view he further advances by stating that he was "narcotized" (p. 78) by Harlem. Malcolm X suggests that his attraction to Harlem was like being drugged, which both demonstrates how strongly he felt at the time and advances his point of view that he now looks back on this attraction in a negative light.).
- Describe examples of content that develop the point of view (e.g., Malcolm X uses content to develop his point of view by talking about the way he was dressed like "a clown, but [his] ignorance made [him] think [he] was 'sharp'" (p. 81). He states about his "orange-colored 'kick-up'" shoes that "shoe companies made these ridiculous styles for sale only in the black ghettos

where ignorant Negroes like me would pay the big-name price" (p. 81). This content develops Malcolm X's point of view that at the time he was "mesmerized" by Harlem and the lifestyle he was adopting, but he was still unaware of the meaning of some of his actions and decisions.).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> bazaar (n.) – a marketplace or shopping quarter depraved (adj.) – corrupt, wicked, or perverted placate (v.) – to cause someone to feel less angry about something parasitical (adj.) – describing a person or thing that takes something from someone or something else and does not do anything to earn it or deserve it uncouth (adj.) – behaving in a rude way; not polite or socially acceptable
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> mesmerized (adj.) – hypnotized; having one's attention held entirely
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> narcotized (adj.) – under the effects of a drug (such as cocaine, heroin, or marijuana) that affects the brain and that is usually dangerous and illegal sterile (adj.) – very plain and not interesting or attractive inevitable (adj.) – sure to happen; certain accumulated (v.) – increased gradually in amount as time passes

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.6, W.11-12.2.a, W.11-12.9.b, L.11-12.4.a, L.11-12.5.a Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 5, pages 77–83 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 10% 15%

3. Reading and Discussion	3. 55%
4. Quick Write	4. 15%
5. Closing	5. 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)
- Student copies of the Style and Content Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 5) (optional)—students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
▶	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.6. In this lesson, students continue their analysis of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, reading an excerpt from chapter 5 and focusing on how the style and content of the excerpt advance Malcolm X's point of view.

- ▶ Students look at the agenda.

❗ **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

- ▶ Students read and assess their understanding of standards W.11-12.2.a and L.11-12.5.a.

Post or project standards W.11-12.2.a and L.11-12.5.a. Instruct students to focus on W.11-12.2.a and talk in pairs about how they think the standard applies to their writing. Lead a brief discussion about the standard. Ask students the following questions:

How does standard W.11-12.2.a compare to standard W.11-12.3.a? How do the standards differ?

💬 Student responses should include:

- Standard W.11-12.2.a requires students to introduce a topic and organize ideas about that topic so they build on one another.
- Similarly, standard W.11-12.3.a requires students to introduce elements (like the problem situation, narrator, or characters) and to organize those elements to create connections.
- Standard W.11-12.2.a is about writing that explains or informs, whereas standard W.11-12.3.a is about narrative writing, or writing that tells a story.

① Students were introduced to W.11-12.3.a in 12.1.1 Lesson 6.

Ask student pairs to discuss their understanding of L.11-12.5.a. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

💬 Student responses should include:

- The standard asks students to understand figurative language, word relationships, and word meanings.
- The standard asks students to determine the meaning of figures of speech in context and consider how they are used in the text.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read and annotate chapter 5 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (RI.11-12.6). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing the author's point of view or purpose and how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the chapter (RI.11-12.6).

💬 Student questions may include:

How do Malcolm X's descriptions of the people at "Small's Paradise" develop the author's purpose in this chapter?

- Malcolm X states he was “hit first, I think, by their conservative clothes and manners” (p. 75). He describes the contrast between the customers at Small’s and African Americans he has met in other places. Malcolm X states that “[w]ithin the first five minutes in Small’s, I had left Boston and Roxbury forever” (p. 76). These examples serve the author’s purpose of demonstrating how different Harlem was than any place Malcolm had ever been, and the effect Harlem had on Malcolm.

How does Malcolm X’s description of the history of Harlem contribute to the power of the text?

- Malcolm X describes how the community was originally Dutch, but when the Germans moved there, the Dutch moved away. “Then came the Irish,” he writes, and “[t]he Germans ran” (p. 84). This pattern continued until African Americans moved in: “In 1910, a Negro real estate man somehow got two or three Negro families into one Jewish Harlem apartment house. The Jews flew from that house, then from that block, and more Negroes came in to fill their apartments” (p. 85). Malcolm is “staggered” (p. 85) to learn of this history. His descriptions contribute to the power of the text by illustrating how much he learns while spending time at Small’s listening “raptly to customers who felt like talking” and how “it all added to [his] education” (p. 86).
- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief, whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Instruct student pairs to share and discuss the vocabulary words they identified and defined in the previous lesson’s homework.

- Students may identify the following words: *bazaar, depraved, placate, parasitical, uncouth*.

- ① Definitions are provided in the Vocabulary box in this lesson.

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

55%

Instruct students to form small groups. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text as they read and discuss.

- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.

Instruct student groups to read pages 77–78 (from “Up and down along and between Lenox and Seventh and Eighth avenues” to “In one night, New York—Harlem—had just about narcotized me”) and

answer the following questions before sharing out with the class. Remind students to annotate for examples of style and content and point of view (POV).

- ① Consider reminding students that this focused annotation supports their engagement with W.11-12.9.b, which addresses the use of textual evidence in their writing.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Style and Content Tool to record rhetorical devices they identify and discuss.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definition: *narcotized* means “under the effects of a drug (such as cocaine, heroin, or marijuana) that affects the brain and that is usually dangerous and illegal.”
 - ▶ Students write the definition of *narcotized* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout this lesson:

What does Malcolm X think now about how he used to dress and behave during the time described in this passage?

Analyze the language Malcolm X uses to describe Harlem in the first two paragraphs.

- 💬 Malcolm X uses vivid language to depict Harlem as a vibrant and interesting place that is also dangerous.
- 💬 Student responses may include:
 - Malcolm X calls Harlem a “technicolor bazaar,” suggesting that it is a vibrant, bustling market (p. 77). He describes the “Negro soldiers gawking” (p. 77) and men without women being “worked” (p. 78) by prostitutes and hustlers.
 - He states that Harlem was “off-limits” (p. 78) to white servicemen, because there had already been “muggings and robberies” (p. 78).
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle, consider asking the following questions.

How is Malcolm Little “mesmerized” by what he saw (page 78)? What is the meaning of *mesmerized* in this context?

- 💬 Malcolm X uses the word *mesmerized* to describe his stunned and fascinated reaction to the “technicolor bazaar” of Harlem, where he saw “prostitutes,” “pimps,” and “hustlers” (p. 78). Malcolm X describes himself as “gawking and young” when he sees these things. Therefore in this context, *mesmerized* means “overwhelmed” or surprised.

- ① Consider drawing students' attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of using context to make meaning of a word.

***How does the author use style and content to advance Malcolm X's point of view about his experience in Harlem?**

💬 Student responses should include:

- Malcolm X states that "this world was where I belonged" (p. 78), showing that at the time he felt that he fit in with the world he was describing.
- Malcolm X explains that he was "going to become one of the most depraved parasitical hustlers among New York's eight million people" (p. 78). Both *depraved* and *parasitical* have negative meanings, and describe someone without morals and someone who feeds on others, suggesting that Malcolm X's current point of view or opinion about the decisions he made during this time is negative.
- Malcolm X uses figurative language when he states that he was "narcotized" (p. 78) by Harlem. He implies that at the time being in Harlem was like being drugged, which both demonstrates how strong the attraction of Harlem was for him and advances his point of view of that now he sees the experience in a negative light.

- ① Consider drawing students' attention to their application of standard L.11-12.5.a through the process of using context to interpret the meaning of figurative language.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct students to read pages 78–81 (from "That sandwich man I'd replaced had little chance of getting his job back" to "I got a few hours of sleep before the 'Yankee Clipper' rolled again") and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class. Remind students to annotate for rhetorical devices (RD) and point of view (POV).

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definition: *sterile* means "very plain and not interesting or attractive."

- ▶ Students write the definition of *sterile* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

In paragraph 4, how does Malcolm X describe his experience at his job?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X states that the "sandwich man [he] replaced had little chance of getting his job back" because Malcolm was an excellent salesman, going "up and down the aisles" working

hard to sell “sandwiches, coffee, candy, cake, and ice cream as fast as the railroad’s commissary department could supply them” (p. 78).

- Malcolm X states that if he gave “white people a show ... they’d buy anything you offered them” and explains how the other African Americans he worked with had figured out that “white people are so obsessed by their own importance that they will pay liberally, even dearly, for the impression of being catered to and entertained” (p. 78).

How does Malcolm X’s use of the word “faked” to describe his coworkers’ “Uncle Tomming” (p. 78) advance his point of view?

- 💬 Malcolm X states that his African American coworkers “faked their Uncle Tomming to get bigger tips” (p. 78), which means that his coworkers pretended to act subserviently to white people so the white people would be pleased. Malcolm X’s use of the word “faked” shows that he is aware of and comfortable with deceiving white railroad customers who are “obsessed by their own importance” (p. 78).
- ① The phrase “Uncle Tomming” is a reference to the title character from *Uncle Tom’s Cabin*, and is also used to describe someone who is subservient to authority. “Uncle Tom” often refers to a black person acting subserviently to a white person.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider asking the following optional extension question to deepen students’ understanding.

How does Malcolm X’s description of “Uncle Tomming” for the white railroad customers (p. 78) relate to his use of the term *Uncle Tom* on pages 3 and 49?

- 💬 Student responses may include:
 - On page 3, Malcolm X describes how his father had started to save money for a store that he wanted to own when “some stupid local Uncle Tom Negroes began to funnel stories about his revolutionary beliefs to the local white people.” Here, Malcolm X describes how the actions of “Uncle Tom Negroes” caused white residents to attack his family and force them to move.
 - On page 49, Malcolm X describes how his mentor at the shoeshine job, Freddie, tells him to “Uncle Tom a little—white cats especially like that” (p. 49). In this instance Malcolm X is describing behavior similar to what workers did on the railroad in order to get more tips, which is to behave in a subservient manner so that white people will keep coming back to get their shoes shined.
 - The examples of Malcolm X using the term “Uncle Tom” show that it applies to African Americans trying to win the favor of whites by either acting subserviently or betraying fellow African Americans by “funnel[ing] stories” to whites (p. 3).

- When describing how he behaves at the shoeshine and how “the dining car waiters and Pullman porters” behave on the railroad job, Malcolm X uses “Uncle Tom” and “Uncle-Tomming” as verbs. In these instances, Malcolm X suggests that African Americans put on a show in order to get more customers or money. When he describes the betrayal of fellow African Americans in Michigan he uses “Uncle Tom” as an adjective, which implies that the particular people he describes truly want to win the favor of whites at the cost of other African Americans.

What words and phrases does Malcolm X use to describe the areas in Harlem he visited (p. 79)? How do these words and phrases compare to those he used to describe Harlem earlier in the chapter?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X recalls “rat trap apartment houses ... crawling” with “illegal and immoral” behavior (p. 79). He uses figurative language to describe the disgusting state of the rat-infested apartments that are “crawling” with illegal activity.
- Malcolm X describes Harlem with “[d]irt, garbage cans overflowing or kicked over; drunks, dope addicts, beggars. Sleazy bars, store front churches ... barbershops advertising conk experts” (p. 79). The overall effect of these descriptions of the “slum blocks” (p. 79) is negative and contrasts with his initial description of being “mesmerized” (p. 78) by the “technicolor bazaar” (p. 77) of Harlem.

What does Malcolm X mean by “profanity had become my language” (p. 80)? How is this an example of content advancing his point of view?

- 💬 Malcolm X means that he had started talking like the people on the streets with whom he was spending time and was no longer so easily able to relate to customers and the people he worked with on the train. He states that he would “even curse customers” (p. 80). He doesn’t mean that profanity was the only words he spoke, but that he spoke them so frequently he began to get in trouble in other parts of his life. Including this content helps to advance Malcolm X’s negative point of view about this time in his life.

① Consider drawing students’ attention to their work with L.11-12.5.a in interpreting the use of a figure of speech in the text.

***How does the story of the fight (pp. 80–81) advance Malcolm X’s point of view?**

- 💬 Malcolm X describes how a “big, beefy” (p. 80) white soldier tried to start a fight with him, but Malcolm tricked the soldier into taking most of his clothes off and, therefore, getting laughed at. Malcolm X describes how he realized, “I couldn’t have whipped that white man as badly with a club as I had with my mind” (p. 81). Malcolm X states that he “would never forget” the lesson

that his mind can be more powerful than violence, which suggests that this lesson informs his current point of view.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct students to read pages 81–83 (from “Many of the New Haven Line’s cooks and waiters” to “and I left Lansing shocked and rocked”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class. Remind students to annotate for rhetorical devices (RD) and point of view (POV).

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Considering providing students with the following definitions: *inevitable* means “sure to happen; certain” and *accumulated* means “increased gradually in amount as time passes.”

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *inevitable* and *accumulated* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

***How do Malcolm X’s descriptions of how he looked (p. 81) advance his point of view?**

- 💬 Malcolm X describes how he looked back in Harlem: “I was really a clown, but my ignorance made me think I was ‘sharp’” (p. 81). He states that “shoe companies made these ridiculous styles for sale only in the black ghettos where ignorant Negroes like me would pay the big-name price” (p. 81). With this content, Malcolm X advances his point of view that the decisions he made in those days were not as good as he thought.

***How do the interactions Malcolm Little has in Lansing advance his point of view in the excerpt?**

- 💬 Student responses may include:
 - He describes how his “zoot suit, the long, narrow, knob-toed shoes” were “just about too much for Mrs. Swerlin” (p. 82). He describes how “between the way I looked and my style of talk, I made her so nervous and uncomfortable that we were both glad when I left” (p. 82). This description demonstrates how drastically Malcolm has changed since he left Lansing and how he was aware of other people’s reactions, even at the time.
 - Malcolm X describes how he left “Lansing shocked and rocked,” meaning that the people in his hometown were surprised at the person he had become (p. 83). This content advances his point of view at the time of how he saw himself as “sharp” and “hip” (p. 81) in relation to people in his hometown.
 - Malcolm X describes how “[t]he only thing that brought [him] down to earth” (p. 82) was his visit to his mother in the state hospital. This content advances his point of view by showing

that he was so caught up in his new persona that it took a visit to his mother, who is suffering in the hospital, to bring him back to reality.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

How do style and content in this excerpt advance Malcolm X's point of view?

Instruct students to look at their annotations and to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson's vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to focus on introducing their topic and organizing their ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.

☞ See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display or distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 6 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text (RI.11-12.2). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

Also, instruct students to write a one-paragraph summary of the text through chapter 6, focusing on how Malcolm X's character has developed over the course of the text.

① Students may use their Character Development Tools from 12.1.1 Lesson 3 to trace Malcolm X's character development.

① If necessary, explain to students that an effective summary is brief, objective, and explains the most important text-based details.

- ▶ Students follow along.

- ① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they have been working on or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt that better allows them to achieve their statements of purpose. Remind students to focus on engaging and orienting the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance, establishing one or multiple point(s) of view, and introducing a narrator and/or characters.

Students may post their drafts to the class's online writing community and be paired for peer review. Remind peer reviewers to consider how effectively their peer engages and orients the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishes one or multiple point(s) of view; introduces a narrator and/or characters; and creates a smooth progression of experiences or events.

Consider maintaining the same peer review pairs through 12.1.1 Lesson 12 so that students can provide and receive consistent feedback from a peer familiar with their work in relation to W.11-12.3.a.

Homework

Read and annotate chapter 6 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text (RI.11-12.2). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

Also, write a one-paragraph summary of the text through chapter 6, focusing on how Malcolm X's character has developed over the course of the text.

Model Style and Content Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Use this tool to track the stylistic or content choices you encounter in the text, as well as examples and explanations of these choices. Be sure to note the rhetorical effect of each choice on the text.

RI.11-12.6: Determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

Rhetoric: the specific techniques that writers or speakers use to create meaning in a text, enhance a text or a lecture, and often, persuade readers or listeners

Style: how the author expresses content, which frequently includes the use of figurative language or rhetorical devices

Content: what the author writes, including events, ideas, and details the author chooses to include

Point of View: an author's opinion, attitude, or judgment

Purpose: an author's reason for writing

Example of style (figurative language or rhetorical device) or content (events, ideas, details) (with page reference)	Rhetorical effect (power, beauty, point of view, purpose)
Looking back on when he first arrived in Harlem, Malcolm X explains that he was "going to become one of the most depraved parasitical hustlers among New York's eight million people" (p. 78).	Both depraved and parasitical have negative meanings, and describe someone without morals and someone who feeds on others, suggesting that Malcolm X's current point of view or opinion about the decisions he made during this time is negative.
Malcolm X uses figurative language when he states that he was "narcotized" (p. 78) by Harlem.	He is saying that at the time it was like he was being drugged, which both demonstrates how strong the feeling was for him and advances his point of view of looking back on the experience in a negative light.
Malcolm X states that "profanity had become my language" and he would "even curse customers" (p. 80). These phrases are an example of content advancing his point of view.	Malcolm X means that he had started talking like the people on the streets with whom he was spending time and was no longer so easily able to relate to customers and the people he worked with on the train. He doesn't mean that profanity

	was the only words he spoke, but that he spoke them so frequently he began to get in trouble in other parts of his life. This content helps to develop Malcolm X's current negative point of view about this time in his life.
Malcolm X describes how a "big, beefy" (p. 80) white soldier tried to start a fight with him, but Malcolm X tricked the soldier into taking most of his clothes off and, therefore, getting laughed at. Malcolm X describes how he realized "I couldn't have whipped that white man as badly with a club as I had with my mind" (p. 81).	Malcolm X states that he "would never forget" (p. 81) the lesson that his mind can be more powerful than violence, which suggests that this lesson informs his current point of view.
Malcolm X writes about how he looked back in Harlem: "I was really a clown, but my ignorance made me think I was 'sharp'" (p. 81). He states that "shoe companies made these ridiculous styles for sale only in the black ghettos where ignorant Negroes like me would pay the big-name price" (p. 81).	This content advances Malcolm X's point of view that the decisions he made in those days were not as good as he thought.
He describes how his "zoot suit, the long, narrow, knob-toed shoes" were "just about too much for Mrs. Swerlin" (p. 82). He describes how "between the way I looked and my style of talk, I made her so nervous and uncomfortable that we were both glad when I left" (p. 82).	This description demonstrates how drastically Malcolm X has changed since he left Lansing and how he was aware of other people's reactions, even at the time.
Malcolm X describes how he left "Lansing shocked and rocked" (p. 83), meaning that the people in his hometown were taken aback and confused about the person he had become.	This content advances his point of view at the time of how he saw himself as "sharp" and "hip" (p. 81) in relation to people in his hometown.
Malcolm X describes how "[t]he only thing that brought [him] down to earth" (p. 82) was his visit to his mother in the state hospital.	This content advances his point of view by showing that he was so caught up in his new persona that it took a visit to his mother, who is suffering in the hospital, to bring him back to reality.

12.1.1

Lesson 8

Introduction

In this lesson, students continue their analysis of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, by reading three brief excerpts from chapter 6 (page 93 from “Many times since, I have thought about it” to “when hard times would force me to have my own burglary ring”; page 105 from “But the middle-Harlem narcotics force found so many ways” to “It becomes truly the survival of only the fittest”; and pages 107–110 from “My brother Reginald was waiting for me” to “never bothered to ask why I was rejected”). In these passages, Malcolm X describes his brother’s visit to Harlem as well as how he avoids the draft by acting erratically and saying controversial things at the draft board. Students determine and analyze central ideas in the text. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: Analyze how two central ideas in this chapter interact and build on one another.

For homework, students read chapter 7 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.2	Determine two or more central ideas of a text and analyze their development over the course of the text, including how they interact and build on one another to provide a complex analysis; provide an objective summary of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.9.b	<p>Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research.</p> <p>b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i>, presidential addresses]”).</p>
L.11-12.4.b	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of

	<p>strategies.</p> <p>b. Identify and correctly use patterns of word changes that indicate different meanings or parts of speech (e.g., <i>conceive</i>, <i>conception</i>, <i>conceivable</i>).</p>
--	--

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Analyze how two central ideas in this chapter interact and build on one another.
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify two central ideas in the chapter (e.g., systemic oppression and racial identity). Analyze how the two central ideas interact and build on one another (e.g., In this chapter Malcolm X discusses the central idea of systemic oppression. He writes that African Americans in Harlem were “black victims of the white man’s American social system” (p. 93) and were forced to engage in criminal activity in order to survive. Later in the chapter he develops this idea with the metaphor of survival among animals to demonstrate the effects of oppression. This idea interacts with the idea of racial identity in Malcolm X’s discussion of “Negro ‘firsts’” (p. 109), which Malcolm X describes as African Americans who were among the first to do a certain job. The concept of “Negro ‘firsts’” demonstrates the central ideas of racial identity and systemic oppression by showing that while the white social system forced most African Americans into poverty, during extreme times like war, the same system allowed some African Americans to attain better jobs. Even though the attainment of these better jobs seems positive, Malcolm X argues that the creation of “Negro ‘firsts’” actually helped to reinforce a negative racial identity for African Americans. Malcolm X argues that those African Americans who became “Negro ‘firsts’” (p. 109) were just like the “‘upper-class’ Negroes” (p. 109) of his time who are “so busy trying to impress on the white man that they are ‘different from those others’ that they can’t see they are only helping the white man to keep his low opinion of <i>all</i> Negroes” (p. 109). Therefore, the effects of systemic oppression can cause people to have a negative racial identity.).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> archetype (n.) – a constantly recurring symbol or motif in literature, painting, etc. siphoned (v.) – passed or drew off through or as if through a tube spiel (v.) – to speak volubly or extravagantly
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> vinegary (adj.) – having a disagreeable character or manner hedged (v.) – avoided giving a promise or direct answer
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> prospective (adj.) – likely to be or become something specified in the future smug (adj.) – having or showing the annoying quality of people who feel very pleased or satisfied with their abilities, achievements, etc.

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.2, W.11-12.9.b, L.11-12.4.b Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 6, pages 97, 105, and 107–110 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability Reading and Discussion Quick Write Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5% 20% 55% 15% 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the Central Ideas Tracking Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 4) (optional) —students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
▶	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
📘	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

5%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.2. In this lesson, students continue to read and analyze *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. Students read three brief excerpts from chapter 6 and focus on how central ideas in the text build and interact on one another.

- ▶ Students look at the agenda.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

20%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read and annotate chapter 6 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text (RI.11-12.2). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion. Also, write a one-paragraph summary of the text through chapter 6, focusing on how Malcolm X's character has developed over the course of the text.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about the summaries they developed for homework.

- 💬 Malcolm X's character has developed from his early years in Lansing, Michigan, where his family is forced to move after they are attacked by white racists. Malcolm is as bright or brighter than his white classmates in Lansing, but because he is African American, his teacher tells him that he

can't be a lawyer. From a young age, therefore, Malcolm is aware of how racism negatively affects African Americans. Malcolm grows restless and tired of living with whites, so he takes the opportunity to move from Lansing to live with his sister in Boston. There, he adopts the lifestyle of a "hipster" and attends parties and dances. Malcolm identifies more with the working class African Americans rather than the wealthier ones on the Hill. But Malcolm is still restless, so he goes to Harlem. There he feels like he has found the place where he truly belongs. Although Malcolm is deeply involved in a life of crime, he continues to demonstrate his intelligence, using his mind to win battles against others, particularly whites who don't give credit to African Americans' intelligence. Malcolm focuses his energy and intelligence on survival in a racist society.

Instruct students to talk in pairs about the questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing central ideas that emerged in earlier chapters and continued in this section of the text, and how they relate to ideas in this chapter (RI.11-12.2).

💬 Student questions may include:

On page 106, in the paragraph beginning "In New York, I rolled and packed," how does Malcolm X develop a central idea of the text?

💬 Malcolm X describes how he could persuade a "conductor [he was] a fellow employee who had to go home on some family business" (p. 106) and be able to ride the railroad for free. Referring to the white conductor, Malcolm X states, "Most whites don't give a Negro credit for having sense enough to fool them—or nerve enough" (p. 106). Here, Malcolm X develops the idea of racial identity by showing a white sense of superiority over African Americans whom white people judge as lesser.

On page 105, in the paragraph beginning "Now, every other day or so, usually in some public place," how does the Malcolm X's description of the situation in Harlem develop a central idea?

💬 Malcolm X states, "Negroes were starting to get very tense in Harlem. One could almost smell trouble ready to break out—as it did very soon" (p. 105). Here Malcolm X develops the idea of systemic oppression. By hinting that trouble was "ready to break out" between the residents of Harlem and the police, Malcolm X develops the idea of how oppression affects the African Americans in Harlem. The residents of Harlem "already thought little enough of the law" (p. 105), he writes, indicating that the African Americans who lived there viewed the police and authority figures as forces set against them.

① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief whole-class discussion using

any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

55%

Instruct students to form small groups. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text as they read and discuss.

Instruct students to read the three paragraphs on page 93 (from “Many times since, I have thought about it” to “when hard times would force me to have my own burglary ring”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class. Remind students to annotate for central ideas (CI).

- ① Consider reminding students that this use of focused annotation supports their engagement with W.11-12.9.b, which addresses the use of textual evidence in writing.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Central Ideas Tracking Tools to record central ideas they identify and discuss.
- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout this lesson:

What is Malcolm X’s opinion about why so many African Americans have to struggle to survive?

***Explain the “‘there but for the grace of God’ symbol” (p. 93). How does this symbol relate to the “wolves” metaphor?**

- 💬 Malcolm X states that to “wolves who still were able to catch some rabbits, it had meaning that an old wolf who had lost his fangs was still eating” (p. 93). In this metaphor, the wolves are the hustlers gathered at the bar and the “old wolf” (p. 93) is the man for whom the others buy drinks and food. This man, who is no longer able to “hustle” (p. 93), on his own serves as a symbol for the others who would be “‘there but for the grace of God’” (p. 93), meaning that they could be in his situation if not for the help of God.

How does the story of Jumpsteady develop a central idea in the text?

- 💬 Jumpsteady, a burglar who used to jump from building to building to complete his robberies, is one of the “black victims of the white man’s American social system” (p. 93). This story develops the idea of systemic oppression by showing how Jumpsteady is a “victim” of the social system

created by whites, because he is denied other opportunities and forced to view “everyday living as *survival*” (p. 93).

- ① Consider reminding students of their work with the central idea of systemic oppression in 12.1.1 Lesson 4.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct students to read the paragraph on page 105 (from “But the middle-Harlem narcotics force found so many ways” to “It becomes truly the survival of only the fittest”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

***How do Malcolm X’s descriptions of the “reefer smokers” on page 105 further develop a central idea?**

- 💬 Malcolm X states that the “reefer smokers” had “the instincts of animals” and if he dropped his “stuff” they “would be on it like a chicken on corn” (p. 105). Malcolm X compares the situation of the drug users and himself to that of animals: “When you become an animal, a vulture, in the ghetto, as I had become, you enter a world of animals and vultures. It becomes truly the survival of only the fittest” (p. 105). According to Malcolm X, among the drug users, dealers, and other criminals, only the strong and ruthless are able to survive. By comparing African American drug addicts to animals, Malcolm X develops the idea that systemic oppression affects the African-American community. The drug addicts who live in a ghetto created by the white social structure lose their humanity and “become ... animal[s]” because they are denied decent employment opportunities (p. 105).
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posing the following extension question to allow for a more detailed discussion of style in the text:

How does this metaphor contribute to the power of the text? How does it develop an idea introduced earlier in the chapter, on page 93?

- 💬 This metaphor contributes power to the text by describing drug dealers and addicts as animals and, thus, Malcolm X powerfully conveys his point about how the ghetto destroys African Americans’ lives. Malcolm X uses the metaphor to highlight how poverty and drugs have taken away their humanity. The metaphor demonstrates in vivid imagery how some African Americans can only hope to “survive” in “the worst of the ghetto” (p. 105) rather than live and thrive in the world. In this way, the metaphor of the drug users living as “animals and vultures” develops the idea from page 93 that African Americans were not able to “aspire to greater things, but to view everyday living as survival” (p. 93).

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Central Ideas Tracking Tools to record central ideas they identified and discussed.

Instruct students to read pages 107–108 (from “My brother Reginald was waiting for me” to “in care of Sammy, I received Uncle Sam’s Greetings”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

How does Malcolm X’s description of his brother’s visit develop Malcolm X’s character in this excerpt?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X compares himself to his brother and finds that Reginald was “a lot more self-possessed” (p. 107) than Malcolm was at 16. This example shows how Malcolm has matured and gained some humility since his experiences as the young man who worked on the trains and was so rude that the old-timers said about him, “‘Man, you can’t tell him nothing!’” (p. 81).
- Malcolm gives Reginald advice about dressing more conservatively, because as he states, “in order to get something you had to look as though you already had something” (p. 108). This example shows how Malcolm is beginning to dress and act differently from the days when he first came to Harlem and dressed in “wild zoot suit[s]” (p. 108).
- Malcolm X also states that he was pleased to see that Reginald “admired my living by my wits” (p. 107), which develops Malcolm’s character by showing how he is proud during this time that he is able to earn a living as a “hustler,” and is happy when others admire him for it.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct students to read pages 108–110 (from “In those days only three things in the world scared me” to “never bothered to ask why I was rejected”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definitions: *archetype* means “a constantly recurring symbol or motif in literature, painting, etc.,” *siphoned* means “passed or drew off through or as if through a tube,” and *spiel* means “to speak volubly or extravagantly.”

① Students may be familiar with these words. Consider asking students to volunteer the definitions before providing it to the class.

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *archetype*, *siphoned*, and *spiel* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *prospective* means “likely to be or become something specified in the future” and *smug* means “having or showing the annoying quality of people who feel very pleased or satisfied with their abilities, achievements, etc.”

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *prospective* and *smug* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

Why do some of the white soldiers have “that vinegary ‘worst kind of nigger’ look” at Malcolm Little (p. 109)? What word can you identify in *vinegary* to help you determine its meaning?

☞ Student responses should include:

- These white soldiers cannot tell that Malcolm is play-acting. They think he is “the worst kind” of African American and are disgusted by him.
- Vinegary contains the word *vinegar*, which is a sour liquid. Malcolm X uses the word *vinegary* to describe how some of the angry white people at the draft office were looking at him. Therefore, in this context, *vinegary* is a way of describing a person who is making a sour face like they have just tasted vinegar.

① Remind students that the author uses the word “nigger” in the text. Students may use the author’s language when reading or citing textual evidence, but they should avoid using the word “nigger” in discussion when they are not quoting from the text as the term is a racial slur. Refer to the Module Overview for more information about how to address the word “nigger” in the classroom.

① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.b through the process of using word patterns and parts to make meaning of a word.

***What is a “Negro ‘first[.]’” (p. 109)? How does Malcolm X’s description of this concept develop a central idea in the text?**

☞ Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X explains “Negro ‘firsts’” by describing how once the war started “the white man ... began letting some Negroes put down their buckets and mops and dust rags and use a pencil” (p. 109) and begin working as a nurse or as a receptionist, for example. He states, “You couldn’t read the Negro press for the big pictures of smug black ‘firsts’” (p. 109). Malcolm X’s use of the word *smug* as well as the mention that these workers held “some twenty-five cent title” (p. 109) shows that he viewed these positions of “Negro ‘firsts’” negatively. These descriptions develop the central idea of racial identity. Malcolm X argues

- that these “Negro ‘firsts’” are actually demeaning because they create a second class of African Americans that “only help[] the white man to keep his low opinion of *all* Negroes” (p. 109). The concept of “Negro ‘firsts’” was actually supporting the racial identity of white people who thought they were superior, while demeaning the racial identity of African Americans by creating divisions among them.
- The concept of “Negro ‘firsts,’” which Malcolm X describes as African Americans who were among the first to do a certain job, supports the idea of systemic oppression, since the description implies control by the white social structure: “the white man during the war ... began letting some Negroes put down their buckets and mops and dust rags and use a pencil” (p. 109). Malcolm X argues that the positions of “Negro ‘firsts’” were created and controlled by white people and not as meaningful as African Americans assumed, since they weren’t a genuine sign of respect but a result of necessity.

① Consider reminding students of their work with the central idea of racial identity in 12.1.1 Lesson 4.

What does the following line suggest about how Malcolm Little interacts with the psychiatrist: “I circled and hedged, watching him closely, to let him think he was pulling what he wanted out of me” (p. 110)? What does the word *hedged* mean in this context?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X describes himself as controlling the interaction by acting the part of an erratic hipster. “I knew I had him,” Malcolm X states, after he tells the psychiatrist how he is going to organize other African Americans to “‘[s]teal us some guns, and kill us crackers!’” (p. 110). Malcolm is able to get what he wants out of the psychiatrist, which is the decision that he shouldn’t be drafted because the psychiatrist thinks that he is unfit for the draft.
- Malcolm X states that when the psychiatrist asked “quiet questions, to get at why I was so anxious,” Malcolm “circled and hedged” with the psychiatrist, and “didn’t rush him” (p. 110). These words and phrases describe how Malcolm was not directly answering the psychiatrist, so it seems *hedged* means to avoid being direct with someone.

What other episodes does this interaction with the Army psychiatrist recall in the text?

💬 Student responses may include:

- This example of Malcolm outsmarting a white Army psychiatrist recalls the episode in which Malcolm was challenged to a fight by a white passenger and embarrassed the passenger by making him take off almost all of his clothes. Malcolm X said about that episode, “I never would forget that—that I couldn’t have whipped that white man as badly with a club as I had with my mind” (p. 81).

- This episode recalls how Malcolm was able to outsmart the white conductors in order to ride the railroad for free. Malcolm X states that he was able to fool the conductor because “[m]ost whites don’t give a Negro credit for having sense enough to fool them—or nerve enough” (p. 106).

How does Malcolm Little’s interaction with the Army psychiatrist develop the idea of racial identity in the text?

- The psychiatrist dismisses Malcolm when he brings up the threat of an African American revolt: “Organize them nigger soldiers, you dig? Steal us some guns, and kill us crackers!” (p. 110). This incident develops the idea of racial identity by showing the fear with which the white psychiatrist viewed this threat from African Americans.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Central Ideas Tracking Tools to record central ideas they identified and discussed.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze how two central ideas in this chapter interact and build on one another.

Instruct students to look at their annotations and to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson’s vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.
- ① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.
- ① If necessary, remind students to use their notes from the previous night’s homework to provide evidence and assist in their understanding of how two central ideas interact and build on one another over the course of chapter.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.
- See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display or distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 7 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Character Development Tools from 12.1.1 Lesson 3 to record Malcolm X's character development through chapter 7. Consider asking students to focus on the different names Malcolm X is called throughout the first chapters of the text.

► Students follow along.

- ① For their Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they have been working on or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt that better allows them to achieve their statements of purpose. Remind students to focus on engaging and orienting the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishing one or multiple point(s) of view; introducing a narrator and/or characters; and creating a smooth progression of experiences or events.

Students may post their drafts to the class's online writing community and be paired for peer review. Remind peer reviewers to consider how effectively their peer engages and orients the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishes one or multiple point(s) of view; introduces a narrator and/or characters; and creates a smooth progression of experiences or events.

Consider maintaining the same peer review pairs through 12.1.1 Lesson 12 so that students can provide and receive consistent feedback from a peer familiar with their work in relation to W.11-12.3.a.

Homework

For homework, read and annotate chapter 7 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

Model Central Ideas Tracking Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Identify the central ideas that you encounter throughout the text. Trace the development of those ideas by noting how the author introduces, develops, or refines these ideas in the texts. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Text:	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley
--------------	---

Page #	Central Idea	Notes and Connections
Page 93	Systemic oppression	Jumpsteady, a burglar who used to jump from building to building to complete his robberies, is one of the “black victims of the white man’s American social system” (p. 93). This story develops the idea of systemic oppression by showing how Jumpsteady is a “victim” of the social system created by whites, because he is denied other opportunities and forced to view “everyday living as <i>survival</i> ” (p. 93).
Page 105	Systemic oppression	Malcolm X compares the situation of the drug users and himself to that of animals: “When you become an animal, a vulture, in the ghetto, as I had become, you enter a world of animals and vultures. It becomes truly the survival of only the fittest” (p. 105). Here Malcolm X argues that among the drug users, dealers, and other criminals, only the strong and ruthless are able to survive. By comparing poor African-American drug addicts to animals, Malcolm X develops the idea of how systemic oppression affects the African American community. The drug addicts who live in a ghetto created by the white social structure lose their humanity and “become ... animal[s]” because they are denied other opportunities (p.105).
Page 109	Racial identity and systemic oppression	Malcolm X’s descriptions of “Negro ‘firsts’” develop the central idea of racial identity. Malcolm X argues that these “Negro ‘firsts’” are actually demeaning because

		<p>they create a second class of African Americans that “only help[] the white man to keep his low opinion of <i>all</i> Negroes” (p. 109). This concept of “Negro ‘firsts’” was actually supporting the racial identity of white people who thought they were superior, while demeaning the racial identity of African Americans by creating divisions among them.</p> <p>The concept of “Negro ‘firsts,’” which Malcolm X describes as African Americans who were among the first to do a certain job, supports the idea of systemic oppression, since the description implies control by the white social structure: “the white man during the war ... began letting some Negroes put down their buckets and mops and dust rags and use a pencil” (p. 109). The “Negro ‘firsts’” positions were created and controlled by white people and not as meaningful as African Americans assumed, since they weren’t a genuine sign of respect but a result of necessity.</p>
--	--	---

12.1.1

Lesson 9

Introduction

In this lesson, students read and analyze *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, chapter 7, pages 114–120 (from “Especially after the nightclubs downtown closed, the taxis and black limousines would be driving uptown” to “my boss and his wife in a gambling house they opened”). In this section of the text, Malcolm Little is fully entrenched in the bustle of Harlem, but as he describes, racial tensions and unrest are beginning to unsettle the neighborhood. Malcolm Little is an accomplished “hustler” at this point, and takes his brother, Reginald, under his wing and teaches him how to get into the game. Students read and annotate this section of text for central ideas, tracing how events develop these central ideas. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: How does an event from chapter 7 further develop a central idea from earlier in the text?

For homework, students read chapters 8 and 9 in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.3	Analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.9.b	Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research. b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy (e.g., <i>The Federalist</i> , presidential addresses)”).
L.11-12.4.a	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of

	<p>strategies.</p> <p>a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word's position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.</p>
--	---

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> How does an event from chapter 7 further develop a central idea from earlier in the text?
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify one central idea (e.g., racial identity, systemic oppression, integration versus separation, or solidarity). Describe how an event or events from chapter 7 develop a central idea (e.g., The central idea of systemic oppression is developed by the description of the riot of 1935 and the later one during World War II. The riots illustrate the tensions between African Americans and white people in Harlem and show how systemic oppression, including the “white merchants of Harlem refusing to hire a Negro, even as their stores raked in Harlem’s money” (p. 116) and the closing of the Savoy Ballroom to keep races from mixing, can explode at the rumor of injustice—“white cops had shot a Negro soldier” (p. 116).).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> in stitches – in a state of uncontrollable laughter valise (n.) – a small piece of luggage that can be carried by hand, used to hold clothing, toilet articles, etc.; suitcase; traveling bag rackets (n.) – organized illegal activities Croesus-rich (adj.) – having wealth like the king of Lydia, 560–546 BCE, who was noted for his great wealth cotillions (n.) – large, formal parties for dancing

Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> lavished (v.) – expended or gave in great amounts or without limit graft (n.) – a payment made to a person profiting by dishonest or unfair means, especially by taking advantage of a position of trust
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> inferior (adj.) – of poor quality: low or lower in quality legitimate (adj.) – real, accepted, or official exclusive (adj.) – available to only a few people because of high cost veteran (adj.) – having a lot of experience in a particular activity, job, etc. integrity (n.) – the quality of being honest and fair

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.3, W.11-12.9.b, L.11-12.4.a Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 7, pages 114–120 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability Reading and Discussion Quick Write Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5% 15% 60% 15% 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the Central Ideas Tracking Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 4) (optional)—students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

5%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.3. In this lesson, students continue to read *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, chapter 7, and analyze how a particular event further develops a central idea.

- Students look at the agenda.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read and annotate chapter 7 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about the questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3).

- 💬 Student questions may include:

What do the “close calls” in this chapter suggest about Malcolm Little?

- 💬 Malcolm was living very dangerously. The first close call on page 112 suggests that Malcolm is proud of his ability pull a “trick” (p. 112) on white police officers and escape. The second “close call” on page 118, in which Malcolm and Sammy “barely escaped,” shows how Malcolm is less in control of the situation than he thinks he is, when Sammy's girlfriend gets mad at him for putting Sammy in danger. At the end of the chapter, the close brush with the

Italian mobsters shows that it was only luck that actually saved them, and he states, “God takes care of fools and babies” (p. 128), which implies that Malcolm X considers himself to have been a fool.

How do the events in this section show that Malcolm Little was a “hustler”?

● The author writes that a hustler is “nervy and cunning enough to live by ... wits, exploiting any prey that presented itself” (p. 111). Malcolm uses the white police officers as part of his getaway, “hailing [them] to ask for directions” (p. 112). This example shows how cunning and opportunistic he is. When “[a] bullet grazed” Sammy, Malcolm only laments the loss of his close friendship with Sammy instead of changing his lifestyle, and decides to “lay low” (p. 118). Malcolm continues to seek out “hustles” as a steerer (p. 125), as a bootleg transporter (p. 127), and a bootleg supplier for “speakeasies still in Harlem” (p. 127), suggesting that he was attracted to the speed and danger of illegal activities.

- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

60%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text as they read and discuss.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 114–115 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “Especially after the nightclubs downtown closed, the taxis and black limousines would be driving uptown” to “That’s where Redd Foxx was the dishwasher who kept the kitchen crew in stitches”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class. Instruct students to annotate their texts for the central idea, using the code CI. Remind students that annotating helps them to keep track of evidence they will use later in lesson assessments and the End-of-Unit Assessment, which focus on the development of central ideas.

- ① This focused annotation supports students’ engagement with W.11-12.9.b, which addresses the use of textual evidence in writing.
- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use the Central Ideas Tracking Tool to record central ideas they identify and discuss.

Provide students with the following definitions: *in stitches* means “in a state of uncontrollable laughter.”

① Students may be familiar with this phrase. Consider asking students to volunteer the definitions before providing it to the class.

▶ Students write the definition of *in stitches* in their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definition: *inferior* means “of comparatively low grade; poor in quality; substandard.”

▶ Students write the definition of *inferior* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout this lesson:

How are Malcolm X’s ideas about race changing in this section?

What does the author’s description of “those white people” (p. 114) indicate about Malcolm X’s view of them?

☞ The description suggests that the “drunk” white people (p. 114) who say, “‘You’re just as good as I am—I want you to know that’” (p. 115) were aware of and apologizing for benefiting from an unfair society. This backhanded compliment is insulting to African Americans, who likely did not consider that they were not “‘just as good’” (p. 115) before the white person brought it up.

Why might the author place emphasis on the word “soul” (p. 114)?

☞ Student responses may include:

- The author may want the reader to understand that there is an element of African-American culture that does not exist in white culture. He states that the white people “could never get enough” (p. 114) of the music, food, and atmosphere in primarily African-American establishments.
- The author may be using the word “soul” sarcastically, using a word that white people may have applied to African-American culture to separate them. The author writes that the “flush-faced men and glittery-eyed women would be pounding each other’s backs and laughing uproariously and applauding the music” (p. 114). This description suggests that the men and women are not part of the crowd, but are taking in the scene from a culture of power, unaware of how their actions made them appear.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 115–116 (from “After a while, my brother Reginald had to have a hustle” to “he looked and acted much older than his years”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *legitimate* means “real, accepted, or official” and *exclusive* means “available to only a few people because of high cost.”

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *exclusive* and *legitimate* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

What do the descriptions of Reginald reveal about Malcolm X?

- ☞ Reginald is Malcolm X’s younger brother, and Malcolm X sets up a “good, safe hustle” for Reginald so that Reginald could “learn[] his own way around” (p. 115) before he decided to “take risks for himself” (p. 115). These actions show that Malcolm X feels protective of his brother and doesn’t want Reginald to be in Harlem “without anywhere to call ‘home’” (p. 114). He also wants to keep some of his hustling life away from Reginald because he states that he likes that Reginald does not ask him any questions about his “jobs” (p. 114).

How do these descriptions relate to the idea that Reginald’s girlfriend “lavished on Reginald everything she had” (p. 116)? What does *lavished* mean in this context?

- ☞ Reginald takes fewer risks than Malcolm does, accepting a safe hustle and choosing an older girlfriend who will take care of him. Reginald’s girlfriend gives him everything and takes care of him “as though he were a baby” (p. 116). *Lavished* means “gave a lot to or spent a lot on someone.”
- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of determining the meaning of words through contexts.

*How do the events described in Reginald’s “good, safe hustle” (p. 115) develop a central idea?

- ☞ Malcolm X states that the hustle “utilized the psychology of the ghetto jungle,” which includes a scam built on the idea that Harlem was full of “many thieves around anxious to get rid of stolen ... merchandise” (p. 115). This scam he argues, caused “conditioning” (p. 115) in the clientele, who would assume that Reginald’s goods were stolen and would pay more than they were worth. This scam develops the idea of systemic oppression because there were so many thieves and criminals in Harlem that it made people brainwashed, expecting crime in the ghetto and left them prey to a scam like Malcolm’s.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use the Central Ideas Tracking Tool to record central ideas they identified and discussed.
-

Instruct student pairs to read pages 116–117 (from “All through the war, the Harlem racial picture never was too bright” to “But Negroes can’t afford to be taking their money downtown to the white man”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definitions: *Croesus-rich* means “having wealth like the king of Lydia, 560–546 BCE, who was noted for his great wealth” and *cotillions* means “large, formal parties for dancing.”

- ① Students may be familiar with these words. Consider asking students to volunteer the definitions before providing them to the class.

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *Croesus-rich* and *cotillions* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

***What was the effect on Harlem of closing the Savoy ballroom?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- The closing of the Savoy ballroom without good explanation from Mayor LaGuardia increased tension between “Harlem” and “the white man” (p. 116). Tension was so high that a rumor that “white cops had shot a Negro soldier” (p. 116) in the Braddock Hotel caused a riot and widespread looting.
- Harlem, led by Adam Clayton Powell, put up a “big fight” (p. 116), equating the injustice to the fight against segregation in Consolidated Edison, the New York Telephone Company, and the US Navy. They lost that fight, which “didn’t help Harlem to love the white man any” (p. 116).

***What impact did the 1935 riot and the “new riot” (p. 117) ultimately have on Harlem?**

- 💬 The 1935 riot made white merchants move out. It made people—mainly white people—afraid to visit Harlem, causing businesses to leave. There remained “only a relative trickle of the money which had poured into Harlem in the 1920’s” (p. 117). The “new riot” was devastating to Harlem, especially the “night-life people,” and made the economic situation significantly worse: it “ended even that trickle” (p. 117).

***How do the closing of the Savoy ballroom, the 1935 riot, and the “new riot” (p. 117) develop a central idea?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- These events develop the idea of systemic oppression because the author suggests Mayor LaGuardia closed the Savoy ballroom “to stop Negroes from dancing with white women” (p. 116). This decision was oppressive to African Americans because they lost a privilege due to the actions of white people.
- The effect of the rumor about the closing of the Savoy ballroom was the riot, a rebellion against the action of “white cops” shooting a “Negro soldier” (p. 116), a scene that illustrated the abuse of white power over African Americans, and systemic oppression.
- These descriptions develop the idea of integration versus separation by showing how white people were afraid of the continuing violence in Harlem. Malcolm X explains that the riots caused white people to be “physically afraid to come to Harlem” and describes how the “hypocritical ‘integration’” taking place downtown destroyed the “Harlem night life” (p. 117).
- Malcolm X introduces the idea of unity or solidarity in this scene when he describes how Adam Clayton Powell made the closing of the Savoy Ballroom “a big fight” (p. 116). Just as Powell had organized the people to fight in solidarity against “Consolidated Edison and the New York Telephone Company until they had hired Negroes” and he had “helped to battle the U.S. Navy and the U.S. Army about their segregating of uniformed Negroes” (p. 116), so, too, Powell organized the people to fight in solidarity the closing of the Savoy Ballroom. Although the African Americans lost this one fight, Malcolm X emphasizes the importance and power of solidarity with these other examples.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① Consider providing students with the terms *integration versus separation* and *solidarity* to describe concisely the central ideas they identify.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use the Central Ideas Tracking Tool to record central ideas they identified and discussed.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 117–119 (from “Sammy and I, on a robbery job, got a bad scare” to “and the politicians were actually inseparable partners”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definitions: *valise* means “a small piece of luggage that can be carried by hand, used to hold clothing, toilet articles, etc.; suitcase; traveling bag” and *rackets* means “organized illegal activities.”

① Students may be familiar with these words. Consider asking students to volunteer the definitions before providing them to the class.

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *valise* and *rackets* in their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

What events damage Malcolm Little and Sammy's relationship?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Sammy and Malcolm take on an “impossible” job and, as they made their getaway, Sammy was “grazed” by a bullet (p. 118). Sammy’s girlfriend gets upset with Malcolm because “she knew [Malcolm had] been in on [the dangerous job] with him” (p. 118).
- Sammy’s girlfriend attacks Malcolm, “screaming and clawing” (p. 118), and Malcolm retaliates by hitting her. Then, Sammy threatens Malcolm with a gun. Malcolm X states, “Things never are fully right again with anyone you have seen trying to kill you” (p. 118).

*Why does Malcolm Little decide to go into the numbers racket? What does this decision suggest about Malcolm Little?

💬 Student responses may include:

- The numbers racket “hadn’t slumped in business” like the other hustles in Harlem (p. 119). Malcolm’s decision shows that he is a survivor, even in difficult times, and adapts easily.
- Malcolm had to change from the jobs Sammy and he were pulling because “the police ... had surely circulated [their] general descriptions” and they had to “lay low” (p. 118). Malcolm still intended to be involved in rackets, or illegal activities, even though he was in danger with the police, which demonstrates that he takes risks.

What does Malcolm Little learn about graft and “the Dutch Schultz days” (p.119)? What does *graft* mean in this context?

💬 Student responses should include:

- Malcolm learns that “crime existed only to the degree that the law cooperated with it” (p. 119) and that “the country’s entire social, political, and economic structure, the criminal, the law, and the politicians were actually inseparable partners” (p. 119). Therefore, law enforcement took *graft* and looked the other way when it suited them to do so, which meant that there was a bigger “hustle” going on at the political level of which Malcolm X had not been aware.
- The “graft paid to officials” were bribes that bought off everyone involved in law enforcement, including “rookie cops and shyster lawyers” who were corrupt enough to take

bribes, but also taken by “top levels of police and politics” who controlled the flow of crime using the power of their positions (p. 119).

- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of determining the meaning of words through contexts.

***How does the author’s description of the graft system develop a central idea?**

- 💬 The way the author describes the graft system develops the central idea of systemic oppression because it shows how society permits criminality when it benefits those in power (namely white people).

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use the Central Ideas Tracking Tool to record central ideas they identified and discussed.
-

Instruct student pairs to read pages 119–120 (from “It was at this time that I changed from my old numbers man” to “for my boss and his wife in a gambling house they opened”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *veteran* means “having a lot of experience in a particular activity, job, etc.” and *integrity* means “the quality of being honest and fair.”
- ▶ Students write the definitions of *veteran* and *integrity* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

***What do the descriptions of West Indian Archie suggest about American society?**

- 💬 Student responses may include:
- West Indian Archie had a “photographic memory” and was able to take bets without writing down the numbers, “even in the case of combination plays” (p. 120). He was able to elude the police because he did not carry any betting slips.
 - In “another kind of society” (p. 120) West Indian Archie may have achieved much more. Malcolm X states that he has “often reflected upon such black veteran numbers men” (p. 120) and seen the potential in them instead of seeing the role they played in his life as bookies.
 - The author ends this description by writing, “But they were black” (p. 120), suggesting that it is the fault of American society that Archie’s talents were not put to better use.

① If necessary, explain to students that *Sing Sing* is a maximum-security prison in the Hudson Valley.

***How do the descriptions of West Indian Archie further develop a central idea?**

- The descriptions of West Indian Archie’s “photographic memory” and “exceptional mathematical talents” relates to the idea of systemic oppression because it shows that these talents could have “been better used” in a society that allowed non-whites and ex-convicts to have better legitimate jobs (p. 120).

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use the Central Ideas Tracking Tool to record central ideas they identified and discussed.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

How does an event from chapter 7 further develop a central idea from earlier in the text?

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson’s vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.
- See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapters 8–9 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text (RI.11–12.6). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

- ▶ Students follow along.

- ① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they have been working on or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt that better allows them to fulfill their statements of purpose. Remind students to focus on engaging and orienting the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishing one or multiple point(s) of view; introducing a narrator and/or characters; and creating a smooth progression of experiences or events.

Students who have completed a draft may post the draft to the class's online writing community and be paired for peer review. Remind peer reviewers to consider how effectively their peer engages and orients the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishes one or multiple point(s) of view; introduces a narrator and/or characters; and creates a smooth progression of experiences or events.

Consider maintaining the same peer review pairs through 12.1.1 Lesson 12 so that students can provide and receive consistent feedback from a peer familiar with their work in relation to W.11-12.3.a.

Homework

Read and annotate chapters 8–9 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text (RI.11-12.6). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

Model Central Ideas Tracking Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Identify the central ideas that you encounter throughout the text. Trace the development of those ideas by noting how the author introduces, develops, or refines these ideas in the texts. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Text:	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley
--------------	---

Page #	Central Ideas	Notes and Connections
Pages 114–115	Racial identity	The use of the word “ <i>soul</i> ” (p. 114) to describe something that African-American culture had and white culture did not. Because the music, food, and atmosphere are desirable to the white patrons, the word may suggest pride in the African-American culture. However, it may suggest a fascination with African-American culture that is not sincere or well-intentioned.
Pages 114–115	Systemic oppression	The “drunk” white people (p. 114) who say, “‘You’re just as good as I am—I want you to know that’” (p. 115), were aware of and apologizing for benefiting from an unfair society, as well as insulting African Americans who likely did not consider that they were not “‘just as good’” (p. 115) before the white person brought it up.
Page 115	Systemic oppression	Reginald’s hustle “utilized the psychology of the ghetto jungle” (p. 115). This scam develops the idea of systemic oppression because there were so many thieves and criminals in Harlem that it changed the way people acted and left them prey to such a scam.
Page 116	Systemic oppression	The closing of the Savoy ballroom and the rumor about the shooting develop the central idea of systemic oppression because the white people have control over African-Americans’ lives.
Page 116	Integration vs. separation	While segregation could keep African Americans from moving about, the white women were free to come and

		go. “[N]o one dragged the white women in there” (p. 116), so the Mayor’s solution, which was unfair to the Harlem residents, was to close the place where the white women went.
Page 116	Solidarity	Malcolm X introduces the idea of solidarity in this scene when he describes how Adam Clayton Powell made the closing of the Savoy Ballroom “a big fight” (p. 116). Just as Powell had organized the people to fight in solidarity against “Consolidated Edison and the New York Telephone Company until they had hired Negroes” and he had “helped to battle the U.S. Navy and the U.S. Army about their segregating of uniformed Negroes” (p. 116), so, too, Powell organized the people to fight in solidarity the closing of the Savoy Ballroom. Although the people lost this one fight, Malcolm X emphasizes the importance and power of solidarity with these other examples.
Page 119	Systemic oppression	The “graft paid to officials” (p. 119) were bribes that bought off law enforcement, who controlled the flow of crime using the power of their positions. This event develops the central idea of systemic oppression because it shows how society permits criminality when it benefits those in power.
Page 120	Systemic oppression	West Indian Archie’s photographic memory might have been put to better use in “another kind of society” (p. 120) that allowed African Americans and ex-convicts to have better legitimate jobs.

12.1.1

Lesson 10

Introduction

In this lesson, students continue reading *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, chapters 8–9, pages 148–153 (from “Early evenings when we were laying low” to “the religion of Islam and it completely transformed my life”). In this section of text, Malcolm X recounts his experiences taking dangerous risks and building a formidable reputation in Harlem. He describes how he is finally caught because of a stolen watch and is tried and sentenced to jail for conspiring with white women to rob houses.

Students reread an excerpt of chapter 9, determining the author’s purpose and point of view. Students track and analyze rhetorical devices used for specific effect. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 9.

For homework, students read and annotate chapter 10 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.6	Determine an author’s point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.9.b	Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research. b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i> , presidential addresses]”).
L.11-12.3	Apply knowledge of language to understand how language functions in different

	contexts, to make effective choices for meaning or style, and to comprehend more fully when reading or listening.
L.11-12.4.a	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of strategies. a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word's position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.
L.11-12.5.a	Demonstrate understanding of figurative language, word relationships, and nuances in word meanings. a. Interpret figures of speech (e.g., hyperbole, paradox) in context and analyze their role in the text.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 9.
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify the author's use of style (e.g., varied syntax, figurative language, and juxtaposition). Identify the author's use of content (e.g., the event of Malcolm's arrest). Demonstrate how examples of style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (e.g., The figurative language and parallel structure in the description of Detective Turner set the tension in the scene: The author writes, "I was walking on my own coffin" (p. 149), which illustrates the danger inherent in the way Malcolm is living. The varied syntax in this excerpt controls the language and forces the reader to slow down and pay attention to the details of Malcolm's arrest. For example, "One hand was in his pocket. I knew he was a cop" (p. 151), creates a sense of tension in the scene, showing the danger in which Malcolm found himself. Finally, the juxtaposition in the statements of the bailiffs and court clerks, "'Nice white girls ... goddam niggers'" (p. 153) is shocking to the reader. This juxtaposition demonstrates how race and gender are the key determining factors in Malcolm's sentencing, which is supremely unfair and helps to inform Malcolm X's point of view about race.).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> punctually (adv.) – at the expected or planned time stave off (v.) – to avert or hold off (something undesirable or harmful), especially temporarily congealed (adj.) – changed from a fluid to a solid state by or as if by cold titillate (v.) – to arouse, tease, interest, or excite pleasurably and often superficially
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> cagey (adj.) – careful to avoid being trapped or tricked sordid (adj.) – marked by baseness or grossness
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> testify (v.) – to talk and answer questions about something especially in a court of law while formally promising that what you are saying is true mutual (adj.) – shared between two or more people or groups implicated (v.) – showed that someone or something is closely connected to or involved in something (such as a crime)

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.6, W.11-12.9.b, L.11-12.3, L.11-12.4.a, L.11-12.5.a Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapters 8–9, pages 148–153 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda 2. Homework Accountability 3. Reading and Discussion 4. Quick Write 5. Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 10% 2. 15% 3. 55% 4. 15% 5. 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)
- Student copies of the Style and Content Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 5) (optional)—students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Character Development Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 3) (optional) —students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.6. In this lesson, students continue to read *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, chapters 8–9, and determine the author’s point of view and purpose. Then students analyze how particularly effective examples of rhetoric contribute to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 9.

- Students look at the agenda.

❗ **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

Post or project standard L.11-12.3. Instruct students to talk in pairs about what they think L.11-12.3 means. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

- 💬 Student responses should include:

- Determine how words have different meanings in different contexts, including figurative meanings.
- Identify how an author chose to use specific language to explain ideas or create an effect.
- Identify how meaning and style impact the reader's understanding.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read and annotate chapters 8–9 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text (RI.11-12.6). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about the questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing the author's point of view or purpose in a text, and identifying how effective rhetoric and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text (RI.11-12.6).

💬 Student questions may include:

Describe the stylistic choices the author makes to begin chapter 8. What do these choices reveal about Malcolm X?

💬 Student responses may include:

- The author begins by setting a scene: Sammy is “lying on his bed in pajamas and a bathrobe” (p. 129), so the reader knows that he is relaxed and not ready for a fight.
- Sammy hides his drugs, but Malcolm opens the door, unafraid that West Indian Archie is angry.
- The author does not write that West Indian Archie stuck a gun in Malcolm's face, but instead writes, “A .32-20 is a funny kind of gun” (p. 129). This statement shows that Malcolm is close enough to the gun to focus on the details of it, but the author does not show Malcolm's immediate reaction to it.
- The author then makes the contradictory statements: “no one who wasn't ready to die messed with West Indian Archie” and “He truly scared me” (p. 129). This statement shows that Malcolm is not as “ready to die” (p. 129) as he thinks he is.

How does the author describe the confrontation with West Indian Archie (pp. 132–133)? How do the author's stylistic choices develop his ideas?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X states that he was a “fool” but even “a bigger fool” (p. 132) for sitting with his back to the door. This repetition, and his mention that he “never will again” (p. 132)

sit with his back to the door imply that this showdown was an important and increases the tension and power of the scene.

- The author describes West Indian Archie as “floor-showing for the people” (p. 132), which indicates that he was making a fool of Malcolm.
- The author describes the people around the two men as “carved, drinks in mid-air” (p. 132), like unmoving sculptures, suggesting that this moment is significant for Malcolm and that nothing is as important in the room as what is happening between them. These descriptions show the tension in the room and make the scene more powerful.

- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

55%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text as they read and discuss.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 148–149 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “Early evenings when we were laying low between jobs” to “I was walking on my own coffin”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class. Instruct students to annotate their texts for rhetorical devices and point of view, using the codes RD and POV. Remind students that annotating helps them to keep track of evidence they will use later in lesson assessments and the Mid-Unit Assessment, which focus on the impact of rhetorical devices on point of view.

- ① This focused annotation supports students’ engagement with W.11-12.9.b, which addresses the use of textual evidence in writing.

Provide students with the following definition: *punctually* means “at the expected or planned time.”

- ① Students may be familiar with this word. Consider asking students to volunteer the definition before providing it to the class.
- ▶ Students write the definition of *punctually* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *testify* means “to talk and answer questions about something especially in a court of law while formally promising that what you are saying is true,” and *mutual* means “shared between two or more people or groups.”

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *testify* and *mutual* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- 💬 If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout this lesson:

What words or phrases in this section are powerful or beautiful?

What do Turner and Malcolm Little do that is “cagey” (p. 149)? How do their actions clarify the meaning of *cagey*?

- 💬 Student responses should include:
 - Malcolm X states that Turner “wanted me to make a move, first” and he “didn’t want to say anything that, repeated, would make him sound bad” (p. 149).
 - Malcolm “didn’t want to say anything that could be interpreted as a threat to a cop” (p. 152), but they “both knew that [they] wanted to kill each other” (p. 149). Instead, Malcolm used the wire to send messages and did not threaten Turner directly.
 - *Cagey* means that they were trying to get something or do something without getting into trouble.
- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of determining the meaning of words through contexts.
- ① If necessary, provide the definition of *cagey* as “careful to avoid being trapped or tricked.”

***Why does Malcolm X state that he was “walking on [his] own coffin” (p. 149)? What is the impact of this statement on Malcolm X’s point of view?**

- 💬 Malcolm threatens a police officer by saying, ““Don’t you know that if you play with me, you certainly will go down in history because you’ve got to kill me?”” (p. 149). Threatening a police officer is dangerous and can get him killed, but he does it anyway, which suggests that at this time in his life, he is out of control. These descriptions contribute to the power of this scene and demonstrate that Malcolm believed he was invincible at the time, but now sees how dangerously he was living.
- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.5.a through the process of interpreting figurative language. If necessary, remind students that *figurative language* is “language that differs from the literal meaning of words and phrases.”

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 149–151 (from “It’s a law of the rackets that every criminal expects to get caught” to “I had trapped myself under the bed without a gun. I really was slipping”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definitions: *stave off* means “to avert or hold off (something undesirable or harmful), especially temporarily” and *congealed* means “changed from a fluid to a solid state by or as if by cold.”

① Students may be familiar with these words. Consider asking students to volunteer the definitions before providing them to the class.

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *stave off* and *congealed* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

***How does the author describe Sophia and her sister in the bar (pp. 150–151)? What is the impact of these descriptions on the mood of the scene?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- The author writes that the girls “held their breaths” (p. 150); they were so tense they were not breathing normally because they were afraid they would be recognized and that their white friend would figure out that they visited a lot. The descriptions increase the power of the text because they create a tense mood.
- The girls were “so well known in the Negro places in Roxbury” that they knew they could be approached by any “Negro who knew them” (p. 150). They were “stiff-eyeing the bartenders” (p. 150) to send a message using only their eyes so the man with them would not know they visited Roxbury often. These images increase the power of the text because the reader “caught the message” (p. 150) as well.
- When Malcolm came up to the table, the girls were “chalky-white” and Sophia’s husband’s friend was “beet-red” (p. 151). These images also increase the power of the description because they show that the girls were pale with fear of the man’s anger. The man was angry that Malcolm dared to call white girls “Baby” (p. 151) and approach them at a table.

① If necessary, provide students with the definition of *mood* as “the emotional state or feeling that a text conveys or evokes.”

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider asking the following question to scaffold student understanding of this event.

What “mistake” (p. 150) did Malcolm Little make?

He walked up to Sophia and her sister when her husband’s friend was with them.

What does the author mean when he writes that Sophia’s husband’s friend’s face looked “congealed” (p. 151)? What is the impact of this statement on Malcolm X’s point of view?

The man was extremely mad at Malcolm, and his face was twisted and ugly, as if it had melted into anger. This vivid description shows complex emotions and contributes to the power of the text. It also shows Malcolm X’s attitude about the way he was living: it shows that he had become the prey instead of the predator, and that he was “slipping” (p. 151).

***What is the effect of the phrase “he watched me as if I were a snake” (p. 151)?**

The white man “stood back” (p. 151), keeping his distance and watching Malcolm for any sudden moves. Malcolm X notes that Sophia’s husband’s friend “didn’t run” (p. 151), which suggests that Malcolm was aware the man did regard him as a threat. The effect of this description is to show Malcolm through this white man’s eyes: as threatening as a snake.

***What does Malcolm X mean when he states that he “was slipping” (p. 151)? What does the choice of the word “slipping” suggest?**

Malcolm X states he “was slipping” because he had “trapped [him]self under the bed without a gun” (p. 151). This slip is unlike him. He also is sick, a consequence of “all of the last five years catching up” (p. 151). He is slipping or sliding downwards mentally and physically.

① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.5.a through the process of interpreting imagery and figurative language. If necessary, remind students that *imagery* is “the use of figurative language or vivid descriptions to make pictures in the reader’s mind.”

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses. Remind students to annotate for rhetorical and stylistic devices.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Style and Content Tools to record stylistic or content choices they identified and discussed.

Instruct student pairs to number the paragraphs on pages 151–153 (from “I had put a stolen watch into a jewelry shop” to “That’s why I believe that everything is written”). Then instruct students to read the excerpt, annotating and highlighting any paragraphs or sentences that appear unusually short, unusually long, or broken in odd ways.

Instruct student pairs to answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

***How does the author's use of variations in syntax affect pacing in this excerpt? What do these variations in syntax suggest about Malcolm X's point of view?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- The first four paragraphs contain many clauses separated by commas: "It was about two days later, when I went to pick up the watch, that things fell apart" and "The loser of the watch, the person from whom it had been stolen from us, I later found, had described the repair" (p. 151). These pauses force the reader to connect several ideas together and slow the reader down, drawing the reader's attention to the details.
- Paragraphs 5, 6, 9, 10, and 13 are all just one line long. They are so short that they force the reader to pay attention to them. This syntax also forces the reader to consider each statement or detail on its own, and the sentences in these short paragraphs are sometimes fragmented: "One hand in his pocket. I knew he was a cop" (p. 151). These short sentences pace the scene very slowly, making it more dramatic.
- Paragraphs 9, 10, and 11 start with "I remember," "I raised," and "I saw" (p. 152), which creates a feeling of a decision happening in slow motion, again, causing the pace to slow down and forcing the reader to pay attention to the details.
- Paragraph 15 includes repetition: "The detectives ... They didn't ... They didn't" (p. 152). This repetition makes the reader consider what could have happened, and the author explains the reason why these things did not happen: because he "hadn't tried to kill the detective" (p. 152).
- These variations in sentence structure reveal that the author believes that this interaction is a turning point in his life, and that it is important for the reader to mark the events carefully. These variations also suggest that Malcolm X is aware of his transformation, and that because "Allah was with [him] even then" (p. 152), these are all events in a larger plan that involves a conversion to Islam and a public life.

- ① If necessary, remind students of the definition of *syntax* from 12.1.1 Lesson 5: "the way in which words are put together to form phrases, clauses, or sentences."
- ① If necessary, explain to students that "The loser of the watch, the person from whom it had been stolen from us, I later found, had described the repair" and "One hand in his pocket. I knew he was a cop" are examples of a rhetorical device or stylistic choice called *variations in syntax*. Define *variations in syntax* as "changes in sentence length, style, or complexity for stylistic effect."
- ① If necessary, explain to students that the repetition of "The detectives ... They didn't ... They didn't" is an example of a rhetorical device or stylistic choice called *parallel structure*. Define *parallel structure* as "instances of using the same pattern of words to show that two or more ideas are equally important."

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses. Remind students to annotate for rhetorical and stylistic devices.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Style and Content Tools to record stylistic or content choices they identified and discussed.
-

Instruct student pairs to read pages 152–153 (from “The cops found the apartment loaded with evidence” to “the religion of Islam and it completely transformed my life”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definition: *titillate* means “to arouse, tease, interest, or excite pleurably and often superficially.”

- ① Students may be familiar with this word. Consider asking students to volunteer the definition before providing it to the class.
- ▶ Students write the definition of *titillate* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definition: *implicated* means “shown that someone or something is closely connected to or involved in something (such as a crime).”
- ▶ Students write the definitions of *implicated* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider asking the following optional extension question to deepen students’ understanding:

How does the ellipsis before “...and my small arsenal of guns” (p. 152) affect pacing? What does the ellipsis suggest about the meaning?

- 💬 The ellipsis slows the reader down and separates the other petty criminal tools from the truly dangerous ones. It suggests that many of the discovered “tools of [our] trade” were not as incriminating as the “small arsenal of guns” (p. 152).

***What is the impact of the clerks’ and bailiffs’ comments: “Nice white girls ... goddam niggers” (p. 153)? How do these comments contribute to Malcolm X’s point of view?**

- 💬 Student responses may include:
- The comments demonstrate how the people in the court, the “court clerks and the bailiffs” (p. 153), had already judged the situation based on the race of the criminals.
 - The comments juxtapose or contrast the boys as corrupters and the girls as their primary victims. The questions the boys were asked were not about the crimes: “How, where, when,

had I met them? Did we sleep together?" (p. 153). The lawyer's statement reaffirms this sentiment: "You had no business with white girls!" (p. 153).

💬 Student responses should include:

- These comments demonstrate Malcolm X's point of view because they emphasize his understanding of systemic racism in society: the "[n]ice white girls" (p. 153) kept their humanness, but the boys were dehumanized and racial slurs were applied to them. Because Malcolm X has experienced this racism directly, he is more convinced about "the full truth about the white man" (p. 153), which is that white people purposefully oppressed African Americans.
- ① Remind students that the author uses the word "nigger" in the text. Students may use the author's language when reading or citing textual evidence, but they should avoid using the word "nigger" in discussion when they are not quoting from the text as the term is a racial slur. Refer to the Module Overview for more information about how to address the word "nigger" in the classroom.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle to understand the power of the juxtaposition in the clerks' and bailiffs' comments, ask the following scaffolding questions:

What is the effect of the word "niggers" in this context?

💬 The word is a racial slur and its use is jarring to the reader. The use of this racial slur shows that even in a formal setting, such as a courthouse, the "court clerks and bailiffs" (p. 153) had no qualms about expressing racist opinions.

How does the word contribute to the power of this scene?

- 💬 The word creates a mood in the courtroom that indicates the trial will not be fair because of the prejudice already against Malcolm and Shorty. Malcolm X states that "[n]obody wanted to know anything at all about the robberies" (p. 153) and indicates that, through use of this strong language, he and Shorty were being punished for being with "[n]ice white girls" (p. 153).
- ① If necessary, explain to students that the clerks' and bailiffs' comments: "Nice white girls ... goddam niggers" is an example of a rhetorical device or stylistic choice called juxtaposition. Define juxtaposition as "an act or instance of placing close together or side by side, especially for comparison or contrast."

What reason does Malcolm X give for not having previously revealed his "sordid past"? What does *sordid* mean in this context?

- At the time the book was written, Malcolm X had not revealed his past because he did “not want to sound proud of how bad, how evil [he] was” (p. 153). *Sordid* means “bad,” “immoral,” or “evil.”

***What do the last two paragraphs on page 153 (“But people are always speculating—why am I as I am?” to “the religion of Islam and it completely transformed my life”) suggest about the author’s purpose?**

- Student responses may include:
 - The author writes that “the full story is the best way that I know to have it seen, and understood, that I had sunk to the very bottom of the American white man’s society” (p. 153). This experience, Malcolm X argues, prepared him for finding “Allah and the religion of Islam” which “completely transformed” (p. 153) his life. His purpose is to demonstrate to the reader the power of his conversion to Islam and the beneficial changes it brought to his life.
 - Malcolm X’s purpose is to explain “why [is] [he] as [he] [is]” (p. 153). He states that “[a]ll of our experiences fuse into our personality” (p. 153), so leaving out any part of the story would not be true to his full character. He needs to tell the bad and the good so he can show how he changed over time and why he is as he is.

What do these paragraphs suggest about Malcolm X’s point of view?

- Malcolm X explains that he is who he is because “[a]ll of our experiences fuse into our personality. Everything that ever happened to us is an ingredient” (p. 153). This explanation suggests that the choices he made are due to his experiences of injustice. The unfairness of his treatment in the courtroom and the unreasonable length of his sentence are other injustices he has to withstand. These injustices support his point of view that all of his experiences in society have made him who he is.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses. Remind students to annotate for rhetorical and stylistic devices, as well as the author’s purpose and point of view in the text.

- Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Style and Content Tools to record stylistic or content choices discussed as well as the author’s point of view and purpose in this portion of text.
- Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Character Development Tools to record character development they have identified and discussed.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 9.

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson's vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.
- 🗣 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 10 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

- ▶ Students follow along.

① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they have been working on or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt that will better allow them to fulfill their statements of purpose. Remind students to focus on engaging and orienting the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishing one or multiple point(s) of view; introducing a narrator and/or characters; and creating a smooth progression of experiences or events.

Students may post their drafts to the class's online writing community and be paired for peer review. Remind peer reviewers to consider how effectively their peer engages and orients the reader by setting out a problem, situation, or observation and its significance; establishes one or multiple point(s) of view; introduces a narrator and/or characters; and creates a smooth progression of experiences or events.

Consider maintaining these same peer review pairs through 12.1.1 Lesson 12 so students can have consistent support through their application of standard W.11-12.3.a.

- ① Students may also review their analysis of the style and content in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and consider why and how they might use similar techniques in their own narrative essays.

Homework

Read and annotate chapter 10 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop two to three discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

Model Style and Content Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Use this tool to track the stylistic or content choices you encounter in the text, as well as examples and explanations of these choices. Be sure to note the rhetorical effect of each choice on the text.

RI.11-12.6: Determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

Rhetoric: the specific techniques that writers or speakers use to create meaning in a text, enhance a text or a lecture, and often, persuade readers or listeners

Style: how the author expresses content, which frequently includes the use of figurative language or rhetorical devices

Content: what the author writes, including events, ideas, and details the author chooses to include

Point of View: an author's opinion, attitude, or judgment

Purpose: an author's reason for writing

Example of style (figurative language or rhetorical device) or content (events, ideas, details) (with page reference)	Rhetorical effect (power, beauty, point of view, purpose)
Malcolm X uses parallel structure to describe his interactions with Detective Turner: "We both were being cagey. We both knew that we wanted to kill each other" (p. 149).	This use of parallel structure puts Malcolm X and the detective on even footing, increasing the tension between the two men and contributing to the power of the text.
Malcolm X uses figurative language when he states, "I was walking on my own coffin" (p. 149).	This figurative language is powerful, indicating that Malcolm X was doing extremely dangerous things.
Malcolm X also uses figurative language in his interactions with Sophia's husband's friend: "His face was about two feet from mine. It looked congealed" (p. 151) and "he watched me as though I were a snake" (p. 151).	These vivid examples of figurative language increase the power of the text by using very unattractive comparisons to drive home Malcolm X's points. The descriptions develop his point of view because he sees that he has become the prey instead of the predator, and he needs to make a change.

<p>The author uses variations in syntax in describing Malcolm X's interactions with Detective Slack: "One hand was in his pocket. I knew he was a cop" (p. 151); "He said, quietly, 'Step into the back'" (p. 151); "I remember that his name was Detective Slack" (p. 152); "I raised my arm, and motioned to him, 'Here, take my gun'" (p. 152); and "I saw his face when he took it" (p. 152).</p>	<p>Varying syntax makes the text interesting and powerful. Short sentences also create a fast pace that creates tension and increases the power of the text. This example shows that this is a pivotal event in Malcolm X's life, and adds to the point of view that this event, as with the other events, contributes to his personality and helps explain why he is who he is.</p>
<p>Malcolm X uses juxtaposition in his descriptions of the bailiffs' comments: "'Nice white girls ... goddam niggers'" (p. 153).</p>	<p>This juxtaposition increases the power of the text by using strong language and stark comparisons to develop Malcolm X's point of view about racism in society. This example supports his idea that the way people have treated him in the past contributed to who he is today.</p>

Model Character Development Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Analyze the character development that you encounter in the text. Identify the events that are connected to this development. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Character Development	Event	Evidence
Malcolm X is doing very dangerous things but becomes self-aware.	Malcolm X threatens a police officer.	<p>“Don’t you know that if you play with me, you certainly will go down in history because you’ve got to kill me?” (p. 149)</p> <p>“Turner looked at me. Then he backed down ... I guess he wasn’t ready to make history.” (p. 149)</p>
Malcolm X feels that he is losing control and makes bad decisions.	Malcolm X walks up to Sophia and her sister and their white male friend at a bar. Then he hides under his bed without a gun.	<p>“But where, always before, I had been able to [take drugs] and rarely show it very much, but now it was not that easy.” (p. 150)</p> <p>“I don’t know how I ever made such a mistake as I next did.” (p. 150)</p> <p>“What shook me the most was realizing that I had trapped myself under the bed without a gun. I was really slipping.” (p. 151)</p>
Malcolm X stops taking unnecessary risks.	Malcolm X decides to allow himself to be caught rather than to shoot a police officer.	<p>“There I was, wearing my gun ... Today I believe that Allah was with me even then. I didn’t try to shoot him. And that saved my life.” (p. 152)</p>
Malcolm X explains why he is so passionate about Islam and sure about his message.	Malcolm X reflects on how his experiences inform his personality.	<p>“To understand that of any person, his whole life, from birth, must be reviewed.” (p. 153)</p> <p>“All of our experiences fuse into our personality. Everything that ever happened to us is an</p>

		<p>ingredient.” (p. 153)</p> <p>“I had sunk to the very bottom of the American white man’s society when ... I found Allah and the religion of Islam and it completely transformed my life.” (p. 153)</p>
--	--	--

12.1.1

Lesson 11

Introduction

In this lesson, students read and analyze chapter 10 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 165–171 (from “‘The true knowledge’ reconstructed much more briefly than I received it” to “into which any religious faker could step and mislead our people”). In this chapter, Malcolm Little is placed in jail and rebels against his imprisonment. His family members visit and share with him information about a man named Elijah Muhammad, which changes his life. Students pay close attention to the structural choices the author makes in this section. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: Analyze the effectiveness of the structure in chapter 10. How does the structure make the author’s points clear, convincing, and engaging?

For homework, students write a list of ideas about how they would respond to the following college interview question: What are your strengths and weaknesses? Also for homework, students respond briefly in writing to the following prompt: How does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* use narrative techniques such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines to develop experiences, events, and/or characters in chapter 10? Additionally, students reread their personal narratives from 12.1.1 Lesson 6 and consider whether they would like to expand them into longer compositions or respond to a different Common Application prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 12.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.5	Analyze and evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.b	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. b. Use narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, to develop experiences, events, and/or characters.
W.11-12.9.b	Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research.

	b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i> , presidential addresses]”).
SL.11–12.6	Adapt speech to a variety of contexts and tasks, demonstrating a command of formal English when indicated or appropriate. (See grades 11–12 Language standards 1 and 3 for specific expectations.)
L.11–12.4.a	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of strategies. a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word’s position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Analyze the effectiveness of the structure in chapter 10. How does the structure make the author’s points clear, convincing, and engaging?
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify key aspects of the structure in chapter 10 (e.g., The author uses reflection and foreshadowing in this section.). Analyze how this structure makes the author’s points clear, convincing, and engaging (e.g., In this section, the author demonstrates how transformative the teachings of Mr. Muhammad, including the “true knowledge” (p. 165) and “Yacub’s History” (p. 167), were for Malcolm at this time of his life. He uses reflection to convey Malcolm’s thoughts at that time: “I have looked back, trying to assess, just for myself, my first reactions to all this” (p. 166), which makes his points clear and convincing to the reader. Malcolm X describes his sense of awe within this reflection: “It still was like a blinding light” (p. 167). He describes how, at the time, he was “smitten” (p. 166) like Paul in Damascus by the importance of this information. These descriptions engage and convince the reader of the power this new information had on Malcolm. However, at the end of this excerpt, the author uses foreshadowing to suggest that in the future Malcolm X will question these stories

when he learns that “Mr. Muhammad’s tales ... infuriated the Muslims of the East” (p. 171), which indicates that Mr. Muhammad’s version of Islam was not endorsed by those who were of the ancient practice. This foreshadowing is engaging because it gives the reader a reason to read on to the next chapter and find out why Malcolm X suggests that Mr. Muhammad may have been a “faker” (p. 171).).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> pillaged (v.) – robbed with open violence heathen (adj.) – irreligious, uncultured, or uncivilized smitten (adj.) – affected mentally or morally with a sudden pang Pharisees (n.) – a group of teachers among the Jewish people at the time of Jesus; he frequently rebukes them in the Gospels for their hypocrisy germs (n.) – the rudiment of a living organism; an embryo in its early stages eugenics (n.) – the study of hereditary improvement of the human race by controlled selective breeding
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> apprehensive (adj.) – uneasy or fearful about something that might happen
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> traffic (n.) – the buying and selling of illegal goods or services especially between countries numb (adj.) – unable to think, feel, or react normally because of something that shocks or upsets you dormant (adj.) – not doing anything at this time: not active but able to become active

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.5, W.11-12.3.b, W.11-12.9.b, SL.11-12.6, L.11-12.4.a Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 10, pages 165–171 	

Learning Sequence:	
1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda	1. 10%
2. Homework Accountability	2. 15%
3. Reading and Discussion	3. 50%
4. Quick Write	4. 15%
5. Closing	5. 10%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.5. In this lesson, students continue to read *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, chapter 10, paying particular attention to the structural choices the author uses. Students then analyze the effectiveness of the structure in chapter 10 and determine how the structure makes the author's points clear, convincing, and engaging.

- Students look at the agenda.

❗ **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

Post or project standard W.11-12.3.b. Instruct students to talk in pairs about how they think standard W.11-12.3.b applies to their writing. Lead a brief discussion about this standard.

🗣 Student responses may include:

- The standard asks students to use different approaches to describe characters and explain experiences or events in a narrative.
- The standard asks students to use approaches or techniques such as such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines.

Ask students to Think, Pair, Share about the following question:

How could some of the techniques listed in this standard develop an experience, character, or event?

🗣 Student responses may include:

- An author uses dialogue to develop a character or event by demonstrating what the people in the story actually said.
- An author uses pacing in the narrative to create suspense or a sense of time passing quickly or slowly.
- An author uses description to make the characters or events seem more real and clear in the reader's mind.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Depending on students' familiarity with the terms in this standard, consider providing the following definitions:

- *Pacing*: how the author handles the passage of time in a narrative, moving through events either more quickly or slowly to serve the purpose of the text
- *Dialogue*: refers to the lines spoken by characters in drama or fiction; conversation between two or more characters
- *Description*: details about a person, place, or thing in order to create an image in the reader's mind
- *Reflection*: refers to consideration of a subject, idea, or past event
- *Multiple plot lines*: refers to the different plots of a literary text

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses. Inform students that they consider the use of the techniques outlined in this standard in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* for homework as well as exploring the standard more deeply in the next lesson.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read and annotate chapter 10 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about the discussion questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5).

- ① If necessary, remind students that *exposition* means “writing primarily intended to convey information or to explain.”

💬 Student questions may include:

On page 158, Reginald says, “I’ll show you how to get out of prison.” How does this sentence relate to the rest of the chapter?

- 💬 Malcolm immediately thinks of escaping from prison: “My automatic response was to think he had come upon some way I could work a hype on the penal authorities” (p. 158). The reader may think Malcolm may escape prison as well. However, it becomes clear to both the reader and Malcolm that the “prison” is metaphorical and related to the oppression of African Americans in white society, and getting out of prison for Malcolm means accepting “the true knowledge” (p. 165).

How does the author structure the text to convince the reader that “[t]he white man is the devil” (p. 162)?

- 💬 The author reflects upon all the relationships with white people that Malcolm has had, including “the state white people ... the white judge ... the Swerlins” (p. 162), Mr. Oskowski, and even people he considered close to him, such as Sophia and Hymie (pp. 162–163). He artificially connects them all using ellipses. These are characters with whom the reader is familiar, so the ellipses allow the reader to judge the “devilishness” of each character and come to a conclusion.
- ① Malcolm X uses his brother Reginald’s statement “[t]he white man is the devil” (p. 162) to explain the systemic oppression he has encountered throughout his life. Although this statement initially may be read as incendiary, this claim evolves and becomes more nuanced throughout the text as Malcolm X and his views change.
- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief whole-class discussion using

any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

50%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text as they read and discuss.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 165–166 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “‘The true knowledge,’ reconstructed much more briefly than I received it” to “liken myself to Paul. But I do understand his experience”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class. Remind students to annotate their texts for structural choices using the code SC. Remind students that annotating helps them to keep track of evidence they will use later in lesson assessments and the Mid-Unit Assessment, which focus on the effectiveness of structural choices.

- ① This focused annotation supports students’ engagement with W.11-12.9.b, which addresses the use of textual evidence in writing.
- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.

Provide students with the following definitions: *pillaged* means “robbed with open violence,” *heathen* means “irreligious, uncultured, or uncivilized,” *smitten* means “affected mentally or morally with a sudden pang,” and *Pharisees* are “a group of teachers among the Jewish people at the time of Jesus; he frequently rebukes them in the Gospels for their hypocrisy.”

- ① Students may be familiar with these words. Consider asking students to volunteer the definitions before providing them to the class.
 - ▶ Students write the definition of *pillaged*, *heathen*, *smitten*, and *Pharisees* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *traffic* means “the buying and selling of illegal goods or services especially between countries” and *numb* means “unable to think, feel, or react normally because of something that shocks or upsets you.”
 - ▶ Students write the definitions of *traffic* and *numb* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout this lesson:

How does the way the author organizes the stories in this section make the author’s ideas clear and interesting?

***What is the effect of how the author presents the “true knowledge” that Malcolm X’s family shared with him?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- The author begins this information by contrasting the “the true knowledge” to the history in “white man’s history books” (p. 165). This contrast indicates that the omission of “the true knowledge” is an injustice and gives more weight or importance to the information he is about to share.
- The structure of the retelling of the “true knowledge” includes an immediate comparison of non-white peoples, who “built great empires and cultures,” and the white race “living on all fours in caves” (p. 165). Then the “devil white man” (p. 165) destroys those established civilizations through violent means. Opening the story with this comparison clearly sets up the non-white peoples as good and the white people as evil and unnatural, making the message clear to the reader.
- Although the story begins by telling about the “great empires and cultures” of a civilization, it goes on to provide a brief history of the relatively recent slave trade, “[h]uman history’s greatest crime” (p. 165). This story is striking because “[i]n one generation,” a culture was brought to its knees and “brainwashed” (p. 165). The reader may have thought that this story was going to be about ancient civilizations, but this shift is surprising and engaging, and makes the central ideas about racial identity and systemic oppression very clear.

***How does the author structure Malcolm Little’s reaction to the “true knowledge”? What does this structure imply about what Malcolm Little heard?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- This reflection shows how powerful the impact of learning the “true knowledge” was on Malcolm. The story itself was important to retell, even if it is “reconstructed here much more briefly than [he] received it” (p. 165). The author intends for the story to have a similar impact on the reader, and if it does not, the reflection illustrates why he believes it should.
- The author writes, “Many a time, I have looked back, trying to assess, just for myself, my first reactions” (p. 166). Malcolm did not know what to make of the information: “every hustling fox and criminal wolf instinct in me ... struck numb” (p. 166). He states he was “smitten” (p. 166) like Paul was in Damascus, and that the information was “like a blinding light” (p. 167). This comparison suggests that Malcolm was struggling with his own identity within the context of the story: he, too, was “brainwashed” (p. 166) and he, too, “had absolutely no knowledge of his true identity” (p. 165).

① Consider explaining to students that *reflection* is a narrative technique that may be used to structure the order of a text.

How does this story of the “true knowledge” support points the author has already made within the text?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Slaves were “cut ... off from all knowledge of their own kind” until they were unaware of their “true identity” (p. 165). Therefore, African Americans are denied access to their own history, and are forced to accept a “whitened” version (p. 165). This story relates to what Reginald says to Malcolm, ““You don’t even know who you are”” (p. 164). It also relates to the idea of the “brainwashed black Christian” (p. 40) that Malcolm X believes he would be if he had never learned about the ““true knowledge”” and Islam.
- One of Malcolm X’s points is that society is unfair toward African Americans, as he indicated in the descriptions of how his mother was treated, how Mr. Ostrowski treated him, and how he was unfairly sentenced. This ““true knowledge”” explains how the limited prospects for African Americans were perpetuated and the “great empires” (p. 165) were erased from history.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 166–167 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “Many a time, I have looked back, trying to assess” to “to accept that which is already within you, and around you”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Why were the inmates concerned and the guards “apprehensive” (p. 167) about Malcolm Little? What does *apprehensive* mean in this context?

💬 Student responses may include:

- The inmates were concerned and the guards were nervous about approaching Malcolm because he was acting so unusually. He would “sit in [his] room and stare” (p. 167), and he refused to eat. Even the prison psychiatrist may have thought it was “some act” (p. 167).
- The guards were nervous or careful to approach Malcolm because they did not know what he would do. The guards may have thought that Malcolm was up to something dangerous, as he had proven to be difficult and unpredictable, “cursing guards, throwing things out of [his] cell, balking in lines” (p. 156) and demonstrating other disruptive behaviors.

💬 Student responses should include:

- The word *apprehensive* means nervous or careful.

- ① Consider drawing students' attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of determining the meaning of words through contexts.

***How does the structure of the text in this excerpt relate to Malcolm X's statement that "only guilt admitted accepts truth" (p. 167)?**

- 💬 The statement helps Malcolm and the reader connect the information in the "'true knowledge'" to his life that came before. He states that it was as if "all of that life merely was back there, without any remaining effect, or influence" (p. 166), a powerful statement from someone who hustled for so many years and chose to "live by [his] wits" (p. 111).

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 167–169 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from "I learned later that my brothers and sisters in Detroit" to "returned to the mainland, among the natural black people") and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definitions: *germs* means "rudiments of a living organism; embryos in their early stages" and *eugenics* means "The study of hereditary improvement of the human race by controlled selective breeding."

- ① Students may be familiar with these words. Consider asking students to volunteer the definitions before providing them to the class.
- ▶ Students write the definitions of *germs* and *eugenics* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definition: *dormant* means "not doing anything at this time; not active but able to become active."
- ▶ Students write the definition of *dormant* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

***What does the order of how the "'true knowledge'" and "Yacub's History" are presented in the text indicate about Malcolm X's transformation?**

- 💬 Student responses may include:
- The "'true knowledge'" sets the tone for "Yacub's History." The "'true knowledge'" includes information about slavery that had been removed from "the white man's history books" (p. 165) and not made available to African Americans. Because known history had been removed from history books, it is more believable that unknown history—that of Yacub—could also have been removed.

- The “true knowledge” explains how Malcolm may have unconsciously believed in the idea that “white was good, to be admired, respected, and loved” (p. 166), and it explains why he got a conk and a white girlfriend. The “true knowledge” was “like a blinding light” (p. 167) and helped Malcolm stop being brainwashed. Likewise, “Yacub’s History” is Malcolm’s first introduction to Mr. Elijah Muhammad’s teachings, and presents a different possible identity: one of the “Lost-Found Nation of Islam” (p. 171).

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 169–171 from *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “Mr. Elijah Muhammad teaches his followers that within six months’ time” to “any religious faker could step and mislead our people”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Note all the instances of the phrase “Mr. Elijah Muhammad teaches” on pages 169–170. What does this repetition suggest about Malcolm X’s relationship to Mr. Muhammad?

☛ Student responses may include:

- The repetition of this phrase suggests that Malcolm X is aware that the story he is retelling is not his own and wants to give credit to Mr. Muhammad.
- Malcolm X repeats this phrase several times, suggesting that he may want to distance himself from these ideas. In the last paragraph, Malcolm X refers to “a religious faker” (p. 171), which is likely a reference to Elijah Muhammad, who had “infuriated the Muslims of the East” (p. 171) with these stories. The repetition may be Malcolm X’s attempt to separate himself from this “religious faker” (p. 171).

***What is the impact of how the author ends the chapter?**

☛ Student responses may include:

- The last line, which refers to a “religious faker” who could “step in and mislead our people,” undermines the power of “Yacub’s History” because it suggests that the “religious faker” may be Mr. Muhammad (p. 171).
- What Malcolm X previously and respectfully called Mr. Muhammad’s teachings, he now calls “tales” (p. 171). This change is provocative and engaging to the reader because it suggests that there is later conflict between Malcolm X and Mr. Muhammad.
- The last paragraph separates “real Islam” from Mr. Muhammad’s version, indicating that Malcolm X no longer follows Mr. Muhammad and follows Islam “of the East” (p. 171).
- This paragraph foreshadows a change in Malcolm X’s character, suggesting that he will seek deeper meaning about these teachings and seek greater spiritual enlightenment “at Mecca”

(p. 171). It also indicates that he will become an important ambassador of Islam in the West, as he freely explains to Eastern Muslims that “they themselves hadn’t done enough to make real Islam known in the West” (p. 171).

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze the effectiveness of the structure in chapter 10. How does the structure make the author’s points clear, convincing, and engaging?

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson’s vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.
- 🗨 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

10%

Remind students that for the Performance Assessment at the end of the module they will practice a college interview.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to take it out and refer to it for this portion of the lesson closing.

Post or project standard SL.11-12.6. Instruct students to talk in pairs about what they think the standard means. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

- 🗨 Student responses should include:
 - The standard requires students to speak in different environments and for different reasons.
 - The standard requires students to show that they can speak with standard, formal English.

Ask students to review their statements of purpose for their college interviews and then to Think, Pair, Share about the following questions:

What is the difference between formal and informal English?

🗣 Student responses may include:

- Formal English is spoken or written language that obeys all the rules of standard English grammar and spelling; informal English may break these rules.
- Formal English does not include contractions or slang; informal English may include contractions or slang.

In what settings is formal English appropriate? In what settings is informal English appropriate?

🗣 Student responses may include:

- Formal English is appropriate for school, work, and official interactions.
- Informal English is appropriate for peer, family, and casual interactions.

What type of English is most appropriate for a college interview? Why?

🗣 Formal English is most appropriate for a college interview because it is a school or work interaction. Also, one purpose of a college interview is to impress the interviewer with the applicant's speaking skills, so formal English would best achieve that purpose.

Lead a brief, whole-class discussion of student responses. Explain to students that while they should practice formal English for their college interviews, they should also practice being friendly and confident.

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to write a list of ideas about how they would respond to the following college interview question. Remind students to keep in mind their task, purpose, and audience as they consider their response. Inform students that they will practice responding to this interview question in the following lesson.

What are your strengths and weaknesses?

Also for homework, instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

How does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* use narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines to develop experiences, events, and/or characters in chapter 10?

Also for homework, instruct students to reread their personal narratives from 12.1.1 Lesson 6 and consider whether they would like to expand them into longer compositions or try a different Common Application prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 12.

① Students who have been completing their Accountable Independent Writing each night should gather their drafts to bring to class for their work in the following lesson.

- ▶ Students follow along.

Homework

Write a list of ideas about how you would respond to the following college interview question. Remember to keep in mind your task, purpose, and audience as they consider your response. You will practice responding to this interview question in the following lesson.

What are your strengths and weaknesses?

Also, respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

How does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* use narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines to develop experiences, events, and/or characters in chapter 10?

Additionally, reread your personal narrative from 12.1.1 Lesson 6 and consider whether you would like to expand it into a longer composition or whether you would like to try a different Common Application prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 12.

12.1.1**Lesson 12****Introduction**

In this lesson, students develop their narrative writing skills through practice with standard W.11-12.3.b. Students use examples from *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* to explore different narrative techniques and then apply those techniques to their own narrative writing in response to one of the Common Application prompts. Students have the choice of expanding on their narratives from 12.1.1 Lesson 6 or choosing to respond to a new prompt. Student learning in this lesson is assessed via students' drafts.

For homework, students read chapter 11 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3).

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.b	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. b. Use narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, to develop experiences, events, and/or characters.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.f	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. f. Adapt voice, awareness of audience, and use of language to accommodate a variety of cultural contexts.
W.11-12.5	Develop and strengthen writing as needed by planning, revising, editing, rewriting, or trying a new approach, focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific purpose and audience.

Assessment

Assessment(s)

Student learning is assessed via an essay draft at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, using techniques learned in the lesson to achieve a specific outcome.

- Draft a paragraph in response to the Common Application prompt, focusing on using narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, to develop experiences, events, and/or characters.

 Student responses will be evaluated using the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric.

High Performance Response(s)

A High Performance Response should:

- Demonstrate the use of two or more of the narrative techniques outlined in W.11-12.3.b (e.g., dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, multiple plot lines). (The example below contains dialogue, pacing, and description.)
- Ensure that the narrative techniques contribute to the development of experiences, events, and/or characters. (See example below.)

Studying and collecting athletic shoes has taught me the value of a hard-earned dollar. When I was 14, my mom gave me an ultimatum: “Dad and I have been looking at the bills, and we decided that unless you would like to eat shoes, you will have to get a job.” I looked at the meticulously stacked shoeboxes towering over the rest of my room and made some quick calculations. “I see your point,” I replied.

So I spent my summer poolside, not lounging around with a tall lemonade, but standing over a deep fryer, slinging fries and onion rings at my community pool's snack bar. I faithfully saved half of every paycheck for college, and just as faithfully spent half on shoes. Pairs of slim metallic gold Air Max, orange filigree embossed Foamposites, and a rare tie-dyed mash up of fabrics branded as “What the Dunk” all made their way into my collection. By the end of that summer, I had enough stock in my collection that I decided to become a shoe entrepreneur, buying and selling shoes online at a handsome profit. I camped overnight in Center City Philadelphia to get a prime place in line to purchase highly coveted sneakers. I made some savvy investments, but I was also conned in an ill-advised Craigslist deal with an unscrupulous buyer. The challenges, rewards, and thrills of running a small business have fueled my decision to major in business.

A shared passion for shoes creates an instant connection with people I meet, whether in a suburban shopping mall, or a trendy neon-lit Los Angeles sneaker store. I have learned that in some places, shoes are not a fashion statement or a status symbol. Rather, shoes enable a child to make an arduous trek to school and surmount a potential barrier to an education. When I first

learned about the nonprofit organization In Ian's Boots, I knew I found a way to marry my shoe passion with my mission to contribute positively to the world around me. Ian's Boots collects used shoes for people in need around the world and was founded by the grieving parents of a fellow soccer goalie killed in a sledding accident. Doctors found a biblical message in his boots urging "perseverance," and this story and message spoke to me. Last year, I hosted a drive and collected over 600 pairs of shoes, some of which have been distributed to Honduras, Ghana, and Haiti.

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*

*Because this is not a close reading lesson, there is no specified vocabulary. However, in the process of returning to the text, students may uncover unfamiliar words. Teachers can guide students to make meaning of these words by following the protocols described in 1e of this document http://www.engageny.org/sites/default/files/resource/attachments/9-12_ela_prefatory_material.pdf.

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standard: W.11-12.3.b, W.11-12.3.f, W.11-12.5 Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapters 1–10 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability Writing Instruction: Narrative Techniques Drafting and Assessment Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5% 20% 20% 50% 5%

Materials

- Student copies of their personal narratives (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 6)
- Student copies of the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 2)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

5%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: W.11-12.3.b. In this lesson, students continue to develop their narrative writing skills, focusing on using narrative techniques to develop experiences, events, or characters. This work supports W.11-12.5, which asks students to develop and strengthen writing as needed by planning, revising, editing, rewriting, or trying a new approach, focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific purpose and audience.

- Students look at the agenda.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

20%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Write a list of ideas about how you would respond to the following college interview question. Remember to keep in mind your task, purpose, and audience as they consider your response. What are your strengths and weaknesses?)

Instruct students to form pairs to ask and answer the college interview question. For this practice session, students should focus on using formal English.

- Students practice asking and answering the college interview question.

- ① Remind students to keep their interview preparation notes in a writing journal or folder as a portfolio of their interview preparation throughout the module.
-

Instruct students to take out their responses to the second homework assignment. (Respond briefly in writing to the following prompt: How does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* use narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, to develop experiences, events, and/or characters in chapter 10?) Instruct students to form pairs and share their responses to the homework prompt.

💬 Student responses may include:

- In the second paragraph of chapter 10, the author includes dialogue and multiple plot lines; he includes the words that Shorty's mother repeats as he prepares for court: "'Son, read the Book of Revelations and pray to God'" (p. 154). This sentence is a reference to the Bible, and it shows that even Shorty's mother does not believe he will come through his trial successfully because she encourages him to "'pray'" (p. 154) and refers to the book of the Bible in which the world ends and people pay for their sins. This scene builds Shorty's character because it shows that no one, not even his mother, has faith in him. The author includes this second plot line to set the tone for the reading of the concurrent sentences.
- The author also uses dialogue to show how the judge sounded when he read out the "'concurrent[']'" (p. 154) sentences: "'Count one, eight to ten years'" (p. 154). This scene shows how easily Shorty, who "didn't know what the word 'concurrently' meant" (p. 154), could have believed that he was going to spend the rest of his life in prison for the crimes. His mother was "sobbing" (p. 154) and praying, and Shorty added the years in his head to find that he was going to prison for a long time. This scene develops some comic effect for the reader because the reader does know what concurrently means and knows that Shorty's sentence is not as bad as it appears to him.
- Once Shorty's sentence is read, the author slows down the pace by shortening sentences, some that comprise a given paragraph: "I got ten years" (p. 154). This pacing makes the reader slow down and pay attention to the fact that, despite the wild life Malcolm had been living, he "wasn't quite twenty-one" and "hadn't even started shaving" (p. 155). Up to now, the reader may have lost track of the years and may have forgotten that despite Malcolm's fast living, he is very young. This fact may make the sentence of "ten years" (p. 154) seem unfair and possibly even shocking to the reader.
- The author includes reflection in chapter 10, showing how Malcolm received the information about the "'true knowledge'" (p. 165). He stops the narrative to allow Malcolm to explain his "first reactions to all of this" (p. 166) to allow the reader to understand what was happening and how Malcolm X grew from this experience.

Have students briefly share whether they would like to expand upon their personal narratives from 12.1.1 Lesson 6, or whether they would like to attempt to respond to a different Common Application prompt. Instruct students to explain their decisions to a peer.

- ▶ Students discuss their decisions regarding the Common Application essay.

① Common Application prompts were introduced in 12.1.1 Lesson 2.

Activity 3: Writing Instruction: Narrative Techniques

20%

Inform students that today they will look more closely at the skills outlined in W.11-12.3.b and practice utilizing those skills as they continue to draft their responses to the Common Application.

- ▶ Students listen.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider reminding students of the definitions for the narrative techniques outlined in W.11-12.3.b:

- *Pacing*: how the author handles the passage of time in a narrative, moving through events either more quickly or slowly to serve the purpose of the text
- *Dialogue*: refers to the lines spoken by characters in drama or fiction; conversation between two or more characters
- *Description*: details about a person, place, or thing in order to create an image in the reader's mind
- *Reflection*: when an author pauses to consider how an event or experience affected him or her at the time he or she is writing about or how it continues to affect their lives
- *Multiple plot lines*: more than one sequence of events happening at one time

① If necessary, remind students to punctuate dialogue using quotation marks to indicate what the speakers say.

Explain to students that the techniques listed in this standard are crucial in narrative writing to develop experiences, events, or characters. These techniques are tools that a writer uses to make a story more interesting or to convey the importance of certain moments or events. Inform students that they will look at an excerpt from pages 37–38, which they read in 12.1.1 Lesson 3, to learn how the author uses these narrative techniques to develop experiences, events, or characters.

- ▶ Students listen.

Instruct students to form small groups and reread pages 37–38 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “Somehow, I happened to be alone in the classroom with Mr. Ostrowski” to “And they looked

surprised that I did”). Ask students to annotate for instances where the author uses the techniques listed above to develop the characters and the experience in this example. Explain to students that this part of the narrative describes a “moment” in which Malcolm X was changed for the rest of his life and is therefore instructive for their own purposes in crafting a narrative essay.

- ▶ Students reread the excerpt from pages 37–38 in groups and annotate for instances of the narrative techniques outlined in W.11-12.3.b and how the techniques develop a character, experience, or event in the excerpt.

Transition students to a whole-class discussion of the techniques they identified and their use in developing the characters, experiences, or events in the excerpt, including the effect of that particular stylistic choice.

💬 Student annotations may include:

- **Dialogue:** from “He told me, ‘Malcolm, you ought to be thinking about a career. Have you been giving it thought?’” (p. 37) to “‘People like you as a person—you’d get all kinds of work’” (p. 38).
 - *Explanation:* When an author uses dialogue in a narrative, he or she is showing what the characters really said. Therefore the words have importance for the story as well as the development of the characters. In this example, the words Mr. Ostrowski says to Malcolm are important for how he comes to view himself and understand how the white world views him.
- **Description:** from “Somehow, I happened to be alone in the classroom with Mr. Ostrowski, my English teacher” to “why was he teaching in Mason instead of somewhere else, getting for himself some of the ‘success in life’ that he kept telling us how to get?” (p. 37).
 - *Explanation:* Mr. Ostrowski is an important character in this moment, so the author creates a clear picture of what Mr. Ostrowski looks like as well as how Malcolm relates to him to provide context for the harsh comments that Mr. Ostrowski says. Malcolm X does not depict Mr. Ostrowski as cruel or mean, but his description shows his teacher as pathetic, hypocritical, and small.
- **Reflection:** from “The more I thought afterwards about what he said, the more uneasy it made me” to “Yet nearly none of them had earned marks equal to mine” (p. 38).
 - *Explanation:* By pausing to consider what these words meant and how they affected Malcolm, the author demonstrates the importance of the moment and describes how it changes Malcolm. The author uses reflection to provide Malcolm’s point of view at that moment and also the point of view he has later in life when he is looking back on this moment and assessing its importance.

① Explain to students that they should provide the same level of information and vivid detail in their own personal narratives to develop their experiences or events. However, the scope of their

personal narratives may focus on a much shorter amount of time and the events may be less intense than Malcolm X's experiences.

Explain to students that in order to choose which narrative techniques to use as they write their body paragraphs, they should consider the task, purpose, and audience. Instruct students to take out their statements of purpose from 12.1.1 Lesson 2 and consider whether they would like to revise their statements of purpose based on the work they have done over the past several days. Then instruct students to Think, Pair, Share about the following questions:

How does your task inform your choice of narrative techniques to try?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Because the task is to write a brief 650-word essay, the writer should pay attention to pacing. The events in the essay span several years, so the most words will be spent on the most important events.
- Dialogue can take up a lot of space. Therefore, the writer should include dialogue strategically to illustrate an exchange that represents a turning point in the writer's life, not to simply build the context for events.
- Reflection will help explain the significance of a story as it relates to the specific task. Although the events in the story answer the prompt, this connection may not be immediately apparent. Therefore, the writer can explain through reflection how the events connect to the prompt.

How does your purpose inform your choice of narrative techniques to try?

💬 Student responses may include:

- To stand out from the other essays, this essay will use narrative techniques that are engaging, but straightforward. Some dialogue is necessary to illustrate the turning point, and reflection will help explain the significance of the events to future career goals.
- Because the task is to show how important a specific failure was, the writer may use reflection. Without reflection, the events that describe the failure will not make sense. Reflection provides space for making connections between the failure and plans for the future.
- The purpose of the essay is to show a scene in which a person was being objectified and to describe what the writer said to stand up to that person. Therefore, dialogue will show exactly what the writer said during the exchange, and show how the writer successfully swayed the opinions of those in the crowd.

How does your audience inform your choice of narrative techniques to try?

☞ Student responses may include:

- Because the audience will be reading many essays, an unusual narrative technique like multiple plot lines is a good idea. At first, the writer could describe events about her mother and then describe events from the current time, drawing connections between them.
- The audience will be comprised of adults, and they may want to learn about ways in which the writer has grown from negative experiences and failures. Reflection on the writer's negative experiences and failures to demonstrate growth will make a compelling essay.
- The audience needs to learn a lot about the writer in a short space, so pacing is important. Every word counts, so the writer should only include information that shows strengths or development of character.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses. Remind students to be mindful of their task, purpose, and audience as they craft their body paragraphs.

Activity 4: Drafting and Assessment**50%**

Inform students that they will be using the same techniques they analyzed in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* to continue drafting their responses to one of the Common Application prompts. Students may expand on the personal narrative they wrote in 12.1.1 Lesson 2 or choose a new prompt. The drafts from this lesson should incorporate at least two of the narrative techniques from W.11-12.3.b:

- Dialogue
- Pacing
- Description
- Reflection
- Multiple plot lines

Instruct students to respond in writing to the following prompt:

Draft a paragraph in response to the Common Application prompt, focusing on using narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines to develop experiences, events, and/or characters.

Remind students to use the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the writing prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

- ① Consider drawing students' attention to their work with W.11-12.3.f as they adapt voice and language use to reflect an awareness of audience.

Transition to the independent writing.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.
- 🗨 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.
- ① Instruct students to keep their personal narratives in a writing journal or folder as a portfolio of their narrative writing throughout the module.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 11 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

- ① Students may also use the code WT to annotate for writing techniques that they identify in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and may use in their own writing.
 - ▶ Students follow along.
- ① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they worked on during this lesson or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt. Remind students to focus on using narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines to develop experiences, events, and/or characters. Also, remind students to practice sentence combining and splitting in their drafts. If possible, consider establishing an online writing community (if you have not already established one), so that students can post their drafts for peer review.
- ① If necessary, explain to students that to establish or vary the pace in their personal narratives, they may vary their use of syntax by including multiple short sentences or multiple long sentences in a row. Students should consider how combining short sentences or breaking up long ones could improve the pacing in their personal narratives, or help them to achieve a desired effect.

Homework

Read and annotate chapter 11 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

12.1.1

Lesson 13

Introduction

In this lesson, students participate in a jigsaw discussion to analyze four sections of text from chapter 11 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (pages 172–174 from “I did write to Elijah Muhammad” to “the black man’s condition in this wilderness of North America”; pages 174–177 from “It was because of my letters that I happened” to “in the streets I had slept less than that”; pages 177–180 from “The teachings of Mr. Muhammad stressed how history had been ‘whitened’” to “naked exploitation and power from Cape Horn to Cairo”; and pages 185–188 from “It’s a crime, the lie that has been told” to “‘Aesop’ was only the Greek name for an Ethiopian”). In these passages, Malcolm Little fully embraces the teachings of Elijah Muhammad, educates himself in “black history” (p. 178), and works to spread Elijah Muhammad’s teachings in prison. Students explore these events and the ways in which they show how Malcolm X has developed. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end the lesson: Analyze how events in chapter 11 demonstrate Malcolm X’s development.

For homework, students review their notes and annotations on chapters 1–11 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, focusing specifically on the author’s purpose and how the structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text, in preparation for the Mid-Unit Assessment.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.3	Analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.2.b	Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content. b. Develop the topic thoroughly by selecting the most significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience’s knowledge of the topic.
W.11-12.9.b	Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and

	<p>research.</p> <p>b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i>, presidential addresses]”).</p>
SL.11-12.1.a-c	<p>Initiate and participate effectively in a range of collaborative discussions (one-on-one, in groups, and teacher-led) with diverse partners on <i>grades 11–12 topics, texts, and issues</i>, building on others’ ideas and expressing their own clearly and persuasively.</p> <p>a. Come to discussions prepared, having read and researched material under study; explicitly draw on that preparation by referring to evidence from texts and other research on the topic or issue to stimulate a thoughtful, well-reasoned exchange of ideas.</p> <p>b. Work with peers to promote civil, democratic discussions and decision-making, set clear goals and deadlines, and establish individual roles as needed.</p> <p>c. Propel conversations by posing and responding to questions that probe reasoning and evidence; ensure a hearing for a full range of positions on a topic or issue; clarify, verify, or challenge ideas and conclusions; and promote divergent and creative perspectives.</p>
L.11-12.4.a, b	<p>Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i>, choosing flexibly from a range of strategies.</p> <p>a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word’s position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.</p> <p>b. Identify and correctly use patterns of word changes that indicate different meanings or parts of speech (e.g., <i>conceive, conception, conceivable</i>).</p>

Assessment

Assessment(s)

Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.

- Analyze how events in chapter 11 demonstrate Malcolm X’s development.

High Performance Response(s)

A High Performance Response should:

- Describe Malcolm X's development at this point in the text (e.g., At the end of chapter 10, Malcolm learns about Elijah Muhammad's beliefs, and in chapter 11, Malcolm fully embraces the teachings of Elijah Muhammad. Malcolm gives up his former identity as a hustler and criminal and dedicates himself to practicing Elijah Muhammad's teachings, "introducing the truth to the black man" (p. 185), and "telling the white man about himself" (p. 188).).
- Identify significant events in chapter 11 that demonstrate Malcolm X's development (e.g., beginning to pray, writing letters, "acquir[ing] some kind of a homemade education" (p. 174), joining the prison debating activity, and "recruit[ing] for Mr. Muhammad" (p. 185)).
- Analyze how the significant events in chapter 11 demonstrate Malcolm X's development (e.g., The description of Malcolm beginning to pray highlights how different Malcolm is from earlier in his life, feeling "as though someone else [he] knew of had lived by hustling and crime" (p. 173). Although Malcolm faces an intensely difficult challenge when he begins to pray, he does not give up trying "[a]gain, again" to "force [himself] back down into the praying-to-Allah position" (p. 173). Malcolm X feels that praying is the "hardest test [he] ever faced" (p. 173), so when he is finally able to pray, he demonstrates his commitment to and whole-hearted embrace of Elijah Muhammad's teachings.).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)

- hermit (n.) – a person who lives in a simple way apart from others especially for religious reasons
- Faustian (adj.) – made or done for present gain without regard for future cost or consequences
- machinations (n.) – crafty schemes

Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)

- emulate (v.) – to try to equal or excel; imitate with effort to equal or surpass
- piratical (adj.) – of or relating to a person who robs or commits illegal violence at sea or on the shores of the sea
- opportunist (n.) – someone who tries to get an advantage or something valuable from a situation without thinking about what is fair or right

Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- riffling (v.) – looking through something quickly and not very closely

- fugitive (n.) – a person who is running away to avoid being captured
- pillaging (v.) – taking things from (a place, such as a city or town) by force especially during a war; looting or plundering (a place)
- dyed-in-the-wool (adj.) – having very strong beliefs, opinions, etc., that you are not willing to change

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.3, W.11-12.2.b, W.11-12.9.b, SL.11-12.1.a, b, c, L.11-12.4.a-b Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 11, pages 172–180 and 185–188 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda 2. Homework Accountability 3. Jigsaw Discussion 4. Quick Write 5. Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 10% 2. 15% 3. 55% 4. 15% 5. 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)
- Student copies of the Character Development Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 3) (optional)—students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.3. In this lesson, students read and discuss four sections of text from chapter 11 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. In a jigsaw discussion, students explore the significant events in each section and consider the ways in which they show how Malcolm X has developed.

- Students look at the agenda.

❗ **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

Post or project standards W.11-12.2.b and SL.11-12.1.a, b, c. Instruct students to focus on W.11-12.2.b and talk in pairs about how they think the standard applies to their writing. Lead a brief discussion about the standard. Ask students to discuss the following questions:

How does standard W.11-12.2.b compare to standard W.11-12.3.b? How do the standards differ?

💬 Student responses should include:

- Standard W.11-12.2.b requires students to use important information and details to develop a topic.
- Similarly, standard W.11-12.3.b requires students to develop a narrative through techniques such as dialogue, reflection, description, pacing, or multiple plot lines.
- Both standards are about developing the body of an essay.
- Standard W.11-12.2.b is about developing an informative/explanatory essay, whereas standard W.11-12.3.b is about developing a narrative essay.

① Students were introduced to W.11-12.3.b in 12.1.1 Lesson 12.

Instruct students to focus on SL.11-12.1.a, b, c and talk in pairs about what they think the standard and substandards mean. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

💬 Student responses should include:

- Students engage in different types of discussions with a variety of partners, working off their partners' ideas and clearly communicating their own.
- Students come to class prepared for discussions.
- Students demonstrate their preparedness by using text and any applicable research to generate thoughtful, productive discussions.
- Students are polite and fair during discussions.
- Students set goals and keep to timelines during discussions, as necessary.
- Students move discussions forward by asking and responding to thoughtful questions, clarifying and challenging their points and others'.
- Students ensure that everyone's points are heard and promote hearing multiple perspectives.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read and annotate chapter 11 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on RI.11-12.3. Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about the discussion questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing how individuals, ideas, and events interact and are developed (RI.11-12.3).

💬 Student questions may include:

How does the author support the claim “that among all Negroes the black convict is the most perfectly preconditioned to hear the words, ‘the white man is the devil’” (p. 186)?

- 💬 More than other African Americans, African-American prisoners are ready to accept the idea of the white man as a devil, because they are “caged behind bars, probably for years, put there by the white man” (pp. 186–187). All of African-American prisoners' experiences with white society have been degrading and harmful, so when they begin to think that they could have had a better life if it had not been for the white man, those words are “a perfect echo of that black convict's lifelong experience” (p. 187).

How does Malcolm X act on this claim?

- Malcolm X realizes that African-American prisoners are willing to accept the idea of the white man as a devil, so he takes advantage of that willingness to “catch every chance [he] could to recruit for Mr. Muhammad” (p. 185). Malcolm initiates conversations with other prisoners and joins the debating program to share and circulate Elijah Muhammad’s teachings.

① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief, whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Jigsaw Discussion

55%

Transition students to the jigsaw discussion by creating groups of four; these are the “home” groups. Instruct student groups to decide among themselves which group member is responsible for which of the following sections of text from chapter 11:

- Pages 172–174 from “I did write to Elijah Muhammad” to “the black man’s condition in this wilderness of North America”
- Pages 174–177 from “It was because of my letters that I happened” to “in the streets I had slept less than that”
- Pages 177–180 from “The teachings of Mr. Muhammad stressed how history had been ‘whitened’” to “naked exploitation and power from Cape Horn to Cairo”
- Pages 185–188 from “It’s a crime, the lie that has been told” to “‘Aesop’ was only the Greek name for an Ethiopian”

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students who have been using the Character Development Tool may benefit from reviewing their tools in pairs to trace Malcolm X’s development over the course of the text up to this point.

Direct students to leave their home groups to form “expert” groups so that groups are now based on the section of text for which each student is responsible (e.g., all students responsible for pages 172–174 come together to form a group). Inform students that “expert” groups are those that read, analyze, and become class experts on their section of text so that they can share their understanding with their “home” groups.

Explain to students that they should answer all questions, but inform them that those marked with an asterisk (*) are key questions for consideration during their expert and home group discussions. Instruct students to annotate and take notes, or add to their Character Development Tools if they are using them during discussions. Remind students that annotating and taking notes helps them keep track of evidence they will be using in assessments.

Explain to students that annotating and taking notes helps them in their roles as experts when they return to their home groups for further discussion. Inform students that as experts, they are expected to synthesize their expert group discussions in order to report back to their home groups, stimulating and propelling the discussion of their sections.

- ① Consider reminding students that this is an opportunity to apply standard SL.11-12.1.a, b, c by participating effectively in a collaborative discussion, using textual evidence, promoting respectful discussion, and engaging with others' ideas.
- ① This focused annotation supports students' engagement with W.11-12.9.b, which addresses the use of textual evidence in writing.

Provide students with the following definitions: *hermit* means "a person who lives in a simple way apart from others especially for religious reasons," *Faustian* means "made or done for present gain without regard for future cost or consequences," and *machinations* means "crafty schemes."

- ① Students may be familiar with some of these words. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing them to the group.
 - ▶ Students write the definitions of *hermit*, *Faustian*, and *machinations* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *riffling* means "looking through something quickly and not very closely," *fugitive* means "a person who is fleeing, from prosecution, intolerable circumstances, etc.; a runaway," *pillaging* means "looting or plundering, especially in war," and *dyed-in-the-wool* means "through and through; complete."
 - ▶ Students write the definitions of *riffling*, *fugitive*, *pillaging*, and *dyed-in-the-wool* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout the lesson:

What events show that Malcolm X has become a different person?

Circulate and support student discussions as needed.

Post or project the following questions for students reading pages 172–174 (from "I did write to Elijah Muhammad" to "the black man's condition in this wilderness of North America") to answer in their expert group.

How does Malcolm Little's written exchange with Elijah Muhammad develop Malcolm Little's point of view?

- Malcolm struggles to write his first letter to Elijah Muhammad, feeling the need to rewrite the letter “[a]t least twenty-five times” (p. 172). Despite feeling embarrassed and inadequate, Malcolm still sends the letter, suggesting the importance Malcolm places on communicating with Elijah Muhammad. When he receives a letter in return from Elijah Muhammad, Malcolm is thrilled to be “welcomed ... into the ‘true knowledge’” (p. 172), which shows Malcolm’s eagerness to engage with Elijah Muhammad’s teachings.

What difference does the author develop between the way Malcolm X views “believing the teachings of Mr. Muhammad” (p. 172) and praying?

- Malcolm sees a difference between simply understanding Elijah Muhammad’s teachings by acknowledging or thinking about their truth and actually practicing the teachings by engaging in “that *act*” of prayer (p. 173). To Malcolm, praying is far more difficult than listening to or even believing the teachings, because it requires a significant level of dedication (pp. 172–173).

How does Malcolm X describe the difficulty of beginning to pray?

- For Malcolm X, praying is “[t]he hardest test [he] ever faced in [his] life” (p. 172), indicating that it was an intense and important challenge in which he could either prove something about himself or fail. Malcolm X also emphasizes the difficulty he faces by explaining that the seemingly simple physical act required for praying “took [him] a week” (p. 173), because it continuously made him feel “waves of shame and embarrassment” (p. 173). As he tries to pray, Malcolm sees himself as “the personification of evil” (p. 173) and does not know what to say in prayer when he is finally able to stay on his knees.

***What does Malcolm Little’s experience of praying suggest about his character?**

- By highlighting the amount of time it takes for Malcolm to begin praying and the feelings he experiences, the author emphasizes the intense challenge Malcolm faces when beginning to pray. Malcolm’s persistence in engaging in prayer, trying “[a]gain, again” (p. 173), suggests that Malcolm is determined to embrace and practice Elijah Muhammad’s teachings and change himself no matter how difficult this change may be.

How does the author develop the claim that “[e]verything [he’s] ever felt strongly about, [he’s] done something about” (p. 173)?

- Student responses may include:
 - While Malcolm is in prison, he writes to “people [he] had known in the hustling world” (p. 173) to share his knowledge about Allah and Elijah Muhammad’s teachings. Though Malcolm hears that people think he is “going crazy in stir” (p. 174) and he never receives a response, he continues to write letters to his old friends in Harlem and Roxbury.

- Malcolm writes letters to important politicians explaining “how the white man’s society was responsible for the black man’s condition” (p. 174), though he never receives a reply from any of them.
- Malcolm’s persistence in writing letters that are either “never answered” (p. 174) or never even seen emphasizes Malcolm’s strong belief in Elijah Muhammad’s teachings and his deep commitment to spreading them.

***How has Malcolm Little’s view of himself changed?**

- Once Malcolm embraces the teachings of Elijah Muhammad, he judges himself harshly. Although Malcolm knows how to “[p]ick[] a lock to rob someone’s house” (p. 173), this skill is no longer useful now that he is in prison. He feels “shame[]” (p. 172) about his lack of basic writing skills. Malcolm struggles to pray, viewing himself as “the personification of evil” (p. 173) and feeling ashamed and guilty about his past as a hustler and criminal. Malcolm X shares that after his years at the Norfolk Prison Colony, he thinks about himself as an entirely different person “as though someone else [he] knew of had lived by hustling and crime” (p. 173).

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Character Development Tools to record the character development they identified and discussed.

Post or project the following questions for students reading pages 174–177 (from “It was because of my letters that I happened” to “in the streets I had slept less than that”) to answer in their expert group.

What motivates Malcolm Little “to acquire some kind of a homemade education” (p. 174)?

- Student responses may include:
 - Malcolm is “increasingly frustrated” by his inability to communicate clearly in his letters, especially since he was “the most articulate hustler out there” (p. 174). Malcolm’s primary reason for educating himself is his desire to improve his writing skills so that he can effectively communicate with Elijah Muhammad and tell other people about Elijah Muhammad’s teachings.
 - Bimbi, an inmate from Charlestown Prison, inspires Malcolm because Bimbi “had always taken charge of any conversation he was in” (p. 174), and Malcolm also desires to have the knowledge base to engage people.

Why did Malcolm Little try to emulate Bimbi? What might *emulate* mean in this context?

- Malcolm wants to “emulate him” (p. 174) because Bimbi was intelligent enough to initiate and lead conversations. *Emulate* means trying to imitate someone.

- ① Consider drawing students' attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of using context as a clue to determine the meaning of a word.

***What does Malcolm Little's choice to educate himself suggest about his development?**

- ☞ Malcolm X believes that "unless [he] had received the motivation that [he] did" (p. 175) from Elijah Muhammad, he not only would not have taught himself, he also would have stopped reading what little he already could. This belief suggests that Malcolm's dedication to learning and spreading Elijah Muhammad's teachings inspired him to pursue his "homemade education" (p. 174).

***What does the description of Malcolm Little's "homemade education" process suggest about his character (p. 174)?**

- ☞ The detailed description of Malcolm's slow, organized exercise of copying everything out of the dictionary, even "down to the punctuation marks" (p. 175), demonstrates Malcolm's dedication to improving himself through his "homemade education" (p. 174). Instead of finding pleasure in his zoot suits or ability to hustle, Malcolm now finds pride in how much he is able to teach himself and learn.

What is the impact of Malcolm X's "homemade education" (p. 176) on his point of view?

- ☞ Because Malcolm X refers to his time in prison as a time when he "never had been so truly free in [his] life" (p. 176), Malcolm X clearly views his self-education as a powerful way to open a "new world" (p. 176) for him to explore. Even though Malcolm is in prison and could spend his time engaged in other activities, he chooses to study: "if [he] was not reading in the library, [he] was reading on [his] bunk" (p. 176). Malcolm X views his "homemade education" (p. 176) process as a way to empower himself and feel unrestricted in his potential.
- ① Consider explaining to students that Malcolm X's statement from prison, "up to then, I never had been so truly free in my life," is an example of a rhetorical device or stylistic choice called *paradox*. Define *paradox* as "a statement that seems self-contradictory or absurd but in reality expresses a possible truth."

When the author describes Malcolm Little's reading habits in prison, what does the reference to his "years in the streets" (p. 177) suggest about his development since that time?

- ☞ Student responses may include:
- The description of Malcolm reading in prison after the lights-out call and late into the night indicates how important reading is to him. By reminding readers of his "years in the streets"

(p. 177) and how little he slept then, the author establishes a contrast between the sleepless hustler that Malcolm was previously and the sleepless reader that he is now.

- By referencing Malcolm's "years in the streets" (p. 177), the author demonstrates continuity in Malcolm's personality. In prison, Malcolm "would sit on the floor where [he] could continue reading in that glow" (p. 177) even after the lights-out call, working hard to improve his education. This commitment is similar to his hard work "in the streets" when he "had slept less than" (p. 177) when he was reading late into the night in prison.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Character Development Tools to record the character development they identified and discussed.

Post or project the following questions for students reading pages 177–180 (from "The teachings of Mr. Muhammad stressed how history had been 'whitened'" to "naked exploitation and power from Cape Horn to Cairo") to answer in their expert group.

What interests Malcolm Little in studying "black history" (p. 178)?

- When he learns from Elijah Muhammad that "history had been 'whitened'" (p. 177), Malcolm is greatly affected, because he remembers how insulting his seventh-grade teacher was toward African-American history. To Malcolm, Elijah Muhammad's argument seems accurate, and so he wants to discover as much as he can "on details about black history" (p. 178).

According to Malcolm X, how has "the collective white man ... been actually nothing but a piratical opportunist" (p. 180)? Based on this context and word parts, what do the words *piratical* and *opportunist* mean?

- Student responses may include:
 - Malcolm learns that "since the sixteenth century, the so-called 'Christian trader' white man began to ply the seas in his lust for Asian and African empires, and plunder, and power" (p. 180). Because "the collective white man" sailed from Europe to other continents taking what they wanted from other peoples, and the word *pirate* is in the word *piratical*, *piratical* likely means acting like a pirate, like someone who steals and harms others for his own gain (p. 180).
 - Malcolm learns that "the white man had brought upon the world's black, brown, red, and yellow peoples every variety of the sufferings and exploitation" (p. 180). Because "the collective white man" has taken advantage of the rest of the world, using other people for their own gain and hurting these people along the way, an *opportunist* is likely someone who exploits others for his own benefit without thinking of fairness.

- ① Consider drawing students' attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a-b through the process of using context and word parts to determine the meaning of a word.

***How do the words and phrases Malcolm X uses to describe what he has learned about “the collective white man” contribute to the tone of this excerpt?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- The phrase “piratical opportunist” (p. 180) indicates that Malcolm X views the white man as a criminal, guided not by principles or what is right.
- The phrase “Faustian machinations” (p. 180) indicates that Malcolm X sees the white man as someone who acts for present gain, attempting to manipulate a situation for some evil purpose.

💬 Student responses should include:

- Because these words all suggest a negative view of “the collective white man” (p. 180), these words and phrases together create an accusatory, critical, and angry tone.

How does the tone of the excerpt develop Malcolm X’s point of view?

💬 This tone draws attention to the major shift in Malcolm X’s views toward “the collective white man” (p. 180). Now that he has studied Elijah Muhammad’s teachings and read history books in prison, Malcolm X wholly adopts the perspective that the white man is the devil.

***How do the details of what Malcolm X learned from reading in prison contribute to the author’s purpose?**

💬 By sharing what Malcolm X learns in “book after book” (p. 180) about all of the terrible, inexcusable things “the collective white man” (p. 180) has done to the rest of the world, the author furthers the purpose of explaining Malcolm X’s life so that the reader understands why Malcolm X’s views change, and the perspective Malcolm X has when he argues that the white man is the devil.

- ① Consider reminding students of their discussion of the author’s purpose in 12.1.1 Lesson 10.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Character Development Tools to record the character development they identified and discussed.

Post or project the following questions for students reading pages 185–188 (from “It’s a crime, the lie that has been told” to “‘Aesop’ was only the Greek name for an Ethiopian”) to answer in their expert group.

What words does the author use to describe the view that African Americans “had no history” (p. 185)? How does this word choice develop Malcolm X’s point of view?

- Malcolm X believes that the view that African Americans “had no history” is a “crime” and a “lie” that white society has told for centuries and continues to tell (p. 185). Malcolm X also describes those affected by this “crime” as “innocent” (p. 185). By using the words “crime,” “lie,” and “innocent,” Malcolm X emphasizes white society’s moral wrongdoing and implies that there is an injustice that must be corrected. Because they are committing a “crime” by telling a “lie,” Malcolm X believes that white society should be held responsible for the harm done to the “[l]ittle innocent black children” (p. 185).

***What do the details of Malcolm Little’s recruitment process suggest about his character?**

- Even though he is passionate about sharing Elijah Muhammad’s teaching, Malcolm uses a slow, organized procedure: First, he “would read to these brothers” (p. 186), next he “would keep close watch on how each one reacted,” and finally “[w]hen one was ripe ... [he’d] drop it on him, what Mr. Muhammad taught” (p. 186). By slowly introducing Elijah Muhammad’s teachings and taking his time with each potential recruit, Malcolm shows himself as someone who understands how to effectively approach and persuade people.

***What prompts Malcolm Little to join the debating program?**

- After educating himself in black history and studying Elijah Muhammad’s teachings about the white man as a devil, Malcolm feels an intense need to “start telling the white man about himself to his face” (p. 187). Malcolm also sees the debating program as a way to share his knowledge with other African-American inmates (p. 187).

What do the content details from the debates suggest about Malcolm X’s character?

- Sharing some of the details of Malcolm’s arguments during his participation in the debating program suggests that Malcolm is able to take the knowledge he has gained in his self-education and apply it in debates. The details of the debates suggest that Malcolm knows what topics will engage and possibly persuade his audience and how to outwit his opponents, such as when Malcolm argues that “Ethiopians’ black flesh had been spattered against trees by bombs the Pope in Rome had blessed” (p. 188).

***How does Malcolm X’s experience with the debating program demonstrate his development?**

- Joining the debating program is Malcolm’s first experience in public speaking, and he immediately finds it to be fulfilling. The experience gives him the opportunity not only to practice his speaking skills, but also to spread Elijah Muhammad’s teachings. By always trying to “work into [his] speech the devilishness of the white man” (p. 188) in the public setting of the

prison debates, Malcolm shows his deep commitment to Elijah Muhammad’s teachings. During his experience in the debating program, Malcolm makes the critical decision “to devote the rest of [his] life to telling the white man about himself—or die” (p. 188).

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Character Development Tools to record the character development they identified and discussed.
-

When expert groups complete their analysis of their section of text, instruct students to return to their home group in which each member has explored a different section of chapter 11. Each student should present the analysis from the expert group to his or her home group members for discussion, focusing on the key questions marked with an asterisk. If time remains, encourage students to discuss the remaining questions. Circulate to ensure student comprehension.

Once home groups complete their sharing and discussion, pose the following question for a whole-class discussion.

How does Malcolm Little develop from the end of chapter 10 to the end of chapter 11?

- 💬 At the end of chapter 10, Malcolm’s family members introduce him to the teachings of Elijah Muhammad, and Malcolm is so in awe of what he learns that he does not think of Mr. Muhammad as a “religious faker” (p. 171) until later. Instead, Malcolm fully accepts and embraces Elijah Muhammad’s teachings, and in chapter 11, Malcolm is “welcomed ... into the ‘true knowledge’” (p. 172). By the end of chapter 11, Malcolm becomes such a devout follower of Elijah Muhammad that he engages in his “first experiences in opening the eyes of [his] brainwashed black brethren” (p. 185) and he decides “to devote the rest of [his] life to telling the white man about himself—or die” (p. 188).

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Character Development Tools to record the character development they identified and discussed.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze how events in chapter 11 demonstrate Malcolm X’s development.

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson’s vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to focus on developing their

topic thoroughly by selecting the most significant details, quotations, or other information. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.

🗣 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to review their notes and annotations on chapters 1–11 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, focusing specifically on the author’s purpose and how the structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text in preparation for the Mid-Unit Assessment.

- ▶ Students follow along.

Homework

Review your notes and annotations on chapters 1–11 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, focusing specifically on the author’s purpose and how the structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text in preparation for the Mid-Unit Assessment.

Model Character Development Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Analyze the character development that you encounter in the text. Identify the events that are connected to this development. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Character Development	Event	Evidence
Malcolm fully embraces Elijah Muhammad's teachings.	Malcolm corresponds with Elijah Muhammad. Malcolm begins to pray to Allah.	"Mr. Muhammad sent me a typed reply. It had an all but electrical effect upon me ... After he welcomed me into the 'true knowledge,' he gave me something to think about." (p. 172) "My comprehending, my believing the teachings of Mr. Muhammad had only required my mind's saying to me, 'That's right!' or 'I never thought of that.' But bending my knees to pray—that <i>act</i> —well, that took me a week." (p. 172–173)
Malcolm becomes an educated person and values learning.	Elijah Muhammad inspires Malcolm to begin educating himself. Malcolm constantly reads while in prison. Malcolm educates himself in language and "black history" (p. 178).	"I happened to stumble upon starting to acquire some kind of a homemade education." (p. 174) "I became increasingly frustrated at not being able to express what I wanted to convey in letters that I wrote, especially those to Mr. Elijah Muhammad." (p. 174) "I would have quit even [book-reading] motions, unless I had received the motivation that I did." (p. 175) "if I was not reading in the library, I was reading on my bunk." (p. 176) "I would sit on the floor where I could continue reading in that

		glow” (p. 177) even after the lights-out call.
Malcolm is so devoted to Elijah Muhammad’s teachings that he wants to spread them to others.	<p>Malcolm writes letters about Elijah Muhammad’s teachings to politicians and old friends.</p> <p>Malcolm begins to recruit other African-American inmates to Elijah Muhammad’s teachings.</p> <p>Malcolm joins the prison debating program.</p>	<p>“I soon began writing to people I had known in the hustling world ... about Allah and Islam and Mr. Elijah Muhammad.” (p. 173)</p> <p>“I began to catch every chance I could to recruit for Mr. Muhammad.” (p. 185)</p> <p>“And if there was any way in the world, I’d work into my speech the devilishness of the white man.” (p. 188)</p> <p>“It was right there in prison that I made up my mind to devote the rest of my life to telling the white man about himself—or die.” (p. 188)</p>

12.1.1

Lesson 14

Introduction

In this lesson, the Mid-Unit Assessment, students use textual evidence from chapters 1–11 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* to craft a formal, multi-paragraph response to the following prompt: Determine the author’s purpose and analyze how the structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text.

Students review their annotated texts, lesson Quick Writes, discussion notes, homework notes, and optional tools to organize their ideas. Students then develop their essays with relevant and sufficient evidence. The Mid-Unit Assessment is assessed using the 12.1.1 Mid-Unit Text Analysis Rubric.

For homework, students read chapter 12 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.5	Analyze and evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.
RI.11-12.6	Determine an author’s point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.
W.11-12.2.a, b	<p>Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content.</p> <p>a. Introduce a topic; organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; include formatting (e.g., headings), graphics (e.g., figures, tables), and multimedia when useful to aiding comprehension.</p> <p>b. Develop the topic thoroughly by selecting the most significant and relevant facts,</p>

	extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience's knowledge of the topic.
W.11-12.9.b	<p>Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research.</p> <p>b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i>, presidential addresses]”).</p>
Addressed Standard(s)	
None.	

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning in the first part of this unit is assessed via a formal, multi-paragraph response. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Determine the author's purpose and analyze how the structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text. <p>① Student responses are evaluated using the 12.1.1 Mid-Unit Text Analysis Rubric.</p>
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Determine the author's purpose (e.g., the author shares the details of Malcolm X's life through this book so that readers understand how Malcolm X becomes the person he is (p. 153)). Identify examples of structure, style, and content that contribute to the power or beauty of the text (for examples, see below). Analyze how these examples of structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (for examples, see below). <p>A High Performance Response may include the following evidence in support of a multi-paragraph analysis. The text contains several examples of how structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text, so High Performance Responses may vary widely:</p>

- When explaining his purpose, the author shares Malcolm X's belief that truly understanding someone requires that "his whole life, from birth, must be reviewed" (p. 153). The author's structural choice to begin *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* when Malcolm X was still in his mother's womb highlights this purpose, stressing that the importance of knowing even the context within which a person is born is essential for understanding why Malcolm X thinks and acts the way he does throughout his life. By beginning the text with the terrifying and violent event in which Klansmen aggressively harass Malcolm X's parents, "shattering every window pane with their gun butts" (p. 1), the author demonstrates that Malcolm X is born in a time and place of intense, explicit racism and discrimination. The frightening and emotional content of this event engages the reader with Malcolm X's life from the very beginning, thereby contributing to the power of the text.
- When describing Malcolm X's development into a hipster, the author's stylistic choice to employ imagery creates a detailed, vivid picture of what Malcolm looks like and how he begins to fit into the "hipster style" (p. 61). The author describes Malcolm's first zoot suit as "shark-skin gray, with a big, long coat, and pants ballooning out at the knees and then tapering down to cuffs so narrow that [he] had to take off [his] shoes to get them on and off," and his new shoes as "dark orange colored, with paper-thin soles and knob style toes" (p. 61). This imagery functions like a photograph of Malcolm at this time in his life. This stylistic choice enhances the beauty of the text.
- As Malcolm comes closer to being caught for his robberies, the author's stylistic choice to use figurative language conveys Malcolm X's thoughts on that time in his life. Malcolm X reflects that "[he] had gotten to the point where [he] was walking on [his] own coffin" and that "[i]t's a law of the rackets that every criminal expects to get caught" (p. 149). The imagery of walking on a coffin and the figurative language of calling the likelihood of being caught a "law" emphasize Malcolm X's acknowledgement that he was living a very dangerous lifestyle that was certain to end poorly for him. Making the stylistic choice to employ figurative language to convey this emphasis contributes to the power of the text.

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)

- None.*

Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)

- None.*

Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- None.*

*Because this is not a close reading lesson, there is no specified vocabulary. However, in the process of returning to the text, students may uncover unfamiliar words. Teachers can guide students to make meaning of these words by following the protocols described in 1e of this document http://www.engageny.org/sites/default/files/resource/attachments/9-12_ela_prefatory_material.pdf.

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.5, RI.11-12.6, W.11-12.2.a-b, W.11-12.9.b Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapters 1–11 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda 2. Homework Accountability 3. 12.1.1 Mid-Unit Assessment 4. Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 5% 2. 10% 3. 80% 4. 5%

Materials

- Copies of the 12.1.1 Mid-Unit Assessment for each student
- Copies of the 12.1.1 Mid-Unit Text Analysis Rubric and Checklist for each student

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
◀	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.



Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

5%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standards for this lesson: RI.11-12.5, RI.11-12.6, W.11-12.2.a, b, and W.11-12.9.b. In this lesson, students complete the Mid-Unit Assessment in which they present evidence determining the author's purpose and analyzing how the structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text.

- ▶ Students look at the agenda.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

10%

Instruct students to take out their homework from the previous lesson. (Review your notes and annotations on chapters 1–11 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, focusing specifically on the author's purpose and how the structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text, in preparation for the Mid-Unit Assessment.)

Instruct students to form pairs to briefly compare and share their notes and annotations in preparation for the Mid-Unit Assessment.

Activity 3: 12.1.1 Mid-Unit Assessment

80%

Explain to students that because it is a formal writing task, the Mid-Unit Assessment should include an introductory statement and well-organized ideas supported by the most significant and relevant evidence.

Instruct students to write a multi-paragraph response to the following prompt:

Determine the author's purpose and analyze how the structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text.

Distribute and review the 12.1.1 Mid-Unit Text Analysis Rubric and Checklist. Remind students to use the Text Analysis Rubric to guide their written responses. Ask students to use this unit's vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses.

Remind students to use their annotated text, lesson Quick Writes, discussion notes, homework notes, and tools to write their response.

Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.

See the High Performance Response at the beginning of the lesson.

- ① Consider encouraging students who finish early to reread and revise their response.

Activity 4: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 12 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (RI.11-12.6). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

- ▶ Students follow along.

- ① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they have been working on or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt that better allows them to fulfill their statements of purpose. Remind students to focus on using narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines to develop experiences, events, and/or characters.

Students may post their drafts to the class's online writing community and be paired for peer review. Remind peer reviewers to consider how effectively their peer uses a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).

Consider establishing new peer review pairs, different from those established in 12.1.1 Lesson 7, so that students can benefit from a reviewer with fresh eyes. Consider maintaining the same peer review pairs through 12.1.1 Lesson 18 so that students can provide and receive consistent feedback from a peer familiar with their work in relation to W.11-12.3.b.

Homework

Read and annotate chapter 12 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (RI.11-12.6). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

12.1.1 Mid-Unit Assessment

Text-Based Response

Your Task: Rely on your reading and analysis of chapters 1–11 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* to write a well-developed response to the following prompt:

Determine the author’s purpose and analyze how the structure, style, and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text.

Your writing will be assessed using the 12.1.1 Mid-Unit Text Analysis Rubric.

Guidelines

Be sure to:

- Closely read the prompt
- Address all elements of the prompt in your response
- Paraphrase, quote, and reference relevant evidence to support your claim
- Organize your ideas in a cohesive and coherent manner
- Maintain a formal style of writing
- Follow the conventions of standard written English

CCSS: RI.11–12.5, RI.11–12.6, W.11–12.2.a, b, W.11–12.9.b

Commentary on the Task:

This task measures RI.11–12.5 because it demands that students:

- Analyze and evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.

This task measures RI.11–12.6 because it demands that students:

- Determine an author’s point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

This task measures W.11–12.2.a, b because it demands that students:

- Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content.
 - Introduce a topic; organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; include formatting (e.g., headings), graphics (e.g., figures, tables), and multimedia when useful to aiding comprehension.
 - Develop the topic thoroughly by selecting the most significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience’s

knowledge of the topic.

This task measures W.11-12.9.b because it demands that students:

- Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research.
 - Apply *grades 11–12 Reading standards* to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., *The Federalist*, presidential addresses]”).

12.1.1 Mid-Unit Text Analysis Rubric

____/____ (Total points)

Criteria	4 – Responses at this Level:	3 – Responses at this Level:	2 – Responses at this Level:	1 – Responses at this Level:
Content and Analysis The extent to which the response analyzes and evaluates the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.RI.11-12.5 Analyze and evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.	Skillfully analyze and thoroughly evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.	Accurately analyze and evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.	With partial accuracy, analyze and partially evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.	Inaccurately analyze and minimally evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.
Content and Analysis The extent to which the response determines an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective and analyzes how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.RI.11-12.6 Determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.	Precisely determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective; skillfully analyze how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.	Accurately determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective; accurately analyze how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.	Partially determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective; with partial accuracy, analyze how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.	Inaccurately determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective; inaccurately analyze how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

Criteria	4 – Responses at this Level:	3 – Responses at this Level:	2 – Responses at this Level:	1 – Responses at this Level:
Command of Evidence and Reasoning The extent to which the response thoroughly develops the topic through the effective selection and analysis of the most significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience's knowledge of the topic. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.2 Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.2.b Develop the topic thoroughly by selecting the most significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience's knowledge of the topic.	Thoroughly and skillfully develop the analysis with the most significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience's knowledge of the topic. (W.11-12.2.b)	Develop the analysis with significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience's knowledge of the topic. (W.11-12.2.b)	Partially develop the analysis with weak facts, extended definitions, details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience's knowledge of the topic. (W.11-12.2.b)	Minimally develop the analysis, providing few or irrelevant facts, extended definitions, details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience's knowledge of the topic. (W.11-12.2.b)
Command of Evidence and Reasoning The extent to which the response draws evidence from informational texts to support analysis, reflection, or research. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.9.b Draw evidence from informational	Skillfully utilize textual evidence from informational texts to support analysis, reflection, or research.	Accurately utilize textual evidence from informational texts to support analysis, reflection, or research.	Somewhat effectively or with partial accuracy utilize textual evidence from informational texts to support analysis, reflection, or research.	Ineffectively or inaccurately utilize textual evidence from informational texts to support analysis, reflection, or research.

Criteria	4 – Responses at this Level:	3 – Responses at this Level:	2 – Responses at this Level:	1 – Responses at this Level:
texts to support analysis, reflection, and research; apply <i>grades 11-12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction.				
<p>Coherence, Organization, and Style</p> <p>The extent to which the response introduces a topic and organizes complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; when useful to aiding comprehension, includes formatting, graphics, and multimedia.</p> <p>CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.2</p> <p>Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content.</p> <p>CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.2.a</p> <p>Introduce a topic; organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; include formatting (e.g., headings), graphics (e.g., figures, tables), and multimedia when useful to aiding comprehension.</p>	Skillfully introduce a topic; effectively organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element clearly builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; when useful to aiding comprehension, skillfully include formatting, graphics, and multimedia. (W.11-12.2.a)	Introduce a topic; organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; when useful to aiding comprehension, include formatting, graphics, and multimedia. (W.11-12.2.a)	Ineffectively introduce a topic; organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element partially builds on that which precedes it to create a loosely unified whole; when useful to aiding comprehension, somewhat effectively include formatting, graphics, and multimedia. (W.11-12.2.a)	Lack a clear a topic; illogically arrange ideas, concepts, and information, failing to create a unified whole; when useful to aiding comprehension, ineffectively include formatting, graphics, and multimedia. (W.11-12.2.a)

- A response that is a personal response and makes little or no reference to the task or text can be scored no higher than a 1.
- A response that is totally copied from the text with no original writing must be given a 0.
- A response that is totally unrelated to the task, illegible, incoherent, blank, or unrecognizable as English must be scored as a 0.

12.1.1 Mid-Unit Text Analysis Checklist

Assessed Standards: _____

	Does my response...	✓
Content and Analysis	Analyze and evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging? (RI.11-12.5)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text? (RI.11-12.6)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Analyze how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text? (RI.11-12.6)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Command of Evidence and Reasoning	Develop the response with the most significant and relevant textual evidence? (W.11-12.2.b)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Utilize textual evidence to support analysis, reflection, or research? (W.11-12.9.b)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Coherence, Organization, and Style	Introduce a topic? (W.11-12.2.a)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole? (W.11-12.2.a)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	When useful to aiding comprehension, include formatting, graphics, and multimedia? (W.11-12.2.a)	<input type="checkbox"/>

12.1.1

Lesson 15

Introduction

In this lesson, students analyze pages 202–206 from chapter 12 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “We had hoped to hear his wisdom during dinner” to “what the white man had done to our poor people here in America”). In this passage, the author discusses Malcolm X’s experiences with recruiting efforts for Elijah Muhammad and beginning to lecture at Temple One. Students explore the author’s style and content choices, analyzing how they enhance the power or beauty of this excerpt. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end the lesson: Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty in chapter 12.

For homework, students read and annotate chapter 13 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. Students also develop discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.6	Determine an author’s point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
L.11-12.1	Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English grammar and usage when writing or speaking.
L.11-12.2.b	Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English capitalization, punctuation, and spelling when writing. b. Spell correctly.
L.11-12.4.a	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of strategies. a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word’s position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty in chapter 12.
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify at least one example of a stylistic choice that contributes to the power or beauty of chapter 12 (e.g., The author focuses on Malcolm X's early experiences lecturing Nation of Islam followers at Temple One in Detroit. The author uses juxtaposition to explain that when Malcolm X lectures now he "rarely feel[s] as much electricity as was then generated in [him]" (p.205) when he was only beginning to lecture at Temple One in Detroit.). Identify at least one example of a content choice that contributes to the power or beauty of chapter 12 (e.g., To highlight Malcolm X's early experiences speaking to Nation of Islam followers, the author includes quotations of the content from Malcolm X's lectures about the horrors of slavery. The quotations the author includes focus on the degrading and harmful effects of the slave masters' rape of African-American women: "That rapist slavemaster who emasculated the black man ... until even today the black man lives with fear of the white man in his heart" (p. 206).). Analyze how these stylistic and content choices contribute to the power or beauty of chapter 12 (e.g., Through the stylistic choice of juxtaposition, the author emphasizes the extent to which Malcolm X feels stimulated and energized during his early experiences lecturing to Nation of Islam followers. Malcolm X now has "audiences of millions" who can hear his message through "radio and television microphones," which the author juxtaposes with Malcolm X's early experiences lecturing to only "those seventy-five or a hundred Muslims" who were physically in front of him in their modest "storefront temple with the squealing of pigs filtering in from the slaughterhouse just outside" (p. 205). The author's stylistic choice of juxtaposition contributes to the power of the excerpt by highlighting how different Malcolm X felt as a young minister. By including quotations from Malcolm X's early lectures, the author demonstrates the typical content in Malcolm X's speeches that would move him so much: "<i>Think of hearing wives, mothers, daughters, being raped! And you were too filled with fear of the rapist to do anything about it!</i>" (p. 206). Because rape is such an emotionally intense topic that is difficult for many people to hear discussed, the quotation shocks the reader and develops the emotional intensity of the excerpt. Sharing the content of the lectures serves to generate the same "electricity" (p. 205) in the reader that Malcolm X feels while speaking on these topics, which contributes to the overall power of the excerpt.).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> extemporaneous (adj.) – done, spoken, performed, etc. without special advance preparation gall (n.) – bitterness of spirit
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> rebuffed (v.) – rejected or criticized sharply
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> lull (n.) – a brief time when action or activity stops – usually + <i>in</i> forebears (n.) – members of your family in the past reel (v.) – to be very shocked, confused, and upset Plymouth Rock (n.) – a rock at Plymouth, Massachusetts, on which the Pilgrims who sailed on the <i>Mayflower</i> are said to have stepped ashore when they landed in America in 1620

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.6, L.11-12.1, L.11-12.2.b, L.11-12.4.a Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 12, pages 202–206 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability Reading and Discussion Quick Write and Editing Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 10% 15% 50% 20% 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)

- Student copies of the Style and Content Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 5) (optional)—students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.6. In this lesson, students read and discuss a section of text from chapter 12 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. Students explore the author's style and content choices, analyzing how they enhance the power or beauty of this excerpt.

- Students look at the agenda.

❗ **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

Post or project standards L.11-12.1 and L.11-12.2.b. Instruct students to talk in pairs about what they think each standard means. Lead a brief discussion about the standards.

💬 Student responses should include:

- Students should use grammar correctly and communicate without slang in both writing and discussion.
- During writing assignments, students should follow the rules for capitalization and punctuation and spell correctly.

❗ Review rules for capitalization, punctuation, and spelling as necessary.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read and annotate chapter 12 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (RI.11–12.6). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about questions they developed for homework, specifically discussing the author's point of view or purpose and the contribution of style and content to the power or beauty of the text.

💬 Student questions may include:

How does the description of “the Muslim home routine” (p. 197) contribute to the power of the text?

💬 By “patiently” sharing the step-by-step routine typical in “the Muslim home” (p. 197) the author emphasizes Malcolm X's interest in the routine. The description contributes to the power of the text because the reader, like Malcolm X, witnesses and understands “[e]ach act, and the significance of that act” (p. 197) and is captivated by the routine.

What is the rhetorical impact of the last sentence in the chapter: “In the years to come, I was going to have to face a psychological and spiritual crisis” (p. 214)?

💬 In the section of text immediately preceding this sentence, the author emphasizes Malcolm X's faith in and dedication to Elijah Muhammad, perhaps hinting at the content of the “psychological and spiritual crisis” to come (p. 214). Because the reader does not know exactly why or when Malcolm X will have this crisis, especially since the preceding section is nothing but positive about Elijah Muhammad, the author's stylistic choice to use foreshadowing contributes to the power of the excerpt by building suspense and tension.

- ① Consider informing students that the last sentence of chapter 12 is an example of foreshadowing. If necessary, remind students of their work with foreshadowing in 12.1.1 Lesson 11.
- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief, whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

50%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text as they read and discuss.

- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 202–204 (from “We had hoped to hear his wisdom during dinner” to “And I worshipped him” and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *lull* means “a brief time when action or activity stops” and *forebears* means “members of your family in the past.”

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *lull* and *forebears* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout the lesson:

What makes the text powerful or beautiful?

What does it mean that Malcolm X “found [his] tongue” (p. 202)? How does this description develop the reader’s understanding of Malcolm X’s point of view?

- 💬 The phrase “found [his] tongue” (p. 202) is a figurative way of showing that Malcolm X is inspired to speak, and he knows what he wants to say. The stylistic choice to use figurative language in a simple, direct sentence emphasizes that Malcolm X views this moment as important. This description implies that prior to this discussion, Malcolm X had not felt ready to engage Mr. Muhammad in this way, highlighting Malcolm X’s view that his first dinner with Elijah Muhammad is a pivotal experience for him.
- ① Consider explaining to students that this is an example of a rhetorical device or stylistic choice called *metonymy*. Define *metonymy* for students as “the use of some aspect of a person, object or idea to represent that person, object or idea.” For example, to state that Malcolm X “found [his] tongue” (p. 202), is to show that he found the inspiration and power to speak.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Style and Content Tools to record this definition and example of *metonymy*.

***How does receiving the “X” affect Malcolm X? What words and phrases emphasize this effect?**

- Receiving the “X” is important to Malcolm X, because it allows him to reject “the white slavemaster name” (p. 203) and embrace and display his new identity. By using the phrase “forever after” (p. 203), the author emphasizes the importance and finality of Malcolm X’s new identity.

***How does the author describe the people Malcolm X tries to recruit in Detroit? What makes this description powerful or beautiful?**

- Student responses may include:
- The author describes the people Malcolm X tries to recruit as “poor, ignorant, brainwashed black brothers mostly too deaf, dumb, and blind, mentally, morally, and spiritually to respond” (p. 203). This description is powerful, because the alliteration and repetitive word endings intensify Malcolm X’s feelings of pity, anger, and frustration toward the people he tries to help.
 - The alliteration and repetitive word endings create an engaging rhythm that distinguishes the sentence from the rest of the paragraph, enhancing both the beauty and power of the description.
 - Because the African Americans Malcolm X tries to recruit are not actually “too deaf, dumb, and blind,” the figurative language exaggerates these men’s conditions, which emphasizes Malcolm X’s deep concern for them (p. 203).

① If necessary, explain to students that the description “too deaf, dumb, and blind” is an example of hyperbole. Define *hyperbole* as “obvious and intentional exaggeration.”

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Style and Content Tools to record this definition and example of *hyperbole*.

What is the rhetorical impact of the image of “each month, a few more automobiles lengthened our caravans” (p. 203)?

- With this image, the author shows that “[g]radually, enough were made interested” (p. 203) by Malcolm X’s recruitment efforts. The author’s stylistic choice to use imagery to convey the sense of growth adds to the beauty of the excerpt. Through imagery, the author is not merely reporting the fact that membership in the Nation of Islam grew; instead, the image allows the reader to vividly picture more and more cars traveling to Chicago, which is a more beautiful way than listing a statistic to convey the sense of growth.

***How does the author emphasize Malcolm X’s opinion of Elijah Muhammad?**

- Student responses may include:

- The author creates an abrupt shift in sentence structure by using the short sentence “And I worshipped him” (p. 204) as its own paragraph, which is jarring to the reader. By varying syntax for effect, the author places special emphasis on the meaning of this sentence, highlighting just how important Elijah Muhammad is to Malcolm X.
- By using the word *worshipped* (p. 204), the author emphasizes that Malcolm X views Elijah Muhammad as someone so important that he acts toward him as he would act toward God.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider extending students’ analysis of the sentence “And I worshipped him” (p. 204) with the following question:

What is the impact of the word “worshipped” (p. 204)?

Through the word “worshipped” (p. 204), the author compares Malcolm X’s feelings about Elijah Muhammad to how a religious person acts toward his or her god. The word “worshipped” emphasizes the extent to which Malcolm X respects and glorifies Elijah Muhammad. Because Malcolm X reveres Elijah Muhammad like a god, he feels “honored” whenever Elijah Muhammad invites them for dinner or pays them “a personal visit” (p. 204).

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Style and Content Tools to record the stylistic and content choices they identified and discussed.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 204–206 (from “In early 1953, I left the furniture store” to “what the white man had done to our poor people here in America”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definitions: *extemporaneous* means “done, spoken, performed, etc. without special advance preparation” and *gall* means “bitterness of spirit.”

① Students may be familiar with some of these words. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing them to the group.

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *extemporaneous* and *gall* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *reel* means “to be very shocked, confused, and upset” and *Plymouth Rock* is “a rock at Plymouth, Massachusetts, on which the Pilgrims who sailed on the *Mayflower* are said to have stepped ashore when they landed in America in 1620.”

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *reel* and *Plymouth Rock* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① As this section of text contains material relating to the rape of slaves by white men and the cumulative impact of these individual actions on the larger African American community, consider establishing and modeling classroom norms and expectations for a respectful and critical academic discussion.

***What comparison does the author make between when Malcolm X speaks “[t]oday” (p. 205) and when he first lectured at Temple One? How does this comparison contribute to the power of the excerpt?**

- 💬 The author juxtaposes Malcolm X’s present experiences lecturing to “audiences of millions” using the sophistication of “radio and television microphones” to when he first began lecturing in front of only “seventy-five or a hundred Muslims” in the comparatively humble “storefront temple with the squealing of pigs filtering in from the slaughterhouse just outside” (p. 205). Because millions now hear his message, it may not be clear why Malcolm X “rarely feel[s] as much electricity as was then generated in [him]” (p. 205). However, the juxtaposition draws attention to the emotional significance of Malcolm X’s early lecturing experiences, thereby contributing to the power of the excerpt.

- ① If necessary, remind students of their work with *juxtaposition* in 12.1.1 Lesson 10.

What does Malcolm X feel toward his “poor blind black brothers” when they “rebuff[]” Mr. Muhammad’s teachings (p. 205)? What words and phrases clarify the meaning of *rebuffed* in this context?

- 💬 Malcolm X feels “anger and pity” (p. 205) when he tries to talk to African Americans about Elijah Muhammad’s teachings and the teachings are “rebuffed and even ridiculed” (p. 205). Since these people seem to be dismissing and making fun of Elijah Muhammad’s teachings, then *rebuffed* likely means “rejected or criticized sharply.”
- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of using context as a clue to determine the meaning of a word.

***How does the inclusion of the quotations from Malcolm X’s lectures develop the author’s purpose in this excerpt?**

- 💬 Student responses may include:
 - By including quotations from Malcolm X’s lectures, the author exposes the reader to Malcolm X’s speaking style and content. Though Malcolm X “had never felt remotely

- qualified to directly represent Mr. Muhammad” (p. 204), the inclusion of the quotations demonstrates that Malcolm X is indeed ready to speak on behalf of the Nation of Islam.
- The author’s inclusion of quotations is a powerful way to demonstrate Malcolm X’s readiness to become a minister because the quotations transport the reader into Malcolm X’s audience, giving the reader a more physical experience of what it would have been like to hear powerful phrases like “We have *accepted* it! We have *embraced* it! We have *believed* it! We have *practiced* it!” (p. 205).

***How does the content of the quoted lectures contribute to the power of this excerpt?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- The quotations focus on Malcolm X’s descriptions of “[t]hat rapist slavemaster who emasculated the black man” and how the rape of African-American women affected and continues to affect African Americans’ condition and identity, since “even today the black man lives with fear of the white man in his heart” (p. 206). Because rape is such an emotionally charged topic that is difficult for many people to discuss, the quotations shock the reader and develop the emotional intensity of the excerpt.
- The quoted lectures include Malcolm X’s description of his struggle with his racial identity in the context of all African Americans being “polluted by [the] devil white man” (p. 206), which connects to an experience that his audience shared. The inclusion of Malcolm X’s description of his racial identity and his “raping, red-headed devil ... *grandfather*” (p. 206) contributes to the power of the passage because it is a deeply personal experience.

What does it mean to “become so choked up” (p. 206)? How does this description develop the reader’s understanding of Malcolm X’s point of view?

- 💬 The author uses figurative language to mean that Malcolm X is so overcome with emotion “thinking to [himself] about what the white man had done to our poor people here in America” (p. 206) that it is like he cannot breathe or say anything at all. Malcolm X’s reflection on the issues he brings up during his speaking experience indicates how strongly he feels about the condition of African Americans.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Style and Content Tools to record the instances of stylistic or content choices they identified and discussed.

Activity 4: Quick Write and Editing

20%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty in chapter 12.

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson's vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.

☞ See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Transition students to editing their Quick Writes. Instruct students to edit their Quick Writes for proper grammar, capitalization, punctuation, and spelling according to standards L.11-12.1 and L.11-12.2.

① If possible provide online or hardcopy dictionaries as necessary.

- ▶ Students independently edit their Quick Writes.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 13 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

- ▶ Students follow along.

① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they have been working on or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt that better allows them to fulfill their statements of purpose. Remind students to focus on using narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, to develop experiences, events, and/or characters.

Students may post their drafts to the class's online writing community and be paired for peer review. Remind peer reviewers to consider how effectively their peer uses narrative techniques,

such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, to develop experiences, events, and/or characters.

Homework

Read and annotate chapter 13 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

Model Style and Content Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Use this tool to track the stylistic or content choices you encounter in the text, as well as examples and explanations of these choices. Be sure to note the rhetorical effect of each choice on the text.

RI.11-12.6: Determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

Rhetoric: the specific techniques that writers or speakers use to create meaning in a text, enhance a text or a lecture, and often, persuade readers or listeners

Style: how the author expresses content, which frequently includes the use of figurative language or rhetorical devices

Content: what the author writes, including events, ideas, and details the author chooses to include

Point of View: an author's opinion, attitude, or judgment

Purpose: an author's reason for writing

Example of style (figurative language or rhetorical device) or content (events, ideas, details) (with page reference)	Rhetorical effect (power, beauty, point of view, purpose)
The author uses foreshadowing the last sentence of the chapter: "In the years to come, I was going to have to face a psychological and spiritual crisis" (p. 214).	Because the reader does not know exactly why or when Malcolm X will have this crisis, especially since the preceding section is nothing but positive about Elijah Muhammad, the author's stylistic choice to use foreshadowing contributes to the power of the excerpt by building suspense and tension.
The author uses metonymy when he writes that Malcolm X "found [his] tongue" during the first dinner he has with Elijah Muhammad (p. 202). <i>Metonymy:</i> the use of some aspect of a person, object, or idea to represent that person, object, or idea	Using figurative language in a simple, direct sentence emphasizes the importance of the moment to Malcolm X, which demonstrates Malcolm X's point of view that his first dinner with Elijah Muhammad is a pivotal experience for him.

<p>The author uses alliteration when he describes the people Malcolm X tries to recruit in Detroit as “poor, ignorant, brainwashed black brothers mostly too deaf, dumb, and blind, mentally, morally, and spiritually to respond” (p. 203).</p>	<p>This description is powerful, because the alliteration and repetitive word endings intensify Malcolm X’s feelings of pity, anger, and frustration toward the people he believes he is trying to help.</p> <p>The alliteration and repetitive word endings create an engaging rhythm that distinguishes the sentence from the rest of the paragraph, enhancing both the beauty and power of the description.</p>
<p>The author uses hyperbole when he describes the people Malcolm X tries to recruit in Detroit as “too deaf, dumb, and blind” (p. 203).</p> <p><i>Hyperbole</i>: obvious and intentional exaggeration</p>	<p>The hyperbole exaggerates these men’s conditions, which emphasizes Malcolm X’s low opinion of them and adds to the power of the description.</p>
<p>To convey a sense of growth, the author uses the image of “a few more automobiles lengthened our caravans” (p. 203).</p>	<p>Through imagery, the author is not merely reporting the fact that membership in the Nation of Islam grew; instead, imagery contributes to the beauty of the text by allowing the reader to vividly picture more and more cars traveling to Chicago, which is a more beautiful way than listing a statistic to convey the sense of growth.</p>
<p>The author varies his syntax for stylistic effect with an abrupt, short sentence: “And I worshipped him” (p. 204).</p>	<p>As a short sentence in its own paragraph, the author creates an abrupt shift in sentence structure, which is jarring to the reader. By varying syntax for effect, the author places special emphasis on the meaning of this sentence, highlighting just how important Elijah Muhammad is to Malcolm X, which shows Malcolm X’s point of view.</p>
<p>The author uses juxtaposition to compare Malcolm X’s present experiences lecturing to “audiences of millions” using the sophistication of “radio and television microphones” to when he first began lecturing in front of only “seventy-five or a hundred Muslims” in the comparatively humble “storefront temple with the squealing of pigs filtering in from the slaughterhouse just outside” (p. 205).</p>	<p>Because millions now hear his message, it may not be clear why Malcolm X “rarely feel[s] as much electricity as was then generated in [him]” (p. 205). However, the juxtaposition draws attention to the emotional significance of Malcolm X’s early lecturing experiences, thereby contributing to the power of the excerpt.</p>

<p>The author includes quotations of the content from Malcolm X's lectures about the horrors of slavery (pp. 205–206, from “We didn’t land on Plymouth Rock, my brothers and sisters” to “and the gall to think we, his victims, should <i>love</i> him!”).</p>	<p>By including quotations from Malcolm X's early lectures, the author demonstrates the typical content in Malcolm X's speeches that would move him so much. Because rape is such an emotionally intense topic that is difficult for many people to hear discussed, the content shocks the reader. This example develops the emotional intensity, which contributes to the overall power of the excerpt.</p>
<p>The author uses figurative language, describing Malcolm X as feeling “so choked up” (p. 206) after lecturing on the horrors of slavery.</p>	<p>The author's use of figurative language to show that Malcolm X is so overcome with emotion that it is like he cannot breathe or speak indicates how strongly Malcolm X feels about the condition of African Americans, which demonstrates Malcolm X's point of view.</p>

12.1.1

Lesson 16

Introduction

In this lesson, students analyze two sections of text from chapter 13 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (pages 215–217 from “I quit the Ford Motor Company’s Lincoln-Mercury Division” to “report to Mr. Muhammad a new temple address” and pages 237–239 from “Later that year, after Betty and I were married” to “child in the streets were discussing ‘those Muslims’”). In these passages, Malcolm X becomes a full-time minister for Elijah Muhammad, skillfully executing his first responsibility of establishing a temple in Boston. Later, as the minister of the temple in Harlem, Malcolm X organizes a demonstration after an incident of police brutality against a member of the Nation of Islam. Students explore these events and the ways in which they show how Malcolm X has developed through this point in the text. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end the lesson: Analyze how events in chapter 13 demonstrate Malcolm X’s development.

For homework, students read and annotate the first half of chapter 14, pages 240–251 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “In the spring of nineteen fifty-nine” to “The child cries for and needs its own world!”). Students also develop discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.3	Analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
L.11-12.4.a	<p>Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i>, choosing flexibly from a range of strategies.</p> <p>a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word’s position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.</p>

Assessment

Assessment(s)

Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.

- Analyze how events in chapter 13 demonstrate Malcolm X's development.

High Performance Response(s)

A High Performance Response should:

- Describe Malcolm X's development in chapter 13 (e.g., In chapter 13, the author recounts how Malcolm X transitions from being an Assistant Minister at the temple in Detroit to being a full-time minister charged with traveling across the country "to establish more temples among the twenty-two million black brothers" (p. 215). Finally, Malcolm X becomes the primary minister for the temple in Harlem, and in doing so, establishes himself as a powerful, respected leader in the growing Nation of Islam.).
- Identify significant events that demonstrate Malcolm X's development in chapter 13 (e.g., Malcolm X leaves his factory job to become a full-time minister for Elijah Muhammad (p. 215), Malcolm X travels to Boston and establishes a temple there (pp. 216–217), Malcolm X organizes the Fruit of Islam to pressure the police into getting Brother Hinton medical care (pp. 238–239).).
- Analyze how the significant events demonstrate Malcolm X's development in chapter 13 (e.g., Malcolm X's role during the incident with Brother Hinton demonstrates how powerful Malcolm X is now as a leader in the Nation of Islam. When Malcolm X hears about the attack on Brother Hinton, he takes a leadership role and organizes the Fruit of Islam "with some telephone calls, in less than half an hour" (p. 238) to engage in a peaceful demonstration at the police station. Throughout the demonstration, the Fruit of Islam obey Malcolm X's directions, which indicates that Malcolm X is now an influential leader whom others in his community respect. Malcolm X's interactions with the police during the incident with Brother Hinton also demonstrate Malcolm X's growing confidence and power as a community leader. Malcolm X is confident enough to address "the lieutenant in charge" (p. 238) and convince the police to allow him to see Brother Hinton. Malcolm X also successfully demands from the lieutenant that Brother Hinton "receive[] proper medical attention" (p. 238). The police even ask Malcolm X to control the crowd, showing that the police view him as important (pp. 238–239).).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> immersed (v.) – involved deeply, absorbed subjugate (v.) – to conquer and gain the obedience of (a group of people, a country, etc.) nightsticks (n.) – heavy sticks that are carried by police officers and are used as weapons
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> dispersed (v.) – to separate and move apart in different directions without order or regularity; become scattered
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> analogy (n.) – a comparison of two things based on their being alike in some way arouse (v.) – to cause (someone) to become active, ready, or upset scuffle (n.) – to fight briefly and usually not very seriously appraised (v.) – gave an opinion about the condition, quality, or importance of (something or someone studied or examined)

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.3, L.11-12.4.a Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 13, pages 215–217 and 237–239 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability Reading and Discussion Quick Write Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5% 15% 60% 15% 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the Character Development Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 3) (optional)—students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
📘	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

5%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.3. In this lesson, students read and discuss two sections of text from chapter 13 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. Students explore the events described in the chapter and the ways in which they show how Malcolm X has developed.

- Students look at the agenda.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read and annotate chapter 13 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing how individuals, ideas, and events interacted and developed (RI.11-12.3).

- 💬 Student questions may include:

How does the author’s description of Malcolm X’s reunion with West Indian Archie develop Malcolm X’s view of himself?

- By describing how West Indian Archie has become “a ghost of the person [Malcolm] remembered” and how Malcolm X “could see, that the end was closing in on Archie” (p. 221), the author shows how different Malcolm X’s life is from Archie’s. The contrast emphasizes how Malcolm X’s life has taken an entirely different direction from Archie’s, which develops Malcolm X’s belief that his conversion to Islam saved his life.

What does Malcolm X’s proposal to Betty suggest about his character?

- After thinking through the potential decision, Malcolm X calls Betty from a pay phone and asks her: “Look, do you want to get married?” (p. 235). The simplicity and directness of Malcolm X’s proposal demonstrates that he is action-oriented and not interested in romantic ideals.

- If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion**60%**

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text as they read and discuss.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 215–217 (from “I quit the Ford Motor Company’s Lincoln-Mercury Division” to “report to Mr. Muhammad a new temple address”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

- If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.
- Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout the lesson:

How does Malcolm X grow and change through the events in this chapter?

Provide students with the following definitions: *immersed* means “involved deeply, absorbed,” and *subjugate* means “to conquer and gain the obedience of (a group of people, a country, etc.).”

- Students may be familiar with some of these words. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing them to the group.

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *immersed* and *subjugate* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *analogy* means “a comparison of two things based on their being alike in some way,” and *arouse* means “to stir to action or strong response.”
 - ▶ Students write the definitions of *analogy* and *arouse* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students who have been using the Character Development tool may benefit from reviewing their tools in pairs to trace Malcolm X’s development over the course of the text up to this point.

***Why does Malcolm X quit his job at the Ford Motor Company?**

- 💬 Malcolm X decides to quit the Ford Motor Company in order to become a full-time minister for Elijah Muhammad. Because there were still “twenty-two million black brothers who were brainwashed” and Malcolm X views himself as an “activist” (p. 215), he feels driven to dedicate his time and energy to spreading Elijah Muhammad’s teachings.

How does the author describe Malcolm X’s reaction to studying with Elijah Muhammad? How does this description develop Malcolm X’s view of Elijah Muhammad?

- 💬 Student responses may include:
 - When Malcolm X begins studying with Elijah Muhammad, he “went to bed every night ever more awed” (p. 215), explaining that he was now studying with more commitment under Elijah Muhammad than he had even in prison. This description continues to develop Malcolm X’s unquestioning obedience to Elijah Muhammad and his willingness to let Elijah Muhammad guide his beliefs completely.
 - As he continues to study with Elijah Muhammad, Malcolm X explains that his “adoration of Mr. Muhammad grew” and that Mr. Muhammad was “the first man whom [Malcolm] ever feared ... the fear such as one has of the power of the sun” (p. 216). These descriptions together develop Malcolm X’s deep admiration and profound respect for Elijah Muhammad as someone whom Malcolm X found powerful and awe-inspiring.

***What details from the text demonstrate Malcolm X’s abilities as a minister?**

- 💬 Student responses may include:
 - The author describes the “general pattern” (p. 216) Malcolm X used in his early days as a minister. By quoting examples of what he would typically say, the author demonstrates that

by now, Malcolm X has developed a specific speaking style and method. Malcolm X has become an experienced and practiced minister.

- Malcolm X explains that in his lectures to potential followers, his discussion of “[t]he dramatization of slavery never failed intensely to arouse” his audience (p. 217). The audience’s reaction to what Malcolm X states and how he states it shows that Malcolm X is able to captivate an audience.
- Malcolm X explains that at every new meeting, “the people who had been there before returned, bringing friends” (p. 217). Malcolm X’s success in convincing people to attend more meetings and invite their friends along shows that he has become an effective and engaging minister.
- Elijah Muhammad sends Malcolm X to Boston to spread his teachings, and Malcolm X is able to build up enough of a following in only “three months” to justify “open[ing] a little temple” (p. 217). Malcolm X’s successes in recruiting followers and establishing a temple in such a short period of time reveal that he has matured as a minister and is becoming an important leader in the Nation of Islam.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider asking the following optional extension question to deepen students’ understanding.

Malcolm X claims that his “personal chemistry perhaps made [him] reach more quickly than most ministers in the Nation of Islam that stage of dedication” (p. 215). What events earlier in Malcolm X’s life demonstrate this “personal chemistry” (p. 215)? Use evidence from the text to support your answer.

💬 Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X’s “personal chemistry” (p. 215) that helped him progress quickly in the Nation of Islam was also evident during his job on the railroad. Malcolm X quickly became so good at his job that the “sandwich man [he’d] replaced had little chance of getting his job back,” because Malcolm X was able to sell snacks “as fast as the railroad’s commissary department could supply them” (p. 78).
- Just like Malcolm X’s ability to “reach more quickly than most ... that stage of dedication” (p. 215), Malcolm X was a quick learner and dedicated employee when he worked at Small’s. He would “arrive an hour early” and “[i]nside of a week” of beginning work, Malcolm X “had succeeded” (p. 84) at getting on the good side of both the cooks and the bartenders. Malcolm X’s “personal chemistry” (p. 215) also helped him build relationships with customers with whom he would “have long talks—absorbing everything” (p. 84).
- The “personal chemistry” (p. 215) that helped Malcolm X quickly become a dedicated, successful minister also helped Malcolm X when he sold marijuana. The very first night he

began selling, he was able to pay back the loan Sammy had given him and even offer Sammy extra money. Malcolm X used his connections and his “personal chemistry” (p. 215) that made him good at working with people to “have enough profit to be in business” (p. 102) the same night that he started the work.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Character Development Tools to find and record the character development they identified and discussed.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 237–239 (from “Later that year, after Betty and I were married” to “child in the streets were discussing ‘those Muslims’”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definitions: *nightsticks* means “heavy sticks that are carried by police officers and are used as weapons.”

- ① Students may be familiar with this word. Consider asking students to volunteer a definition before providing it to the group.
- ▶ Students write the definitions of *nightsticks* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *scuffle* means “a rough, confused struggle or fight,” and *appraised* means “gave an opinion about the condition, quality, or importance of (something or someone studied or examined).”
- ▶ Students write the definitions of *scuffle* and *appraised* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

How has Malcolm X “exhausted” himself (p. 237)?

- 🗨 As a full-time minister for Elijah Muhammad, Malcolm X works constantly, always “trying to help the Nation to keep growing” (p. 237). Though Malcolm X is now the minister of the temple in Harlem, he continues to travel from city to city, including “[g]uest-teaching at the Temple in Boston” (p. 237). Malcolm X is “exhausted” because he has fully dedicated himself to spreading Elijah Muhammad’s teachings.

*What details from the incident with Brother Hinton clarify Malcolm X’s role at Temple Seven in Harlem?

- 🗨 Student responses may include:

- Immediately after the attack on Brother Hinton, Malcolm X is able to organize the Fruit of Islam “with some telephone calls, in less than half an hour” (p. 238) to engage in a peaceful demonstration at the police station. Throughout the demonstration, the Fruit of Islam obey Malcolm X’s directions, leaving when Malcolm X “gave the order” (p. 239). Malcolm X’s control of the situation indicates that Malcolm X is not just a minister at Temple Seven; he is also becoming a powerful leader in the Nation of Islam community.
- Malcolm X is the person who organizes the Fruit of Islam “with some telephone calls, in less than half an hour” (p. 238) and “g[i]ve[s] the order” (p. 239) to disperse when the demonstration is over. These actions demonstrate that Malcolm X has taken on a leadership role even in events that happen outside of the temple. Because he is the one who talks to “the lieutenant in charge” (p. 238), he acts as the voice not only of Temple Seven but also of “Harlem’s black people” who “were long since sick and tired of police brutality” (p. 239).

***How does the author describe Malcolm X’s interactions with the police? What do these interactions suggest about Malcolm X?**

- After gathering the Fruit of Islam in front of the police precinct, Malcolm X convinces the police to allow him to see Brother Hinton and successfully demands from the lieutenant that Brother Hinton “receive[] proper medical attention” (p. 238). After marching to the hospital, “a high police official came up to [Malcolm]” (p. 239) recognizing him as the leader and asking him to control the crowd. Malcolm X’s ability to get what he wants even from authority figures outside of the Nation indicates how influential he has become.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle to understand the action in this section of text, consider asking the following scaffolding question:

What words and phrases clarify the meaning of *dispersed* in this context?

- After Malcolm X “gave the order,” the Fruit of Islam “slipped away,” leaving the front of the hospital and ending the demonstration. In the following sentence, the word “also” suggests that the “other Negroes[]” also left the demonstration, so *dispersed* means to separate or scatter without order (p. 239).
- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of using context as a clue to determine the meaning of a word.

***How does the Fruit of Islam’s demonstration affect the community in Harlem?**

- According to the author, African Americans in Harlem “never had seen any organization of black men take a firm stand” like the Fruit of Islam (p. 239). This demonstration, which Malcolm X was largely responsible for organizing, serves to raise awareness of the Nation of Islam in the rest of

the African American community. “[F]or the first time the black man, woman, and child in the streets were discussing ‘those Muslims’” (p. 239), which shows Malcolm X’s increasing influence even outside of the Nation.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider extending students’ analysis of the community’s reaction to the demonstration with the following question:

Why might the Fruit of Islam’s demonstration cause the community in Harlem to “discuss ‘those Muslims’” (p. 239)?

- 💬 At that time “Harlem’s black people were long since sick and tired of police brutality” (p. 239). Although police brutality was a long-standing issue in Harlem, it seems that no other group or organization had taken a powerful or “firm stand” (p. 239) like the Fruit of Islam did. Because the Harlem community “never had seen any organization of black men” (p. 239) demonstrate in this way, they likely began “discuss[ing] ‘those Muslims’” (p. 239), because the Nation of Islam’s demonstration gave them a sense of power and pride that no other group provided.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Character Development Tools to record the character development identified and discussed.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze how events in chapter 13 demonstrate Malcolm X’s development.

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson’s vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

- ① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.

- 💬 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate the first half of chapter 14 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 240–251 (from “In the spring of nineteen fifty-nine” to “The child cries for and needs its own world!”) and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text (RI.11-12.2). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

► Students follow along.

- ① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they have been working on or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt that better allows them to fulfill their statements of purpose. Remind students to focus on using narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, to develop experiences, events, and/or characters.

Students may post their drafts to the class’s online writing community and be paired for peer review. Remind peer reviewers to consider how effectively their peer uses narrative techniques, such as dialogue, pacing, description, reflection, and multiple plot lines, to develop experiences, events, and/or characters.

Homework

Read and annotate the first half of chapter 14 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 240–251 (from “In the spring of nineteen fifty-nine” to “The child cries for and needs its own world!”) and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text (RI.11-12.2). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

Model Character Development Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Analyze the character development that you encounter in the text. Identify the events that are connected to this development. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Character Development	Event	Evidence
Malcolm X further develops as a minister in the Nation of Islam.	<p>Malcolm X quits his factory job and becomes a full-time minister for Elijah Muhammad (p. 215).</p> <p>Malcolm X establishes a temple in Boston (p. 216–217).</p>	<p>“My decision came relatively quickly. I have always been an activist.” (p. 215)</p> <p>“Mr. Muhammad, when he felt me able, permitted me to go to Boston.” (p. 216)</p> <p>“Every meeting, the people who had been there before returned, bringing friends.” (p. 217)</p> <p>“Enough had stood up after about three months that we were able to open a little temple.” (p. 217)</p>
Malcolm X becomes a powerful, respected leader in the growing Nation of Islam.	<p>Elijah Muhammad appoints Malcolm X as the minister of Temple Seven in Harlem (p. 219).</p> <p>Malcolm X organizes and leads the demonstration at the police station after the attack on Brother Hinton (pp. 238–239).</p>	<p>“I went in, as the minister of Temple Seven, and demanded to see our brother.” (p. 238)</p> <p>“I told the lieutenant in charge” (p. 238)</p> <p>“I gave the order and the Muslims slipped away.” (p. 239)</p>

12.1.1

Lesson 17

Introduction

In this lesson, students analyze a section from chapter 14 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 242–251 (from “In late 1959, the television program was aired” to “The child cries for and needs its own world!”). In this passage, Malcolm X interacts with the press in the aftermath of a critical documentary about the Nation of Islam. Students read and annotate for the development of central ideas in this passage. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: Determine two central ideas in pages 242–251 and analyze how they interact and build on one another.

For homework, students write a list of ideas about how they would respond to the following college interview question: What activities do you find most rewarding? Also for homework, students respond briefly in writing to the following prompt: How does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* use a variety of techniques to sequence events to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution)? Additionally, students reread their narrative responses from 12.1.1 Lesson 12 and consider whether they would like to expand them into longer compositions or whether they would like to try a different Common Application prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 18.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.2	Determine two or more central ideas of a text and analyze their development over the course of the text, including how they interact and build on one another to provide a complex analysis; provide an objective summary of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.4	Determine the meaning of words and phrases as they are used in a text, including figurative, connotative, and technical meanings; analyze how an author uses and refines the meaning of a key term or terms over the course of a text (e.g., how Madison defines <i>faction</i> in <i>Federalist</i> No. 10).
W.11-12.3.c	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. c. Use a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another

	to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).
W.11-12.9.b	<p>Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research.</p> <p>b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i>, presidential addresses]”).</p>

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Determine two central ideas in pages 242–251 and analyze how they interact and build on one another.
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify two central ideas in this passage (e.g., integration vs. separation, systemic oppression, racial identity). Analyze how these central ideas interact and build on one another (e.g., Malcolm X claims that systemic oppression is present even in integration: “No <i>sane</i> black man really believes that the white man ever will give the black man anything more than token integration” (p. 250). Also, Malcolm X differentiates himself and the Nation of Islam from other African American leaders in the fight for civil rights, and this racial identity contributes to the disagreement between integration vs. separation: “The devils and black Ph.D. puppets would be acting so friendly and ‘integrated’ with each other ... it was such a big lie it made me sick in my stomach” (p. 249).).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ominous (adj.) – suggesting that something bad is going to happen in the future

- vainglorious (adj.) – filled with or given to excessive elation or pride over one’s own achievements
- heathens (n.) – irreligious, uncultured, or uncivilized people
- deteriorating (v.) – to make or become worse in character, quality, value, etc.

Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)

- demagogue (n.) – a person, especially an orator or political leader, who gains power and popularity by arousing the emotions, passions, and prejudices of the people
- militantly (adv.) – vigorously active and aggressive, especially in support of a cause

Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- two-faced (adj.) – saying different things to different people in order to get their approval instead of speaking and behaving honestly
- loopholes (n.) – errors in the way a law, rule, or contract is written that makes it possible for some people to legally avoid obeying it

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standards: RI.11-12.2, RI.11-12.4, W.11-12.3.c, W.11-12.9.b • Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 14, pages 242–251 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda 2. Homework Accountability 3. Reading and Discussion 4. Quick Write 5. Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 10% 2. 15% 3. 55% 4. 15% 5. 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)
- Student copies of the Central Ideas Tracking Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 4) (optional)—students may need additional blank copies

- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.2. Inform students that in this lesson, they read pages 242–251, analyzing for central ideas.

- Students look at the agenda.

❗ **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

Post or project standards RI.11-12.4 and W.11-12.3.c. Instruct students to focus on standard RI.11-12.4 and talk in pairs about what they think the standard means. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

How can one determine the meaning of a word as it is used in a text?

💬 Student responses should include:

- By looking at surrounding words and seeing how the word is being used.
- By replacing the word with another word to see if the meaning stays the same.
- By looking up a word's definition and its origins.
- By paying attention to the author's definition of a term and how that definition evolves over the course of a text.

❗ If necessary, provide students with the following definitions: *figurative* means “not literal; meaning beyond the basic meaning of words” and *connotative* means “suggesting an idea or quality that a word inspires in addition to its meaning.”

Instruct students to focus on standard W.11-12.3.c and talk in pairs about how the standard applies to their own writing. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

🗨 Student responses should include:

- Students should sequence events so they build on one another and work together coherently.
- Students should organize events to build toward a specific effect.
- Students should use structural techniques to create a specific tone or sense of suspense.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Depending on students' familiarity with structural techniques, consider providing the following definitions:

- *foreshadowing* means "a device in which a writer gives a hint of what is to come later in the story"
- *reflection* means "consideration of a subject, idea, or past event"
- *summarizing* means "briefly expressing the main and supporting ideas of a text"
- *turning point* means "a point at which a decisive or important change takes place"
- *flashback* means "a transition in a narrative to an earlier scene or event"
- *circular narration* means "a narrative that ends in the same place it began; a narrative that has certain plot points repeated"
- *juxtaposition* means "an act or instance of placing close together or side by side, especially for comparison or contrast"

① Students were introduced to *juxtaposition* in 12.1.1 Lesson 10 as a rhetorical device or stylistic choice. Explain to students that juxtaposing events or ideas in a text may also be considered a structural choice.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses. Inform students that for homework they consider how the author sequences events for effect in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, and they will explore the standard more deeply in the next lesson.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read and annotate the first half of chapter 14 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 240–251 (from "In the spring of nineteen fifty-nine" to "The child cries for and needs its own world!") and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text (RI.11-12.2). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about the questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing central ideas that were introduced in previous chapters and are further developed in this section of text, and how they relate to ideas in this chapter (RI.11-12.2).

🗣 Student questions may include:

How does Malcolm X construct an identity based on race that is separate from some members of his own race, specifically those whom he calls “the biggest Negro ‘leaders’ ... in 1960” (p. 244)?

🗣 Malcolm X states that there were “‘house’ and ‘yard’ Negroes” (p. 243) during slavery, and that the same dynamic still exists between African Americans today—some of “the biggest Negro ‘leaders’ ... attack us ‘field’ Negroes” (p. 244).

How does Malcolm X construct an identity distinct from “the white man” (p. 246)?

🗣 Malcolm X uses religious differences to construct a distinct identity. He writes that “‘Christianity is the white man’s religion” (p. 246), and he states that he is not a Christian because the Bible has been used as an “‘ideological weapon” against African Americans.

① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider allowing student discussions to continue. Then lead a brief whole-class discussion using student questions and the key questions that follow to assure students are ready for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

55%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text as they read and discuss.

① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 242–248 (from “In late 1959, the television program was aired” to “other major monthly magazines’ coverage of us”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Instruct students to annotate their texts for the central idea, using the code CI. Remind students that annotating helps them keep track of evidence they use later in lesson assessments and the End-of-Unit Assessment, which focuses on the development of central ideas.

① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard W.11-12.9.b through the process of drawing evidence from the text to support reflection and analysis.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Central Ideas Tracking Tools to record central ideas they identify and discuss.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout this lesson:

Find two central ideas in this passage and explain how they are related.

Provide students with the following definitions: *ominous* means “suggesting that something bad is going to happen in the future,” *vainglorious* means “filled with or given to excessive elation or pride over one’s own achievements,” and *heathens* means “irreligious, uncultured, or uncivilized people.”

- ① Students may be familiar with some of these words. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing them to the group.
- ▶ Students write the definitions of *ominous*, *vainglorious*, and *heathens* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *two-faced* means “saying different things to different people in order to get their approval instead of speaking and behaving honestly” and *loopholes* means “errors in the way a law, rule, or contract is written that makes it possible for some people to legally avoid obeying it.”
- ▶ Students write the definitions of *two-faced* and *loopholes* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

How did the 1959 television program “The Hate that Hate Produced” depict Malcolm X and other members of the Nation of Islam (p. 242)?

- 💬 “The Hate that Hate Produced” depicted Malcolm X, Elijah Muhammad, and others, as “strong-looking, set-faced black men” (p. 242). Malcolm X states that the entire episode was intended to “increase the shock mood” (p. 242), or make people feel shocked.
- ① If necessary, provide students with the following explanation of the brief allusion to “The War of the Worlds” on page 242: “The War of the Worlds” was a 1938 fictional radio drama adapted from the H.G. Wells novel of the same name. Orson Welles was the director and narrator of the episode. *The War of the Worlds* is the story of aliens from Mars attacking Earth. Many people in the United States believed the story was true and panicked.

How was “the white man’s” reaction to “The Hate that Hate Produced” hypocritical (p. 243)?

- 💬 Malcolm X states that “the white man[]” was “just fine as long as the victimized, brutalized and exploited black people had been grinning,” but as soon as “things were different,” the “white ma[]” was “startled if ... his victims don’t share his vainglorious self-opinion” (p. 243). These

statements suggest that for white people to react to the television program and rally against hate is hypocritical because they themselves have been hateful toward African Americans for centuries.

***What is the purpose of the author’s mention of “‘house’ and ‘yard’ Negroes,” as well as “‘field’ Negroes” (pp. 243 and 244)?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- The author points to a difference of attitude toward white people within the African-American community. He writes, “Since slavery, the American white man has always kept some handpicked Negroes who fared much better than the black masses suffering and slaving out in the hot fields. The white man had these ‘house’ and ‘yard’ Negroes for his special servants” (p. 243). In other words, some African Americans have always had it better than others, insofar as “the white man” has historically treated some differently than others.
- The author draws a parallel between these “‘house’ Negroes,” and the “sophisticated” African Americans whom “the white man ... dialed” (p. 243) after the television program aired, suggesting that this historical pattern still exists.
- The author writes that many “of the biggest Negro ‘leaders’ ... began to attack us ‘field’ Negroes” after the television program (p. 244). This distinction suggests that the divide within the African-American community has existed since slavery and still existed at the time the book was written.

① The author uses the terms “‘house’ Negro” and “‘yard’ Negro” in the text. Students should use the author’s language when reading or citing textual evidence, but they should avoid using these terms in discussion when they are not quoting from the text because the terms are racial slurs.

According to Malcolm X, in what other way is the “‘white man’ ... ‘two-faced’” (p. 245)?

💬 Malcolm X states that the “‘white man’” is “‘two-faced’” because not long before the book was written, African Americans would have been “‘put to death for advocating so-called ‘integration,’” but when “‘Mr. Muhammad speaks of ‘separation,’ the white man calls us ‘hate-teachers’ and ‘fascists!’” (p. 245). In this way, “the white man” is hypocritical and two-faced.

***According to Malcolm X, how has the “‘white man’” used Christianity to his advantage (p. 246)?**

💬 Malcolm X argues that “‘the white man’” has conquered countries with guns and the Bible, by using the Bible “‘to call the people ‘heathens,’” then sending in armies, then “‘missionaries behind the guns to mop up’” (p. 246). In other words, Malcolm X is arguing that the Bible has been used to support a racist ideology.

- ① If necessary, provide students with the following definition: *ideology* means "the body of doctrine, myth, belief, etc. that guides an individual, social movement, institution, class, or large group."

How does Malcolm X define the word *demagogue*? How does he use this definition to support his claim on page 246?

- 💬 Malcolm X states that, if one goes "'back to the Greek ... 'Demagogue' means, actually, 'teacher of the people'" (p. 246). Since he is being accused of being a demagogue, he points out others throughout history who have been accused of the same: Socrates, Jesus Christ, Gandhi, and Martin Luther. Because these people are greatly respected historical figures that the general American population thinks on favorably, these are "'demagogues'" that his opponents would likely respect.

***What does Malcolm X think of the 1954 Supreme Court decision on school integration? Why?**

- 💬 Malcolm X states that the 1954 Supreme Court decision on school integration was "'one of the greatest magical feats ever performed in America'" (p. 247). He argues that it essentially tricked people into thinking there was integration, but that the "whites" were handed "'loopholes'" to the rule so that they did not have to actually integrate their children.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider explaining to students that the 1954 Supreme Court decision on school integration is also commonly referred to as "Brown versus Board of Education." It was a landmark case in which the Supreme Court ruled that it was unconstitutional for states to segregate schools.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 248–251 (from "Before very long, radio and television people..." to "'The child cries for and needs its own world!'") and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definition: *deteriorating* means "to make or become worse in character, quality, value, etc."

- ① Students may be familiar with this word. Consider asking students to volunteer the definition before providing it to the group.
- ▶ Students write the definition of *deteriorating* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

***How does Malcolm X distinguish between the ideology of the Nation of Islam and the ideology of what he calls “Uncle Tom ... black ‘leaders’” (pp. 247–250)?**

Student responses should include:

- Malcolm X states that the “modern, twentieth-century Uncle Thomas [is] ... usually well-dressed and well-educated,” and “his profession is being a Negro for the white man” (p. 248). Malcolm X suggests that these people believe in integration and criticize the Nation of Islam for encouraging “separation” (p. 250).
- To emphasize that the “black ‘leaders’” (p. 247) are educated and professional, Malcolm X changes “Uncle Tom” to “Uncle Thomas,” sarcastically ridiculing them.

***What is Malcolm X’s argument against “integration” (p. 250)? What central idea develops in this passage?**

- Malcolm X argues that “[n]o sane black man really wants integration” because “Western society is deteriorating” and “the only way black people caught up in this society can be saved is ... to separate from it” (p. 250). Malcolm X states that integration allows “the white man” to continue oppressing African Americans by only providing “token integration” (p. 250). The idea of integration vs. separation develops in this passage as Malcolm X argues that the integration as marketed by “the white man” is not true integration, but rather a ploy to keep African Americans oppressed. Therefore, African Americans should not actually want integration. The central idea of integration vs. separation is being developed.

For what reasons does Malcolm X “militantly” (p. 250) reject segregation? How does the context of the word *militantly* help you determine its meaning?

Student responses should include:

- Malcolm X “militantly” (p. 250) opposes segregation because “[t]o segregate means to control” (p. 251). He argues that segregation is “forced upon inferiors by superiors” (p. 251). In other words, segregation is the product of oppression.
- Malcolm X argues that the Nation of Islam “reject[s] segregation even more *militantly* than you say you do” (p. 250). Since Malcolm X is speaking with African-American leaders who oppose segregation, he must mean that they strongly oppose it. In that way, *militantly* must mean strongly and with force.

***What is the difference Malcolm X establishes between “segregation” and “separation” (pp. 250–251)?**

- Malcolm X argues that the difference between segregation and separation is that segregation means “to control,” and it “is forced upon inferiors by superiors” (p. 251). Separation “is done

voluntarily, by two equals—for the good of both!” (p. 251). Malcolm X argues that segregation is bad, because it allows one race to remain in control, but separation allows for separate equality.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Central Ideas Tracking Tools to record central ideas they identify and discuss.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Determine two central ideas in pages 242–251 and analyze how they interact and build on one another.

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson’s vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

- ① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.
- 🗣 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to write a list of ideas about how they would respond to the following college interview question. Remind students to keep in mind their task, purpose, and audience as they consider their response. Instruct students to provide reasons for their opinions. Inform students that they will practice responding to this interview question in the following lesson.

What activities do you find most rewarding?

Also for homework, instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

How does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* use a variety of techniques to sequence events to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution)?

Additionally, instruct students to reread their narrative responses from 12.1.1 Lesson 12 and consider whether they would like to expand them into longer compositions or whether they would like to try a different Common Application prompt in the following lesson.

① Students who have been completing their Accountable Independent Writing each night should gather their drafts to bring to class for their work in 12.1.1 Lesson 18.

- ▶ Students follow along.

Homework

For homework, write a list of ideas about how you would respond to the following college interview question. Remember to keep in mind your task, purpose, and audience as you consider your response. Provide reasons for your opinions. You will practice responding to this interview question in the following lesson.

What activities do you find most rewarding?

Also for homework, respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

How does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* use a variety of techniques to sequence events to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution)?

Additionally, reread your narrative response from 12.1.1 Lesson 12 and consider whether you would like to expand it into a longer composition or if you would like to try a different Common Application prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 18.

Model Central Ideas Tracking Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Identify the central ideas that you encounter throughout the text. Trace the development of those ideas by noting how the author introduces, develops, or refines these ideas in the texts. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Text:	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told by Alex Haley
--------------	---

Page #	Central Idea	Notes and Connections
Pages 243–244	Racial identity	Malcolm X states, “Since slavery, the American white man has always kept some handpicked Negroes who fared much better than the black masses suffering and slaving out in the hot fields. The white man had these ‘house’ and ‘yard’ Negroes for his special servants” (p. 243). He argues that these two categories exist today. Since these categories are bound to race and serve to identify a racial divide and subgroups within a single race, this quote develops the central idea of racial identity.
Page 250	Integration vs. separation	Malcolm X claims, “‘No <i>sane</i> black man really believes that the white man ever will give the black man anything more than token integration’” (p. 250). This claim develops his argument for separation, and therefore develops the central idea of integration vs. separation, by arguing that the integration being offered by “‘the white man’” is not true integration, and is instead just being used to oppress the African-American community.
251	Systemic oppression	Malcolm X states that “‘the white man’” will “‘always control our lives, regulate our lives, and have the power to segregate’” until African Americans separate from “‘the white man’” (p. 251). This quote develops the idea of systemic oppression because the white society controls that of the African Americans. Malcolm X argues that until the African-American community completely breaks free from relations with “‘the white man,’” there will be no true freedom or equality.

12.1.1

Lesson 18

Introduction


In this lesson, students draft a response to one of the five Common Application prompts, focusing on how they sequence events to create a coherent whole. Students develop their narrative writing skills through practice with standard W.11-12.3.c and explore examples from *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* to consider how the author uses techniques to sequence events within the narrative to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome. Students then apply those techniques to their own narrative writing in response to one of the Common Application prompts. Students have the choice of expanding on their personal narratives from 12.1.1 Lesson 6 or choosing to respond to a new prompt. Student learning is assessed via students' draft body paragraphs.

For homework, students read the remainder of chapter 14 from *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 251–270, and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.c	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. c. Use a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.f	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. f. Adapt voice, awareness of audience, and use of language to accommodate a variety of cultural contexts.
W.11-12.5	Develop and strengthen writing as needed by planning, revising, editing, rewriting, or trying a new approach, focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific purpose and audience.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a response to the following prompt:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Draft a paragraph in response to the Common Application prompt, focusing on using a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution). <p> This assessment will be evaluated using the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric.</p>
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome. (See examples below.) <p>A shared passion for shoes creates an instant connection with people I meet, whether in a suburban shopping mall, or a trendy neon-lit Los Angeles sneaker store. I have learned that in some places, shoes are not a fashion statement or a status symbol. Rather, shoes enable a child to make an arduous trek to school and surmount a potential barrier to an education. When I first learned about the nonprofit organization, In Ian's Boots, I knew I found a way to marry my shoe passion with my mission to contribute positively to the world around me. Ian's Boots collects used shoes for people in need around the world and was founded by the grieving parents of a fellow soccer goalie killed in a sledding accident. Doctors found a biblical message in his boots urging "perseverance," and this story and message spoke to me. Last year, I hosted a drive and collected over 600 pairs of shoes, some of which have been distributed to Honduras, Ghana, and Haiti.</p> <p>I am eager to continue my life journey at a college where my passion, entrepreneurial spirit, and desire to effect social change can intersect and be ignited by a powerful educational experience. In business and in service to others, I can only imagine all the places my shoes will take me next.</p>

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- None.*

* Because this is not a close reading lesson, there is no specified vocabulary. However, in the process of returning to the text, students may uncover unfamiliar words. Teachers can guide students to make meaning of these words by following the protocols described in 1e of this document http://www.engageny.org/sites/default/files/resource/attachments/9-12_ela_prefatory_material.pdf.

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: W.11-12.3.c, W.11-12.3.f, W.11-12.5 Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapters 1–14 Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability Writing Instruction: Sequencing Events Drafting and Assessment Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5% 20% 20% 45% 10%

Materials

- Student copies of their personal narratives (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 12)
- Student copies of the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 2)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

5%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: W.11-12.3.c. In this lesson, students continue working with narrative techniques that sequence events to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome. They then apply these techniques to their own narrative writing. This work supports W.11-12.5, which asks students to develop and strengthen writing as needed by planning, revising, editing, rewriting, or trying a new approach, focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific purpose and audience.

- ▶ Students look at the agenda.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

20%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Write a list of ideas about how you would respond to the following college interview question. Remember to keep in mind your task, purpose, and audience as you consider your response. Provide reasons for your opinions. What activities do you find most rewarding?)

Instruct students to form pairs to ask and answer the college interview question. For this practice session, students should focus on giving examples to support statements they make about themselves.

- ▶ Students practice asking and answering the college interview question.

- ① Instruct students to keep their interview preparation notes in a writing journal or folder as a portfolio of their interview preparation throughout the module.

Instruct students to take out their responses to the second homework assignment. (Respond briefly in writing to the following prompt: How does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* use a variety of techniques to sequence events to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution)?)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about the responses they developed for homework.

- 💬 Student responses may include:

- In chapter 3, Malcolm X reflects on his younger self as he describes going to Boston for the first time: "If someone had hung a sign, 'HICK,' around my neck, I couldn't have looked much more obvious" (p. 35). This structural choice helps the reader see Malcolm X's later growth—as a narrator he is able to comment on his younger self.
- In chapter 9, when Malcolm walks up to Sophia at the bar, the author uses reflection and pacing to structure the events so that the reader can see what is going to happen. Malcolm explains why Sophia was there with her husband's friend after Malcolm sees her in the bar.

Malcolm comments on this reason: he states the man wanted “to visit ‘niggertown’ to be amused at ‘the coons’” (p. 150). Then the author skimps on the details and allows the reader to fill them in: “Then up I came. I know I called them ‘Baby’” (p. 151). Only the reactions of the women and the man are provided: “They were chalky-white, he was beet-red” (p. 151). Providing few details and only the white people’s reactions creates a tremendous sense of tension.

- The author includes reflection in chapter 10, showing how Malcolm learned the information about “the true knowledge” (p. 165). The narrative stops to allow Malcolm X to explain his “first reactions to all of this” (p. 166) to allow the reader to understand what was happening and how Malcolm grew from this experience.

① Remind students that the author uses the word “nigger” in the text. Students may use the author’s language when reading or citing textual evidence, but they should avoid using the word “nigger” in discussion when they are not quoting from the text as the term is a racial slur. Refer to the Module Overview for more information about how to address the word “nigger” in the classroom.

Instruct students to discuss in pairs the third homework assignment. (Reread your narrative response from 12.1.1 Lesson 12 and consider whether you would like to expand it into a longer composition or if you would like to try a different Common Application prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 18.)

Instruct students to review their statements of purpose from 12.1.1 Lesson 12 and consider which Common Application prompt best allows them to complete their purposes.

- ▶ Students discuss their decisions regarding the Common Application prompt.

Activity 3: Writing Instruction: Sequencing Events

20%

Remind students that, in crafting narrative essays, it is important to plan and control how the events are revealed. Explain that in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, the author deliberately structures events in different sections to draw the reader along. In some cases, the sequence and explanation of events creates a suspenseful tone, and in some cases, the sequence shows Malcolm X’s growth.

- ▶ Students listen.

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss in pairs before sharing out with the class.

What can an author do to build suspense?

- 💬 Student responses may include:

- Give hints about what is going to happen.
- Tell the reader what is going to happen, but not let a character know.
- Show something dangerous that will be happening to the character, but do not explain how the character will escape it.
- Describe choices the character makes and then present the character with a situation in which he or she has a really important and difficult choice.
- Intentionally manipulate pacing so that the reader feels tension (e.g., short sentences that create a fast pace to imitate the fast pace of an event).

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle, consider posing the following question:

What makes a story mysterious or suspenseful for a reader?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Not knowing what is going to happen
- Hints that something bad will happen
- Clues that something bad has happened but it is not clear what

Review pages 149–152 and identify how the author uses techniques to create suspense.

💬 Student responses may include:

- He uses foreshadowing to prepare the reader for Malcolm’s arrest: “It’s a law of the rackets that every criminal expects to get caught” (p. 149), but he does not describe exactly what will happen.
- He describes two close calls that lead up to Malcolm’s arrest at the jewelry shop. He describes meeting Sophia’s husband’s friend, who breaks into his house and confronts him (pp. 150–151), and also describes confronting Detective Turner, who has been trailing him (p. 149).
- He breaks up the scene with Detective Slack into short, simple sentences. That varied syntax grabs the reader’s attention and creates a tense, nervous mood so that the reader anticipates that something bad is about to happen: “I didn’t try to shoot him. And that saved my life” (p. 152).

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

① If necessary, explain to students that the author uses several techniques to develop suspense in the text:

- Foreshadowing, or giving hints about what is going to happen
- Establishing character traits and habits before presenting the character with a difficult choice that forces him/her to leave his/her comfort zone

- Using rhetorical devices, such as varied syntax, to manipulate pacing and powerful metaphors that increase tension
-

Explain to students that authors may use other narrative techniques to show growth in a character. Instruct student pairs to answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

How might an author sequence events to show growth in a character?

💬 Student responses may include:

- The author might mention what is going to happen, foreshadow events to come, and allow the character to comment on the events and describe how they helped him or her grow.
- The author might allow the character to reflect on the outcome of a situation, describing how the event changed the character.
- The author might slow down the description of the event, allowing the character to explain the decisions step by step.
- The author might present the event to allow the reader to draw his or her own conclusions about it, and then can have the narrator explain the events afterward.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle, consider posing the following question:

How do you know when a character has grown from his or her experiences?

💬 Student responses may include:

- The character thinks or acts differently.
- The character may say that the event “changed” him or her.
- The character may use figurative language to explain the growth, such as “my whole world shifted” or “I was a new person.”
- The character may reflect on his or her past actions or experiences and share differences or contrasts.

Review pages 165–171 and identify specific ways in which the author sequences events to demonstrate Malcolm X’s growth.

💬 Student responses may include:

- The author begins the chapter by describing how Malcolm gained the nickname “Satan” for being such a difficult inmate and for his “antireligious attitude” (p. 156) but is surprised and awed by “the true knowledge” he hears: “When my sister, Hilda, had finished telling me ... I don’t know if I was able to open my mouth and say good-bye” (p. 171). This scene highlights

Malcolm's transformation and growth because it shows that he has recognized his own past recklessness and that learning about Elijah Mohammad has awed him.

- The author includes statements of epiphany that show that Malcolm is trying to make sense of why the information is so meaningful to him: "The very enormity of my previous life's guilt prepared me to accept the truth" (p. 167). He describes his transformation: "I was going through the hardest thing ... to accept that which is already within you, and around you" (p. 167). These statements help show that Malcolm had an epiphany and is changed by what he heard that day.
- The author includes a significant last line: "Their silence left a vacuum into which any religious faker could step and mislead our people" (p. 171), which foreshadows further growth beyond the teachings presented here.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may refer to their Character Development Tools for support, as needed.

① If necessary, explain to students that the author uses several techniques to show character development in the text:

- Sequencing events deliberately so the reader can draw conclusions about how the character transformed
- Reflecting on an event explaining what the character was feeling at the time or how he or she changed
- Using statements of epiphany, including figurative language, in which the character explains the power of a moment and how he or she changed
- Foreshadowing events or changes in a character

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

① Explain to students that they should use a variety of techniques to sequence events in their own personal narratives to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome. However, the scope of their personal narratives may focus on a much shorter amount of time and the events may be less intense than Malcolm X's experiences.

Explain to students that in order to choose which structural techniques to use, it is helpful to keep in mind the task, purpose, and audience. Instruct students to take out their statements of purpose from 12.1.1 Lesson 2 and consider whether they would like to revise their statements of purpose based on the work they have done over the past several days. Then direct students to Think, Pair, Share about the following questions:

How does your task inform your choice of structural techniques?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Given that their task is to write a 650-word narrative essay, students must choose structural techniques that fit this tight constraint, such as beginning in the middle of action, or concise descriptions.
- Since the task is to be succinct (650 words or less), students are unable to experiment with long-form structural techniques, and should probably limit themselves to straightforward and simple pacing.

How does your purpose inform your choice of structural techniques?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Given that the purpose is to distinguish oneself from other applicants in the pool, students will refine the structure of their essays to be as clear, succinct, and expressive as possible, while also including as much sophisticated narrative technique as possible within the short constraint (e.g., minor foreshadowing, brief flashbacks, etc.).
- Students should sequence events such that they seem reflective about a time in their lives, and aware of their own transformation.
- Because they mean to stand out from the crowd, if possible, students should include a series of moments leading to a moment of epiphany, since epiphanies tend to be singular and unique, not common.

How does your audience impact your choice of structural techniques?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Students should sequence events such that the audience will have clear takeaways or understandings from their essays.
- Because the audience is apt to be well read and critical, the order in which students present the events in their narrative essays should make the conclusion seem not only logical, but inevitable.

Lead a brief, whole-class discussion of student responses. Remind students to be mindful of their task, purpose, and audience as they structure their texts.

Activity 4: Drafting and Assessment

45%

Inform students that they are to use structural techniques like those they analyzed in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* to continue drafting their responses to one of the Common Application prompts. Students may expand on the personal narrative they wrote in 12.1.1 Lesson 6 or choose a new prompt.

Instruct students to discuss with a peer the structural techniques they plan to use in their essays and the tone they would like to create.

💬 Student responses will vary.

- ① Consider reminding students to avoid using a negative tone (i.e., sarcastic, mocking, or judgmental), and to select an appropriate tone for their audience.

Instruct students to work individually to respond to the following prompt:

Draft a paragraph in response to the Common Application prompt, focusing on using a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).

- ① Consider drawing students' attention to their work with W.11-12.3.f as they adapt voice and language use to reflect an awareness of audience.

Remind students to use the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the writing prompt.

- ① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent writing.

💬 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

- ① Instruct students to keep their personal narratives in a writing journal or folder as a portfolio of their narrative writing throughout the module.

Activity 5: Closing

10%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate the remainder of chapter 14 in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 251–270 (from “Anyone who has listened to me will have to agree” to “Nothing that Mr. Muhammad ever said to me was more prophetic”). Instruct students to develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

- ① Students may also use the code WT to annotate for writing techniques that they identify in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and may use in their own writing.

- ▶ Students follow along.

- ① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they worked on during this lesson or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt. Remind students to focus on using a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).

Homework

Read and annotate the remainder of chapter 14 in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 251–270 (from “Anyone who has listened to me will have to agree” to “Nothing that Mr. Muhammad ever said to me was more prophetic”).

Develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

12.1.1

Lesson 19

Introduction

In this lesson, students analyze a section from chapter 14 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 268–270 (from “In 1961, our Nation flourished” to “Nothing that Mr. Muhammad ever said to me was more prophetic”). In this passage, the author recounts a period during which the Nation of Islam was doing quite well in spite of Mr. Muhammad’s deteriorating health. Students focus on the author’s structural choices in this passage. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: Analyze the effectiveness of the structure of pages 268–270.

For homework, students conduct a brief search into the March on Washington in preparation for the following lesson’s reading and discussion. Students also read chapter 15 and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.5	Analyze and evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.2.c	Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content. c. Use appropriate and varied transitions and syntax to link the major sections of the text, create cohesion, and clarify the relationships among complex ideas and concepts.
L.11-12.4.a	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of strategies. a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word's position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Analyze the effectiveness of the structure of pages 268–270.
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify one to two structural choices in pages 268–270 (e.g., the first five paragraphs of the passage summarize the success of the Nation of Islam in the year 1961; the final sentence of the passage, beginning with “Nothing that Mr. Muhammad” (p. 270) implies foreshadowing). Discuss whether the structure of the story on these pages effectively conveys information (e.g., the author writes, “our Nation flourished” (p. 268) and then provides an overview of how it flourished; the chapter ends with foreshadowing and therefore keeps the reader engaged in the text and its ideas).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> prophetic (adj.) – predictive; ominous aggravated (v.) – made worse or more severe
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> flourished (v.) – to be successful; prosper allot (v.) – to distribute or parcel out
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> climate (n.) – the usual weather conditions in a particular place or region

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.5, W.11-12.2.c, L.11-12.4.a Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 14, pages 268–270 Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability Reading and Discussion Quick Write Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 10% 15% 55% 15% 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
◀	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the lesson agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.5. In this lesson, students work in pairs to read and analyze pages 268–270 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “In 1961, our Nation flourished” to “Nothing that Mr. Muhammad ever said to me was more prophetic”). Instruct students to pay particular attention to the structure of this section of text.

- ▶ Students look at the agenda.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson.

Post or project standards W.11-12.2.c and W.11-12.3.c. Instruct students to focus on W.11-12.2.c and talk in pairs about how the standard applies to their writing. Lead a brief discussion about the standard. Ask students the following question:

How does standard W.11-12.2.c compare to standard W.11-12.3.c? How do the standards differ?

💬 Student responses should include:

- Standard W.11-12.2.c requires students to use appropriate transitions and sentence structures to link ideas, concepts, and sections of the essay.
- Similarly, standard W.11-12.3.c requires students to use appropriate structures to sequence events so they build upon one another to create a cohesive story.
- Both standards are about connecting sections of the essay.
- Standard W.11-12.2.c is about using linking words and sentence structures, whereas standard W.11-12.3.c is about connecting and organizing whole sections of the text.

① Students were introduced to W.11-12.3.c in the previous lesson.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson’s homework assignment. (Read and annotate the remainder of chapter 14 in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 251–270 (from “Anyone who has listened to me will have to agree” to “Nothing that Mr. Muhammad ever said to me was more prophetic”). Develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing the structure of these pages (RI.11-12.5).

💬 Student questions may include:

How does the author present the information about “Black agents ... sent to infiltrate” the Nation of Islam (p. 263)? What effect does this presentation have on the reader?

- The author writes, “Black agents were sent to infiltrate us” and that “there’s no way to know” who was a spy and who was not (p. 263). This suggestion creates confusion for the reader about whom and whom not to trust.

How does the first paragraph in this passage (“Anyone who has listened to me will” (p. 251)) connect to the last two paragraphs in this passage (“Nothing Mr. Muhammad ever said to me” (p. 270))?

- The first and last paragraphs of this passage are related because they both deal with Malcolm X’s public persona and his taking credit for fame. He begins by stating, “I never tried to take any credit for myself” (p. 251) and ends with Mr. Muhammad telling him that “usually people get jealous of public figures” (p. 270). These paragraphs show that although Malcolm X was humble, he had a powerful public presence.
- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief, whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

55%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text as they read and discuss.

- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 268–269 (from “In 1961, our Nation flourished” to “Akbar also has broken with his father”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout the lesson:

How is this part of the text structured (or organized)? What effect does the structure have on the ideas in the text?

To what effect does the author use the word “Nation” instead of “Nation of Islam” (p. 268)?

- When the author writes, “our Nation flourished”(p. 268) he is referring to the Nation of Islam, but by simply writing “our Nation,” the effect is that it sounds as though the Nation of Islam is establishing a nation separate from the United States. The effect is also that this phrasing recalls the Nation of Islam’s push for separation.

How did “[the] Nation flourish[.]” (p. 268)? What does the word *flourished* mean in this context?

- The author describes how significantly the Nation of Islam is growing. For example, “There was a sharp climb ... in the number of Muslim-owned small businesses” (p. 268) and “Mr. Muhammad’s eight children now were all deeply involved in key capacities in the Nation of Islam” (p. 269). Based on this information, *flourished* means to grow and do well.

① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of determining the meaning of words through context.

What ideas might prompt Malcolm X to argue for keeping “black money within the black communities” (p. 268)?

- It is important to Malcolm X to “keep black money within black communities” (p. 268) because the Nation of Islam is pushing for separation from “the white man” and independence from white society. As Malcolm X claims earlier in chapter 14, “We want *separation*” (p. 250).

***What does the author communicate about the Nation of Islam in the first five paragraphs of this passage (from “In 1961, our Nation flourished” (p. 268) to “Akbar also has broken with his father” (p. 269))?**

- The first five paragraphs of this passage serve to summarize the key events in the flourishing success of the Nation of Islam during the year 1961 and provide a brief glimpse into the future of the organization. Through this summary, the author demonstrates not only how the Nation of Islam flourished but he also foretells of other members leaving the Nation.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 269–270 (from “I believe that it was too strenuous” to “Nothing that Mr. Muhammad ever said to me was more prophetic”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definitions: *prophetic* means “predictive; ominous” and *aggravated* means “made worse or more severe.”

- ① Students may be familiar with some of these words. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing them to the class.
- ▶ Students write the definitions of *prophetic* and *aggravated* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definition: *climate* means “the usual weather conditions in a particular place or region.”
- ▶ Students write the definition of *climate* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

Why were people “disappointed to have to hear” Malcolm X speak (p. 270)?

- ☞ People were “disappointed to have to hear” Malcolm X “or other poor substitutes for Mr. Muhammad” because Mr. Muhammad is who they wanted to hear. Instead of hearing the real leader of the Nation of Islam, they had to listen to a substitute.

***What effect does Mr. Muhammad’s move to Phoenix have on the Nation of Islam (p. 270)?**

- ☞ Student responses may include:
 - Mr. Muhammad cannot “allot as much time as previously” to the daily upkeep of the Nation of Islam—“public speaking,” for instance, and “television requests” (p. 270). However, in spite of his drawing back, “the Nation was expanded both internally and externally” (p. 270).
 - Mr. Muhammad was becoming less of a public figure, but the growth of the organization was not impacted. Mr. Muhammad told Malcolm X “to make the decisions” for the organization (p. 270). Mr. Muhammad gives Malcolm X more power as a leader in the organization.

Consider the sentence that begins “Mr. Muhammad simply could no longer allot as much time as previously” (p. 270). What word can replace *allot* and maintain the original sentence’s meaning?

- ☞ The words “give” or “dedicate” could replace *allot* and the sentence would convey the same meaning. Therefore, *allot* must mean to give, divide, or dedicate.
- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of determining the meaning of words through context.

Why does Mr. Muhammad want Malcolm X to “become well known” (p. 270)? What does this phrase suggest about Mr. Muhammad’s character?

- ☞ Mr. Muhammad wants Malcolm X to “become well known” because, as he states, “if you are well known, it will make *me* better known” (p. 270). This phrase suggests that Mr. Muhammad

cares more about himself than about Malcolm X, and that he may be more concerned with personal fame than with the larger success of the Nation of Islam.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle to make inferences, consider asking the following scaffolding question.

Malcolm X accepts without question the following statement from Mr. Muhammad to him: “if you are well known, it will make *me* better known” (p. 70). What does Malcolm X’s acceptance of this statement imply about his relationship with Mr. Muhammad?

- 💬 The fact that Malcolm X does not question Mr. Muhammad when he states, “if you are well known, it will make *me* better known” (p. 270), implies that he is still completely subordinate to and unquestioning of Mr. Muhammad, even when Mr. Muhammad says something selfish.

***What does the last sentence of this chapter suggest about the next chapter in Malcolm X’s life, beginning with “Nothing that Mr. Muhammad ever said” (p. 270)?**

- 💬 The last sentence of this passage suggests that Mr. Muhammad is correct—that people will become “jealous” (p. 270) of Malcolm X—and that the reader will find out how this jealousy unfolds in the following chapters.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze the effectiveness of the structure of pages 268–270.

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson’s vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to focus on using appropriate and varied transitions and syntax to clarify the relationships among complex ideas and concepts. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

- ① **Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.**

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.

- 💬 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to conduct a brief search into the March on Washington. Instruct students to write down three details they learn about the March.

Additionally, instruct students to read and annotate pages 271–293 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

► Students follow along.

- ① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they have been working on or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt that better allows them to fulfill their statements of purpose. Remind students to focus on using a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).

Students may post their drafts to the class’s online writing community and be paired for peer review. Remind peer reviewers to consider how effectively their peer uses a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).

Consider establishing new peer review pairs, different from those established in 12.1.1 Lesson 14, so that students can benefit from a reviewer with fresh eyes. Consider maintaining the same peer review pairs through 12.1.1 Lesson 24 so that students can provide and receive consistent feedback from a peer familiar with their work in relation to W.11-12.3.c.

Homework

Conduct a brief search into the March on Washington, and write down three details you learn about the March.

Additionally, read and annotate pages 271–293 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

12.1.1

Lesson 20

Introduction

In this lesson, students analyze a section from chapter 15 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 284–287 (from “Not long ago, the black man in America” to “in the ‘long, hot summer’ of 1964, unprecedented racial crises”). In this passage, Malcolm X claims that the March on Washington did nothing but “lull Negroes for a while” (p. 287). Students consider how Malcolm X makes his points clear, convincing, and engaging while recounting the events leading up to and following the March on Washington. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: Analyze the author's exposition in this passage, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.

For homework, students read and annotate the first half of chapter 16, pages 294–309, and write 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.5	Analyze and evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.
Addressed Standard(s)	
L.11-12.4.a	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of strategies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word's position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.

- Analyze the author's exposition in this passage, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.

High Performance Response(s)

A High Performance Response should:

- Identify how the exposition in these pages of the March on Washington is structured (e.g., chronologically, beginning well before the March).
- Identify the main points in these pages (e.g., The March on Washington was a “farce” and only served to “lull Negroes for a while” (p. 287) instead of effecting meaningful change.).
- Identify how the author uses the structure to support his points (e.g., Malcolm X begins his discussion with a controversial opinion stated outright: “It was that ‘Farce on Washington,’ I call it” (p. 284). He then explains how the White House was nervous that “thousands of milling, angry blacks not only could completely disrupt Washington—but they could erupt in Washington” (p. 284), and so ““endorsed”” and ““welcomed”” (p. 285) the March publicly—and invited the ““big six”” African-American leaders (p. 285)—in order to reduce the risk of an angry protest. Therefore, “the white man” ended up controlling the March, even telling the marchers “*how* to arrive, *when*, *where* to arrive” (p. 286). Structuring the exposition of the events surrounding the March in this way—with an opinion, followed by a series of dramatic events that seem to support this opinion—helps to clarify the point that the March was not what people had originally anticipated, and served only to “lull Negroes for a while” (p. 287).).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)

- farce (n.) – a foolish show; a mockery; a ridiculous sham
- coalesced (v.) – grown together or into one body
- squabbling (v.) – engaging in a petty quarrel
- philanthropic (adj.) – of or engaged in altruistic concern for human welfare and advancement

Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)

- riptide (n.) – a tide that opposes another or other tides, causing a violent disturbance in the sea

Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- march (n.) – an organized walk of a large group of people who are protesting or supporting something

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.5, L.11-12.4.a Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 15, pages 284–287 Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability Reading and Discussion Quick Write Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 10% 20% 50% 15% 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
ⓘ	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.5. In this lesson, students read pages 284–287 and evaluate the structure of the author’s exposition and how the structural choices make points clear, convincing, and engaging.

- ▶ Students look at the agenda.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

20%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the first part of the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Conduct a brief search into the March on Washington, and write down three details you learn about the March.) Instruct students to form pairs and share what they learned about the March on Washington.

- ▶ Students get into pairs and discuss what they learned from the previous lesson's homework assignment.

① Students will have learned different things from different sources, but most students will have learned that it was a united march for civil rights in Washington, D.C., during which Dr. Martin Luther King, Jr. delivered his famous “I Have A Dream” speech.

Instruct students to take out their responses to the second part of the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read and annotate pages 271–293 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing the structure of these pages (RI.11-12.5).

- 💬 Student questions may include:

How does Malcolm X outline the strengths and weaknesses of “the white man’s ... intelligence” (p. 273)?

- 💬 Malcolm X states that “the white man ... has an extraordinary intelligence, an extraordinary cleverness” (p. 273), but that when it comes to “dealing with human beings, the white man’s working intelligence is hobbled” (p. 273). Malcolm X first makes the point that “the white man” is intellectually intelligent but qualifies this point by writing that ultimately, “the white man” cannot interact with others well.

How does Malcolm X use examples from history to make his point about the March on Washington?

- 💬 Just before discussing the March on Washington, Malcolm X states that “the Jew in Germany” experienced “history’s most tragic result of a mixed ... ethnic identity” (p. 283). Malcolm X claims that once Jews had “been increasingly intermarrying” and “thinking of

themselves as ‘Germans,’” Hitler began speaking of an “‘Aryan master race’” (p. 283). Malcolm X’s point is that if Jewish people had separated themselves and not intermarried, Hitler would not have risen to power. This argument against segregation, which, presented just before his discussion of the March on Washington, supports Malcolm X’s claims in that discussion.

- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief, whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

50%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text as they read and discuss.

- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 284–287 (from “Not long ago, the black man in America” to “in the ‘long, hot summer’ of 1964, unprecedented racial crises”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class. Instruct students to identify the author’s points and annotate portions of the text that seem relevant to the exposition (or development of those points). Instruct students to mark examples in which the author’s points are especially clear, convincing, and engaging.

Provide students with the following definitions: *farce* means “a foolish show; a mockery; a ridiculous sham,” *coalesced* means “grown together or into one body,” *squabbling* means “engaging in a petty quarrel,” and *philanthropic* means “of or engaged in altruistic concern for human welfare and advancement.”

- ① Students may be familiar with some of these words. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing them to the class.
 - ▶ Students write the definitions of *farce*, *coalesced*, *squabbling*, and *philanthropic* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definition: *march* means “an organized walk of a large group of people who are protesting or supporting something.”
 - ▶ Students write the definition of *march* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students in their reading throughout the lesson:

Explain what the author writes in this passage (his main points), and explain where his points are clear, powerful, and interesting.

***According to Malcolm X, how was the March on Washington first conceived (p. 284)? In the early days of “the March on Washington idea,” what did people think of it?**

Student responses should include:

- Originally, the idea was “the brainchild of ... A. Philip Randolph” and floated around for “twenty or more years” (p. 284).
- Malcolm X states that people thought about the March as a coming-together of African Americans to aggressively “[demand] ... some concrete civil rights action” (p. 284) or in other words, to make gains in their human rights.

What sparked the idea for such a march (p. 284)?

Malcolm X states that it was “national bitterness” that sparked the idea in “young Negroes” who were “sick and tired of the black man’s neck under the white man’s heel” (p. 284). Ultimately, it was anger in the African-American community about being oppressed by “the white man” that sparked the idea for such a march.

How did the White House react to the plans for a march (p. 285)? Based on how the author presents this evidence, what point does he make?

Student responses should include:

- The White House panicked and “speedily invited in the major civil rights Negro ‘leaders’” (p. 284). Then, in a “fanfare of international publicity,” the White House “‘approved’” and “‘welcomed’” the March on Washington (p. 285).
- By first presenting the White House as nervous, then explaining why the White House would be panicked, then portraying them as agreeable, the author makes the point that the only reason the White House seemed agreeable was because it was nervous about the possibility that an uncontrolled and leaderless March on Washington would lead to the chaos it originally sought to create.

What does Malcolm X claim was the purpose of the \$800,000 donation to the United Civil Rights Leadership council?

Malcolm X claims that the \$800,000 was incentive for the “‘big six’” to become heavily involved with the March and to let the donors advise them about what to do: “What was the string attached to the money? Advice” (p. 285).

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider explaining to students that the “big six” were some of the prominent leaders of the Civil Rights Movement (i.e., Martin Luther King, Jr., James Farmer, John Lewis, A. Philip Randolph, Roy Wilkins, and Whitney Young).

***How did the “big six” and the White House step into the plans for the March on Washington and make the March “like a movie” (p. 285)?**

- ☛ People heard that the “big six” were going to join the March: “They probably assumed that now those famous ‘leaders’ were endorsing and joining them” (p. 285). According to Malcolm X, the White House brought on the “big six” to ensure that “all went well” (p. 285). The March was “like a movie” because the White House was like a movie director and the “big six” were like actors, doing what the director told them.

What effect does comparing the March on Washington to a movie have on the exposition (p. 285)?

- ☛ With the statement, “It was like a movie” (p. 285), the author draws the reader into the drama and makes his points more engaging. By suggesting that the events unfolded scene-by-scene like a movie, the author also instills in the reader a sense that everything was staged or pre-planned.

What impact do the metaphors “gentle flood” and “riptide” have on the author’s points (p. 286)?

- ☛ These metaphors highlight that instead of being a forceful event (i.e., a “riptide”), the March was basically inconsequential (i.e., “a gentle flood”). By comparing the March to a flood, the author is implying that Washington is not used to the presence of demands for civil rights, just as dry land is not used to water; these metaphors draw the reader in and help to make the author’s points clearer.

What does *riptide* mean in this context (p. 286)?

- ☛ Because “angry riptide” is being contrasted with “the gentle flood,” *riptide* probably means a large, fast, and hazardous flow of water.

- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of determining the meaning of words through context.

How does Malcolm X use the image of the crowd singing “We Shall Overcome” to support his point about the March (p. 286)?

- ☛ Malcolm X uses the image of African Americans being told “*how to arrive, when, where to arrive, where to assemble*” (p. 286) and singing “We Shall Overcome” together with white people. His point is that this image is absurd: “Who ever heard of angry revolutionists all harmonizing ‘We Shall Overcome ... Suum Day ...’ while tripping and swaying along arm-in-arm with the very

people they were supposed to be angrily revolting against?” (p. 286). Malcolm X uses this image to show how the March had been robbed of its power by figures of authority. The contrast between the sweet image of a singing crowd and angry revolutionists is powerful and makes his claim more convincing.

***According to Malcolm X, how did the March on Washington affect congressional opposition to civil rights?**

- Malcolm X claims that “in a subsequent poll, not one Congressman or Senator with a previous record of opposition to civil rights said he had changed his views” (p. 287). The March, then, had no observable effect on congressional opposition to civil rights.

What does Malcolm X claim was the ultimate effect of the March on Washington on civil rights?

- Malcolm X claims that all the March on Washington did was “lull Negroes for a while” until they realized that “they had been smoothly hoaxed again by the white man” (p. 287). People felt like there had been a giant push for change, but in fact they had been tricked into not being angry for a while.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze the author's exposition in this passage, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson’s vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.

- See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate pages 294–309 in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “In nineteen-sixty one, Mr. Muhammad’s condition” to “if not actually initiated—by only one man”). Instruct students to also develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (RI.11–12.6). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

► Students follow along.

- ① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they have been working on or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt that better allows them to fulfill their statements of purpose. Remind students to focus on using a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).

Students may post their drafts to the class’s online writing community and be paired for peer review. Remind peer reviewers to consider how effectively their peer uses a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).

Consider maintaining the same peer review pairs through 12.1.1 Lesson 24 so that students can provide and receive consistent feedback from a peer familiar with their work in relation to W.11–12.3.c.

Homework

Read and annotate pages 294–309 in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “In nineteen-sixty one, Mr. Muhammad’s condition” to “if not actually initiated—by only one man”). Develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (RI.11.12.6). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

12.1.1

Lesson 21

Introduction

In this lesson, students read and analyze a section from chapter 16 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 305–309 (from “I remembered that when an epidemic is about to hit” to “if not actually initiated—by only one man”), in which Malcolm X details his struggles within the Nation of Islam after the paternity scandals of Elijah Muhammad. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty in chapter 16.

For homework, students continue to read and annotate chapter 16 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. Students also develop discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.6	Determine an author’s point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.9.b	<p>Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research.</p> <p>b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i>, presidential addresses]”).</p>
L.11-12.4.a	<p>Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i>, choosing flexibly from a range of strategies.</p> <p>a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word’s position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.</p>

L.11-12.5.a	<p>Demonstrate understanding of figurative language, word relationships, and nuances in word meanings.</p> <p>a. Interpret figures of speech (e.g., hyperbole, paradox) in context and analyze their role in the text.</p>
-------------	--

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty in chapter 16.
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify examples of stylistic choices (e.g., varied syntax, figurative language, etc.). Identify examples of content choices (e.g., the event of Malcolm X's visit with Elijah Muhammad in Arizona). Analyze how style contributes to the power or beauty of the text (e.g., Malcolm X uses the figurative language of the "epidemic" (p. 305) to engage the reader with Malcolm X's struggle with the Nation of Islam by making it seem dangerous and life threatening. Malcolm X states that he "never dreamed" (p. 306) that his officials would turn on him by making it appear that Malcolm X had "started" the rumors about Elijah Muhammad. In addition, Malcolm X states that "many times since then" he has looked back on the events surrounding his separation from the Nation of Islam (p. 307). He states that it "makes me feel weary to think of it all now" (p. 308). This language makes this section quite powerful as the reader sees the direct impact of these events on Malcolm X's future life as he struggles to define himself as separate from the Nation of Islam.). Analyze how content contributes to the power or beauty of the text (e.g., The way the author reveals information about Malcolm X's struggles with the Nation of Islam piece by piece, as if uncovering a mystery, contributes to the tension and suspense of the story by allowing the reader to feel like an active participant in uncovering the dangerous plot. The reader continues to piece together this plot as Malcolm X reveals his suspicion that he is "being set up" and engages in "death-talk" (p. 309). By revealing this suspicion and hinting at Malcolm X's death, the author keeps the reader engaged in figuring out what might happen to Malcolm X, which increases the power and tension of this section.).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> antiquity (n.) – ancient times; former ages personages (n.) – people of distinction or importance amiability (adj.) – having or showing pleasant, good-natured personal qualities
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> epidemic (n.) – a rapid spread or increase in the occurrence of something inoculated (v.) – implanted (a disease agent) in a person, animal, or plant to produce a disease for study or to stimulate disease resistance
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> hypocritical (adj.) – pretending to believe what one does not believe sow (v.) – to cause (fear, doubt, etc.) to affect many people reap (v.) – to get (something, such as a reward) as a result of something that you have done

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.6, W.11-12.9.b, L.11-12.4.a, L.11-12.5.a Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 16, pages 305–309 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda 2. Homework Accountability 3. Reading and Discussion 4. Quick Write 5. Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 5% 2. 15% 3. 60% 4. 15% 5. 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the Style and Content Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 5) (optional)—students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Character Development Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 3) (optional) —students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

5%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.6. In this lesson, students read and discuss pages 305–309 of chapter 16 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* focusing on the author’s use of style and content.

- Students look at the agenda.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson’s homework assignment. (Read and annotate pages 294–309 in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “In nineteen-sixty one, Mr. Muhammad’s condition” to “if not actually initiated—by only one man”). Develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (RI.11.12.6). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about the questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing how style and content contribute to the power and beauty of the text (RI.11-12.6).

🗣 Student questions may include:

How does the author establish Malcolm X's opinion of Elijah Muhammad in this chapter?

🗣 Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X states that "[T]he Nation of Islam was Mr. Muhammad" (p. 294), suggesting that Mr. Muhammad is so central to the organization that he is in fact the organization.
- Malcolm X calls Mr. Muhammad "the beacon" and states, "without his light, we would all be in darkness" (p. 295). A "beacon" is a powerful light that guides those in darkness, so with this image Malcolm X is suggesting that Mr. Muhammad is a powerful guide to those in need of direction.
- Malcolm X describes Elijah Muhammad as "the man who had trained me, who had treated me as if I were his own flesh and blood" (p. 305). The phrase "flesh and blood" indicates that Malcolm X feels like he is part of Mr. Muhammad's family.
- Malcolm X describes Mr. Muhammad as "the man who had given me wings—to go places, to do things I otherwise never would have dreamed of" (p. 305). Because Malcolm X's "wings" have taken him all around the country as a powerful minister in the Nation of Islam, this example shows that Malcolm X gives Mr. Muhammad the credit for the public figure he has become.

🗣 Student responses should include:

- Through these examples of figurative language, the author vividly establishes Elijah Muhammad as a very important person in Malcolm X's life and a person who Malcolm X views as vital to the Nation of Islam.

What does Elijah Muhammad imply with the statement, "I'm David" (p. 305)?

🗣 He compares himself to the biblical figures that Malcolm X researched, implying that he was fated to have his affairs. He tells Malcolm X, "'that's what all of this is—prophecy'" (p. 305) and explains, "'I have to fulfill all of those things'" (p. 305). This statement implies not only were his acts beyond his control, but that he is an important religious figure, comparable to Noah or David.

① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

60%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss.

- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 305–307 (from “I remembered that when an epidemic is about to hit” to “true color of great men of antiquity”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Instruct students to continue to annotate for examples of stylistic or content choices. Remind students that annotating helps them to keep track of evidence they use later in lesson assessments that focus on the how style and content contribute to power and beauty in the text.

- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard W.11-12.9.b through the process of drawing evidence from the text to support reflection and analysis.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use the Style and Content Tool to record stylistic or content choices they identify and discuss.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students throughout the lesson:

How does the author use certain words to make the text more powerful or beautiful? What effect does this language have on pages 305–307?

Provide students with the following definition: *antiquity* means “ancient times; former ages.”

- ① Students may be familiar with this word. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing it to the class.
 - ▶ Students write the definition of *antiquity* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

What is the “epidemic” for which Malcolm X prepares (p. 305)? What words and phrases suggest the meaning of the word *epidemic* in this context?

- 💬 Student responses should include:
 - The “epidemic” refers to the spread of news about the “fulfillment of prophecy” (p. 306), meaning the numerous affairs that Elijah Muhammad had with his secretaries.
 - Malcolm X mentions that people get “inoculated against exposure” to an epidemic and that they are treated with “the same germs” that cause it and “this prepares them to resist the oncoming virus” (p. 305). The context makes it seem like an *epidemic* is a large outbreak of a sickness or disease.

What does Malcolm X do to “inoculate[]” the temple (p. 305)? What does the word *inoculated* mean in this context?

💬 Student responses should include:

- He tells “six other East Coast Muslim officials” (p. 305) about the details of Elijah Muhammad’s actions to ensure they are not “caught by surprise” (p. 305) if they need to teach the “fulfillment of prophecy” (p. 306) and explain Elijah Muhammad’s actions.
- Malcolm X explains that it is something that is done to help prevent the spread of a disease or sickness. Malcolm X states that it uses “the same germs that are anticipated” (p. 305), so *inoculated* appears to be something done to prevent the sickness.

① Consider drawing students’ attention to their work with L.11-12.4.a as they use context clues to determine the meaning of a word.

***What does Malcolm X’s use of figurative language suggest about his feelings towards Elijah Muhammad’s actions?**

- 💬 Malcolm X is worried about the fallout of the actions of Elijah Muhammad and the danger that this fallout might pose to the Nation of Islam. Malcolm X frames the danger that fellow Muslims will discover Elijah Muhammad’s infidelities as an “epidemic” against which everyone must be “inoculated” to prevent the spread of “the oncoming virus” (p. 305).

What does Malcolm X mean when he says that Chicago Muslim officials might “make it appear that I was throwing gasoline on the fire instead of water” (p. 306)?

- 💬 Malcolm X implies that the Chicago officials might give the appearance that Malcolm X was spreading word about the infidelities in order to “shift their focus off the epidemic” (p. 306) and onto Malcolm X.

How does the figurative language describing Elijah Muhammad’s actions affect the power of this section?

- 💬 The metaphor of the “epidemic” engages the reader by setting up a grim scenario for the future in which many people are “infected” by the knowledge of Elijah Muhammad’s actions. The use of the “epidemic” (p. 305) metaphor contributes to the power of the section by making Malcolm X’s situation seem dangerous and frantic as he races to “inoculate[]” (p. 305) those close to him. Relating the spread of Elijah Muhammad’s actions to the spread of a deadly virus helps to engage the reader and connect them to a powerful sense of urgency.

① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.5.a through the process of using context to interpret the meaning and role of figurative language in the text.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Character Development Tools to record Malcolm X's development that they identify and discuss.
-

Instruct students to read pages 307–309 (from “I’ve said that I expected headlines momentarily” to “true color of great men of antiquity”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Remind students to continue to annotate for rhetorical devices (RD).

- ① If necessary to aid student comprehension explain to students that the statement “who got assassinated in Dallas, Texas, on November 22, 1963” (p. 307) is a reference to the assassination of President John F. Kennedy.

Provide students with the following definitions: *personages* means “people of distinction or importance” and *amiability* means “having or showing pleasant, good-natured personal qualities.”

- ① Students may be familiar with these words. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing them to the group.

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *personages* and *amiability* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *hypocritical* means “pretending to believe what one does not believe,” *sow* means “to cause (fear, doubt, etc.) to affect many people,” and *reap* means “to get (something, such as a reward) as a result of something that you have done.”

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *hypocritical*, *sow*, and *reap* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

***What is the topic of Malcolm X’s speech on page 307? How might this topic be controversial at this time?**

- Malcolm X explains the title was ““God’s Judgment of White America”” and the theme was ““as you sow, so shall you reap”” (p. 307). The subject is the judgment of white America for the “hate” it has caused. Because the president had just been assassinated and was the only topic of news, Malcolm X’s speech topic might suggest that the president deserved what he got.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider explaining what is meant by the proverb “as you sow, so shall you reap.” Translate the phrase to “you harvest what you plant.” Ask students to consider what

this metaphor could mean in the context of Malcolm X's speech. If necessary, explain that the proverb means that everything that happens is a result of one's own actions.

What tone does Malcolm X create with the statement, "Many times since then, I've looked at the speech notes I used that day" (p. 307)?

- By implying that he has continued to think for many years about his speech, Malcolm's statement suggests something memorable is about to happen within an already tense national climate, which creates a sense of uncertainty or foreboding.

How does the detail that the speech "had been prepared at least a week before the assassination" (p. 307) impact the reader's understanding of the speech and the public's response?

- This detail establishes that the speech was not written in response to the assassination. Malcolm X's theme that the "hypocritical American white man" (p. 307) was getting what he deserved was not directly related to the president's death. The fact that Malcolm X clarifies this point suggests that the public might have thought the speech was written in response to the assassination.

Why is Malcolm X "weary to think of it all now" (p. 308)?

- When Malcolm X states that he is "weary to think of it all now," he is implying that he is tired of thinking about the events that led up to his silencing. The word "weary" also conveys impatience or dissatisfaction, which Malcolm X demonstrates in his claim that the public condemnation of him was unfair. He argues that other people all over the world said "that America's climate of hate had been responsible for the President's death" (p. 308). However, Malcolm X's words had negative consequences for him and the Nation of Islam because "when Malcolm X said the same thing, it was ominous" (p. 308).

What about Malcolm X's speech could be considered "ominous" (p. 308)?

- Malcolm X was giving a speech about "'God's Judgment of White America'" (p. 307) right after the assassination of the president. The speech implies that violence is the result of white America's actions and it coincides with the murder of a man whom the country "'loved'" (p. 308). As Malcolm X and the members of the Nation of Islam were considered by many to be dangerous, an aggressive speech from Malcolm X on the topic of "'God's Judgment of White America'" would have seemed ominous.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If necessary, consider reminding students of their work with the word *ominous* in 12.1.1 Lesson 17.

What is the outcome of Malcolm X's meeting with Elijah Muhammad (p. 308)? What is the reason for this outcome?

- Malcolm X is silenced for "ninety days" (p. 308) as a result of telling the press he thought President Kennedy's murder was "a case of 'the chickens coming home to roost'" (p. 307). Elijah Muhammad explains that the silencing is so that "'Muslims everywhere can be disassociated from the blunder'" of Malcolm X's statement (p. 308). Elijah Muhammad suggests that Malcolm X is being punished so that the American public will not be upset with the Nation of Islam.

What does Malcolm X mean by the statement "my 'silencing' was even more thorough than I had thought" (p. 309)?

- Malcolm X means that his silencing goes beyond just his interactions with the press. He is "forbidden to talk with the press," but he is also "not even to teach" (p. 309) within his own mosque.

What makes Malcolm X "suspicious" about his treatment (p. 309)? Why does Malcolm X think he is being "set up" (p. 309)?

- Malcolm X is suspicious because of the deliberate misinformation being spread about him. The Nation released a statement that implied that Malcolm X is not submitting to the judgment of Elijah Muhammad, even though he said that he will "submit, one hundred per cent" (p. 308). The Nation of Islam states that he will be reinstated "*if he submits*" (p. 309), which the author italicizes to emphasize his suspicions and to show that Malcolm X believes that he is being set up and painted in a negative light.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If necessary to aid student comprehension consider asking students the following questions:

What does Malcolm X mean by the statement "I hadn't hustled in the streets for years for nothing" (p. 309)?

- Malcolm X is suggesting that something underhanded is happening. Because Malcolm X learned how to con and fool others as a criminal and hustler he is able to see when others are trying to trick him. He knows that he is being set up for something.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Character Development Tools to record Malcolm X's development that they identify and discuss.

How does Malcolm X's choice not to name the "one man" (p. 309) contribute to the power of the section?

- Referring to Elijah Muhammad only as “one man” heightens the power of the section by building a sense of mystery within the text. Right after Malcolm X reveals that his assistant is encouraging Mosque Seven brothers to “kill him yourself” (p. 309), he explains that he “instantly” knows who the “one man” (p. 309) is but withholds his name. The reader must then fill in the blanks and come to the conclusion of Elijah Muhammad’s identity much like Malcolm X did. Involving the reader makes the section more powerful by relating the reader’s reaction to Malcolm X’s.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle to answer this question, pose the following question to support their understanding.

Who is the “one man” who could have started any “death talk” (p. 309)?

- Malcolm X implies that Elijah Muhammad is the “one man” (p. 309). He states that “any official in the Nation of Islam” (p. 309) would have known that only “one man” could have approved “death-talk” about Malcolm X (p. 309). Elijah Muhammad knows that Malcolm X “completely submitted” (p. 309), so he must be the person who is spreading the misinformation.

***How does the author increase the tension of Malcolm X’s situation on pages 308 and 309?**

- Student responses may include:
 - The author uses varied syntax to make the section seem tense and exciting. Short sentences like “*Malcolm X Silenced!* It was headlines” (p. 309) help to communicate the tension that Malcolm X is feeling.
 - The author uses phrases like “made me suspicious” and “[b]ut, deliberately” (p. 309) in reference to the actions of the Nation of Islam after Malcolm X’s silencing. This language increases the tension because it is nonspecific and creates mystery and concern for who is trying to hurt or even kill Malcolm X.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use the Style and Content Tool to record stylistic or content choices they identify and discuss.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty in chapter 16.

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson's vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.
- 🗣 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate pages 309–324 in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “My head felt like it was bleeding inside” to “Ella said, ‘How much do you need?’”). Instruct students to develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

- ▶ Students follow along.

① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they have been working on or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt. Remind students to focus on a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).

Students may post their drafts to the class's online writing community and be paired for peer review. Remind peer reviewers to consider how effectively their peer uses a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).

Consider maintaining the same peer review pairs through 12.1.1 Lesson 24 so that students can provide and receive consistent feedback from a peer familiar with their work in relation to W.11-12.3.c.

Homework

Read and annotate pages 309–324 in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “My head felt like it was bleeding inside” to “Ella said, ‘How much do you need?’”). Develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on

how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

Model Style and Content Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Use this tool to track the stylistic or content choices you encounter in the text, as well as examples and explanations of these choices. Be sure to note the rhetorical effect of each choice on the text.

RI.11-12.6: Determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

Rhetoric: the specific techniques that writers or speakers use to create meaning in a text, enhance a text or a lecture, and often, persuade readers or listeners

Style: how the author expresses content, which frequently includes the use of figurative language or rhetorical devices

Content: what the author writes, including events, ideas, and details the author chooses to include

Point of View: an author's opinion, attitude, or judgment

Purpose: an author's reason for writing

Example of style (figurative language or rhetorical device) or content (events, ideas, details) (with page reference)	Rhetorical Effect (power, beauty, point of view, purpose)
Malcolm X uses figurative language to describe the gifts that Elijah Muhammad has given him. He states that Mr. Muhammad had "given him wings" (p. 305).	This figurative language implies that Malcolm X feels a significant amount of gratitude towards Elijah Muhammad. Mr. Muhammad's "wings" allow Malcolm X to assist Mr. Muhammad.
Malcolm X uses metaphor to frame the knowledge of Elijah Muhammad's behavior as an "epidemic" in which he needs to have everyone "inoculated" to prevent the spread of "the oncoming virus" (p. 305).	The use of the "epidemic" as a metaphor communicates the idea that knowledge of Elijah Muhammad's actions would contaminate and sicken people who were exposed to it.
Malcolm X uses figurative language to describe the Chicago ministers of the Nation of Islam accusing him, making "it appear that [Malcolm X] was throwing gasoline on the fire instead of water" (p. 306).	This image uses the dangerous idea of pouring gasoline on a flame to illustrate how the Chicago officials might make it look like he was making things worse rather than better. They might give the appearance that Malcolm X was spreading word about the infidelities of Elijah Muhammad in

	order to “shift their focus off the epidemic” (p. 306) and onto Malcolm X.
The author uses varied syntax such as “I was numb” (p. 308) and “ <i>“Malcolm X Silenced!”</i> It was headlines” (p. 309) to describe the events of Malcolm X’s “silencing.”	The author uses short sentences and transitional words to make the section seem tense and exciting. The abrupt appearance of shorter sentences in this section “ <i>“Malcolm X Silenced!”</i> It was headlines” (p. 309) help to communicate the tension that Malcolm X is feeling in the face of his trouble with the Nation of Islam.

Model Character Development Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Analyze the character development that you encounter in the text. Identify the events that are connected to this development. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Character Development	Event	Evidence
Malcolm X shows a deep dedication to the Nation of Islam.	Malcolm X works tirelessly to support Elijah Muhammad and the Nation of Islam.	<p>“Only by being two people could I have worked harder in the service of the Nation of Islam.” (p. 295)</p> <p>“I had helped bring about the progress and national impact such that none could call us liars when we called Mr. Muhammad the most powerful black man in America.” (p. 295)</p>
Malcolm X puts Elijah Muhammad before him in all things.	Malcolm X always credits Mr. Muhammad in interviews and TV reports.	<p>“I rarely spoke to a white writer, or a black writer either, whom I didn’t urge to visit Mr. Muhammad in person” (p. 297)</p> <p>“Anything creditable that I do is due to Mr. Elijah Muhammad.” (p. 298)</p>
Malcolm X grows to be sensitive about his critics within the Nation of Islam.	Malcolm X is often in the press and has staged very successful events and rallies. Malcolm X’s public presence creates jealousy within the Nation of Islam.	<p>“It made other Muslim officials jealous because my picture was often in the daily press.” (p. 299)</p> <p>“Slighting remarks were being made about ‘Malcolm’s ministers’.” (p. 299)</p>
Malcolm X is tormented by the idea that Elijah Muhammad could have done something morally questionable.	Malcolm X initially refuses to believe that Elijah Muhammad could have committed adultery.	<p>“For me to even consider believing anything as insane-sounding as any slightest implications of any immoral behavior of Mr. Muhammad—why, the very idea made me shake with fear.” (p. 301)</p>

12.1.1

Lesson 22

Introduction

In this lesson, students read and analyze a section from chapter 16 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 309–315 (from “My head felt like it was bleeding” to “‘it just didn’t work,’ Patterson told the press”) in which Malcolm X recounts his experiences with Cassius Clay and the uncertainty he felt as a result of his conflict with the Nation of Islam. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: Analyze the effectiveness of the structure in chapter 16. How does the structure make the author’s points clear, convincing, and engaging?

For homework, students continue to read and annotate chapter 17 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. Students also develop discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.5	Analyze and evaluate the effectiveness of the structure an author uses in his or her exposition or argument, including whether the structure makes points clear, convincing, and engaging.
Addressed Standard(s)	
L.11-12.4.a	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of strategies. a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word’s position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.

- Analyze the effectiveness of the structure in chapter 16. How does the structure make the author's points clear, convincing, and engaging?

High Performance Response(s)

A High Performance Response should:

- Identify key aspects of the structure in chapter 16 (e.g., turning point, reflection, etc.).
- Analyze how this structure makes the author's points clear, convincing, and engaging (e.g., In this section the author demonstrates how the boxing match between Cassius Clay and Sonny Liston was a pivotal event in Malcolm X's life. Malcolm X is trying to recover his sense of self after the revelations of Elijah Muhammad's behavior, facts that he said "began to break [his] faith" (p. 312). Malcolm X reflects on the trip to Miami for Cassius Clay's fight as a time away that allows him to "muster the nerve, and the strength, to start facing facts" (p. 313) about his struggles with the Nation of Islam. In a time in which Malcolm X is unsure of his place in the world he sees his time with Cassius Clay as "Allah's intent for me to help Cassius prove Islam's superiority" (p. 313). Because Muslim Cassius Clay beats his Christian opponent, Sonny Liston, the fight represents a renewal of Malcolm X's faith: in the midst of his struggle with the Nation of Islam he is able to see a young African-American Muslim triumph. Malcolm X is so inspired by the fight, he vows to "build an organization that could help cure the black man in North America of the sickness which has kept him under the white man's heel" (p. 319). Malcolm X's reflections throughout this scene not only demonstrate that this time is a turning point in Malcolm X's life, but they also engage the reader to empathize with Malcolm X by revealing his inner thoughts and struggles.).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)

- contagious (adj.) – capable of being transmitted by bodily contact with an infected person
- vaunted (adj.) – praised boastfully or excessively
- commiserate (v.) – to feel or express sorrow or sympathy for; empathize with; pity
- furor (n.) – a general outburst of enthusiasm, excitement, controversy, or the like

Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)

- erected (v.) – raised or directed upward

Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- preliminaries (n.) – games that are played before the main part of a competition
- tuxedo (n.) – a formal suit for a man

- divorce (n.) – a complete separation between two things

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.5, L.11-12.4.a Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 16, pages 309–315 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda 2. Homework Accountability 3. Reading and Discussion 4. Quick Write 5. Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 5% 2. 15% 3. 60% 4. 15% 5. 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the Character Development Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 3) (optional)—students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
▶	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

5%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.5. In this lesson, students read and discuss the second half of chapter 16 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* from pages 309–315 (from “My head felt like it was bleeding” to “‘it just didn’t work,’ Patterson told the press.” Instruct students to pay close attention to the way in which the author structures this section of text.

- ▶ Students look at the agenda.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson’s homework assignment. (Read and annotate pages 309–324 in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “My head felt like it was bleeding inside” to “‘How much do you need?’”). Develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how the structure of the text makes points clear, convincing, and engaging (RI.11-12.5). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs about the questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing how the structure makes points clear, convincing, or engaging.

- 💬 Student questions may include:

How does the example of the “Harlem Hustler” make Malcolm X’s point more convincing?

- 💬 Malcolm X states that “as a ‘leader’” (p. 317) he can speak to all ranges of people, from the highly educated to the “ghetto hustler” (p. 317). Malcolm X believes that he is uniquely qualified because of his experience in all ranges of African-American life.

How does the structure of the second half of this chapter refine Malcolm X’s goals?

- 💬 The section develops Malcolm X’s ability as a leader and community member. Malcolm X starts to identify himself as an independent activist for African-American rights rather than as an arm of the Nation of Islam. He states, “every morning, every legislator should receive a communication about what the black man in America expects and wants and needs” (pp. 321–322), which indicates his personal political interest beyond his dedication to Islam.

- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

60%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate as they read and discuss the text.

- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students who have been using the Character Development Tool may benefit from reviewing the tool to trace Malcolm X's development over the course of the text up to this point.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students throughout the lesson:

What is the author's point in this section? How does the order in which events are presented help make that point?

Provide students with the following definitions: *contagious* means "capable of being transmitted by bodily contact with an infected person," *vaunted* means "praised boastfully or excessively," and *commiserate* means "to feel or express sorrow or sympathy for; empathize with; pity."

- ① Students may be familiar with some of these words. Consider asking students to volunteer definitions before providing them to the group.
 - ▶ Students write the definitions of *contagious*, *vaunted*, and *commiserate* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 309–313 (from "My head felt like it was bleeding" to "newspaper didn't consider his fight worth covering") and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

What is Malcolm X's state of mind in Miami?

- ☞ He is in a state of "emotional shock" (p. 311). He still interacts with the people in Miami, but it is clear that he is upset. He reflects that he "felt as though something in *nature* had failed" (p. 311) and he was "only mouthing words that really meant nothing to him" (p. 311).

Why can Malcolm X "conceive death" but not "betrayal" (p. 312)?

- ☞ Malcolm X states that he has been willing to die for Elijah Muhammad "every second" (p. 312) of the twelve years he has been with the Nation of Islam. Malcolm X's faith in Elijah Muhammad is so strong he states that he is willing to "have gone to the electric chair" (p. 312) in Elijah Muhammad's place if it had been necessary. Because Malcolm X thinks so highly of Elijah

Muhammad and is willing to die for him if necessary, he has trouble accepting the “strategy and plotting” (p. 311) to remove him from the Nation of Islam that now faces him.

What is the “major blow” (p. 312)? How does this “blow” affect Malcolm X?

- ☞ The “major blow” is the realization that Elijah Muhammad was a weak man as he had tried “to cover up what he had done” (p. 312). This realization starts to shake the faith of Malcolm X, who had thought so highly of Elijah Muhammad. Malcolm X states, “I became able finally to muster the nerve, and the strength, to start facing the facts, to think for myself” (p. 313).

What point does the author make about Malcolm X’s state of mind at this time in his life?

- ☞ The author shows Malcolm X at a low point in his life. He states, “I walked, I talked, I functioned” (p. 311) but his “mind was filled with a parade of a thousand and one different scenes” (p. 311) of his life in the Nation of Islam. Even on this vacation, when he is supposed to be resting, his mind is overwhelmed by his troubled relationship with the Nation of Islam.

Why is Malcolm X grateful to Cassius Clay for inviting him to Miami “at just this time” (p. 309)?

- ☞ After being silenced by Elijah Muhammad, Malcolm X is “under great strain” (p. 309) and needs to rest. Being invited to Miami by Cassius Clay is a relief for Malcolm X. He admits that he does not “know what [he] might have done” (p. 311) if he had stayed in New York during that period, which emphasizes Malcolm X’s gratefulness to Cassius Clay.

What does Malcolm X think of Cassius Clay?

- ☞ Malcolm X likes Cassius Clay, describing him as a “friendly, clean-cut, down to earth youngster” (p. 310) who is “alert ... even in little details” and “receptive to advice” (p.310).

***How does the relationship between Malcolm X and Cassius Clay compare to the relationship between Malcolm X and Elijah Muhammad?**

- ☞ They are both father-son types of relationships. Malcolm X states that he has “been ready to lay down [his] life” (p. 312) for Elijah Muhammad, he remembers “scenes with Mr. Muhammad’s family” (p. 311), which emphasizes how much Malcolm X looks up to and admires Elijah Muhammad. The language that Malcolm X uses to describe Cassius Clay is very paternal: he calls him a “down-to-earth youngster” (p. 310) and later calls him “the boyish king” (p. 314). This description along with the advice that Malcolm X gives Cassius Clay about the “foxes” (p. 310) makes their relationship similar to a father and son.

***How does the structure of this first section engage the reader in Malcolm X’s situation?**

- The section begins with Malcolm X stating that he feels like his “brain was damaged” (p. 309) by his ongoing problems with the Nation of Islam. Malcolm X and his family travel to stay with Cassius Clay, a trip that Malcolm X calls a “vacation” (p. 311). However Malcolm is still preoccupied with his own thoughts regarding Elijah Muhammad’s betrayal and, even in his casual conversations during this vacation, he admits that he was “only mouthing words that meant nothing to me” (p. 311). By revealing Malcolm X’s state of mind during this trip and illustrating the contrast between Malcolm X’s inner thoughts and outward actions, the author engages the reader to empathize with Malcolm X’s internal struggles.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Character Development Tools to record Malcolm X’s development that they identify and discuss.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 313–315 (from “I flew back to Miami feeling that” to “‘it just didn’t work,’ Patterson told the press”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definition: *furor* means “a general outburst of enthusiasm, excitement, controversy, or the like.”

- ① Students may be familiar with this word. Consider asking students to volunteer a definition before providing it to the group.
- ▶ Students write the definition of *furor* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing students with the following definitions: *preliminaries* means “games that are played before the main part of a competition,” *tuxedo* means “a formal suit for a man,” and *divorce* means “a complete separation between two things.”
- ▶ Students write the definitions of *preliminaries*, *tuxedo*, and *divorce* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

How does Malcolm X explain how Cassius Clay beat Liston?

- Malcolm X explains that Cassius Clay was trying to “con and ‘psyche’” Liston in order to have him come to the ring “poorly trained” (p. 310). During the fight Cassius Clay tires Liston out by evading “Liston’s powerful punches” (p. 314). Malcolm X explains that the “secret” was that “Clay had out-thought Liston” (p. 314).

What does Malcolm X mean by, “this fight is the *truth*” (p. 313)?

- Malcolm X describes the fight between Cassius Clay and Liston as “the Cross and the Crescent fighting in the prize ring” (p. 313). Malcolm X means that the fight represents the differing ideologies of African Americans in America. Malcolm X states that, “Cassius Clay, being a Muslim didn’t need to be told how white Christianity had dealt with the American black man” (p. 313). This implies that, for Malcolm X, the fight represents a larger battle between Christianity and Islam—a fight that Cassius Clay, being oppressed in America as an African-American Muslim, would have been intimately familiar with. For Malcolm X the victory of Cassius Clay would represent proof of “Islam’s superiority before the world” (p. 313).

① If necessary, remind students of their work with the term *ideology* in 12.1.1 Lesson 17.

***How does Cassius Clay’s fight relate to Malcolm X’s personal struggles in life and with the Nation of Islam?**

- The fight represents a number of important ideas for Malcolm X. It symbolizes the victory of Islam over Christianity, which “proves Islam’s superiority” (p. 313). Cassius Clay wins the fight by ingenuity and intelligence. He does “everything possible to con and ‘psyche’ Liston” (p. 310) and succeeds. The fight mirrors Malcolm X’s own struggle to think for himself after what he calls “twelve years of never thinking for as much as five minutes about myself” (p. 313).

① **Differentiation Consideration:** If necessary to aid student comprehension ask students the following question:

How do Cassius Clay’s tactics in his fight with Liston reflect incidents from Malcolm X’s own life?

Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X avoids the draft by outsmarting the army personnel and psychiatrist. Like Cassius Clay he puts on a performance, “costumed like an actor” (p. 108) and acting in wild and outlandish ways in order to avoid being sent to war.
- The psychological tricks are similar to how Malcolm X outsmarted the soldier who wanted to fight him while he was working on the train. Malcolm X was able to avoid the fight by telling his opponent that he had “too many clothes on” (p. 80) and forcing him to undress in front of all the other passengers.

How do Patterson’s efforts to integrate relate to Cassius Clay’s opinion on integration?

- Malcolm X states that Patterson, who was a “brainwashed black Christian” (p. 315) wanted to fight Cassius Clay for “the white man” (p. 315), but Patterson’s attempts at integration into a white neighborhood had failed. None of the neighbors were friendly; one even “erected a fence to hide the Negroes from sight” (p. 315). This behavior contrasts with Cassius Clay, who states he gets his “strength from being around [his] own black people” (p. 314).

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle, consider posing the following question to support their understanding.

What happens to Patterson when he tries to “integrate” (p. 315)?

💬 Student responses may include:

- No one is friendly to him.
- They call his children racial slurs.
- A neighbor trains his dog to deface Patterson’s property.
- A neighbor erects a fence.
- He has to sell his house at a loss.

Why does the neighbor “erect[] a fence” (p. 315)? What does *erect* mean in this context?

💬 The neighbors *erect* a fence to “hide the Negroes from sight” (p. 315). They put up a fence so they would not have to see Patterson and his family. In this context *erect* means “to raise or put up.”

- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their work with L.11-12.4.a as they use context clues to determine the meaning of a word.

***How does the author use the story of Cassius Clay to engage the reader? How does this section inform the reader about Malcolm X’s life at this time?**

💬 Student responses may include:

- This chapter is represented as a “crucial time” (p. 311) in Malcolm X’s life when he needed to rest and recover after his trouble with the Nation of Islam. The narrative of Malcolm X’s mental struggle to “muster the nerve” (p. 313) to think for himself, and the window into his thoughts at this time, engage the reader in Malcolm X’s struggle with both himself and Nation of Islam.
- During this time the fight between Cassius Clay and Liston takes on a symbolic importance for Malcolm X because it represents “the Cross and the Crescent fighting in the prize ring” (p. 313). For Malcolm X, Cassius Clay’s win is a reaffirmation of “Allah’s blessings” (p. 314) during a troubled time. The way that Malcolm X feels about this fight demonstrates that his convictions in both his faith and politics are intact even after his split with the Nation of Islam.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① If necessary, provide students with the term *turning point* to discuss this pivotal moment in Malcolm X’s life.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Character Development Tools to record Malcolm X's development that they identify and discuss.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze the effectiveness of the structure in chapter 16. How does the structure make the author's points clear, convincing, and engaging?

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson's vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

- ① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.
- 🗣 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 17 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion. Students' questions should focus on at least two events in the chapter and how these events interact with ideas.

- ▶ Students follow along.
- ① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they have been working on or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt that will better allow them to fulfill their statements of purpose. Remind students to focus on using a variety of techniques to sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).

Students may post their drafts to the class's online writing community and be paired for peer review. Remind peer reviewers to consider how effectively their peer uses a variety of techniques to

sequence events so that they build on one another to create a coherent whole and build toward a particular tone and outcome (e.g., a sense of mystery, suspense, growth, or resolution).

Consider maintaining the same peer review pairs through 12.1.1 Lesson 24 so that students can provide and receive consistent feedback from a peer familiar with their work in relation to W.11-12.3.c.

Homework

Read and annotate chapter 17 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion. Your questions should focus on at least two events in the chapter and how these events interact with ideas.

Model Character Development Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Analyze the character development that you encounter in the text. Identify the events that are connected to this development. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Character Development	Event	Evidence
Malcolm X begins to doubt the Nation of Islam and Elijah Muhammad.	In response to his speech, Malcolm X is silenced and the impression that he is rebellious is spread about the Nation of Islam.	<p>"This made me suspicious—for the first time." (p. 309)</p> <p>"I hadn't hustled in the streets for years for nothing. I knew when I was being set up." (p. 309)</p>
Malcolm X falls into a state of emotional shock.	Malcolm X realizes the "obvious strategy and plotting" (p. 311) of the Nation of Islam against him and it shakes his faith.	<p>"I felt as though something in <i>nature</i> had failed, like the sun or the stars." (p. 311)</p> <p>"Already the Nation of Islam and I were physically divorced." (p. 311)</p>
Malcolm X realizes his value as an international leader.	In the face of the death order against him, Malcolm X thinks about what he has to offer the world.	"I had, as one asset, I knew, an international image. No amount of money could have bought that. I knew that if I said something newsworthy, people would read or hear it" (p. 316)
Malcolm X decides to build his own organization to support the struggle of African Americans.	After his disillusionment with the Nation of Islam Malcolm X begins to build his own organization.	"I made the announcement: 'I am going to organize and head a new Mosque in New York City known as the Muslim Mosque, Inc. This will give us a religious base, and the spiritual force necessary to rid our people of the vices that destroy the moral fiber of our community.'" (p. 323)

12.1.1

Lesson 23

Introduction

In this lesson, students continue their analysis of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, focusing on how events, individuals, and ideas interact and develop over the course of the text. In class, students read chapter 17, pages 345–348 (from “I have reflected since that the letter” to “‘El-Hajj Malik El-Shabazz (Malcolm X)’”), in which Malcolm X describes his thinking behind writing his famous letter detailing his changing views on the racial dilemma in America. This passage also includes the “Letter From Mecca,” quoted in full. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: How do specific events in chapter 17 develop ideas in the letter?

For homework, students write a list of ideas about how they would respond to the following college interview question: What is your favorite book? Also for homework, students respond briefly in writing to the following prompt: How does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters? Additionally, students reread their personal narratives from 12.1.1 Lesson 18 and consider whether they would like to expand them into longer compositions or whether they would like to try a different Common Application prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 24.

Standards

Assessed Standard	
RI.11-12.3	Analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.d	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. d. Use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters.
W.11-12.9.b	Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research. b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and

	evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i> , presidential addresses]).
L.11-12.4.a	Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i> , choosing flexibly from a range of strategies. a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word's position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.
L.11-12.5.a	Demonstrate understanding of figurative language, word relationships, and nuances in word meanings. a. Interpret figures of speech (e.g., hyperbole, paradox) in context and analyze their role in the text.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> How do specific events in chapter 17 develop ideas in the letter?
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify at least two specific events in chapter 17 (e.g., Malcolm X's arrival in Cairo, Malcolm X's experience on the Hajj). Identify ideas introduced earlier in Malcolm X's letter (e.g., racial identity, solidarity/brotherhood, etc.). Analyze how these events further develop ideas in the letter (e.g., Malcolm X describes his arrival at the Cairo airport, which was filled with people of "all complexions" with an atmosphere of "warmth and friendliness" (p. 328). He describes how "the feeling hit [him] that there really wasn't any color problem here. The effect was as though [he] had just stepped out of a prison" (p. 328). This description develops the idea of racial identity and how it is formed in other cultures. Malcolm X sees that there "wasn't any color problem" in some cultures, and particularly among Muslims. In the letter, Malcolm X describes how people of different races were "'truly all the same (brothers)'" and in particular how the belief in "'one God'" had removed from white people

“the ‘white’ from their *minds*, the ‘white’ from their *behavior*, and the ‘white’ from their *attitude*” (p. 347). Malcolm X’s journey on the Hajj develops his idea of racial identity, since he now sees that there are white people who are willing to treat African Americans with a “spirit of unity and brotherhood” (p. 346).).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> subconsciously (adv.) – without one’s awareness protocol (n.) – a system of rules that explain the correct conduct and procedures to be followed in formal situations spellbound (adj.) – giving all of your attention and interest to something or someone
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> precedent (n.) – a similar action or event that can be used as an example or rule to be followed in the future plaguing (v.) – causing constant or repeated trouble, illness, etc.
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> insight (n.) – an understanding of the true nature of something dilemma (n.) – a situation in which you have to make a difficult choice pilgrimage (n.) – a journey to a holy place

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.3, W.11-12.3.d, W.11-12.9.b, L.11-12.4.a, L.11-12.5.a Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 17, pages 345–348 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability Reading and Discussion Quick Write 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 10% 15% 55% 15%

5. Closing

5. 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1. Lesson 1) (optional)
- Student copies of the Character Development Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 3) (optional)—students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Central Ideas Tracking Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 5) (optional) —students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.3. In this lesson, students continue to read and analyze *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, focusing on an excerpt of chapter 17 to determine how events interact with and develop ideas in the text. In addition, students are introduced to W.11-12.3.d.

- Students look at the agenda.

❗ **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

Post or project standard W.11-12.3.d. Instruct students to talk in pairs about how they think the standard applies to their writing. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

How does substandard W.11-12.3.d ask students to develop a narrative?

- By using specific language to create a clear image of the setting, characters, and action of the story.

Inform students that for homework they will consider how the author uses precise details and sensory language in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*. They will also explore the standard more deeply in the next lesson.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability**15%**

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read and annotate chapter 17 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text (RI.11-12.3). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to discuss in pairs the questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing how individuals, ideas, and events interacted and developed (RI.11-12.3).

- The Quick Write for this lesson asks students to draw on events from parts of the chapter not included in the focus excerpt. Therefore, extra sample questions are included in this section of the lesson to provide examples for student discussion.

- Student questions may include:

How does Malcolm X's reaction to the comments made by "white-complexioned" people (p. 325) develop an idea in the text?

- Malcolm X describes how the "white-complexioned" people would approach him after he spoke and explain to him that "they felt that [he] was sincere in considering [himself] a Muslim—and they felt if [he] was exposed to what they always called 'true Islam' [he] would 'understand, and embrace it'" (p. 325). The people who approach Malcolm X tell him that he was not practicing the "true Islam." Malcolm X explains how these interactions made him consider learning more about Islam: "If one was sincere in professing a religion, why should he balk at broadening his knowledge of that religion" (p. 325). These interactions begin to develop the ideas Malcolm X has about racial identity, whites, and the true nature of Islam. Malcolm X mentions specifically that the people telling him about "true Islam" were "white-complexioned," which foreshadows what Malcolm X will learn about how Muslims of different races interact on the Hajj.

How does Malcolm X's experience in the Cairo airport develop an idea in the text?

- Malcolm X describes how the Cairo airport was filled with people of “all complexions” and had an atmosphere of “warmth and friendliness” (p. 328). He explains how “the feeling hit [him] that there really wasn’t any color problem here. The effect was as though [he] had just stepped out of a prison” (p. 328). Malcolm X’s description of this event develops the idea of racial identity, as he sees that people in other cultures do not have the same sense of racial identity as people in America. Malcolm X’s experience of racial identity in America has been one of conflict and violence, starting even before he was born when Klansmen attacked his family’s home. The atmosphere of “warmth and friendliness” among different races in Cairo makes him feel as if he had been in a “prison” living in America all these years.

How do Malcolm X’s descriptions of the plane ride from Cairo to Jedda develop an idea in the text?

- Malcolm X describes how the plane was “packed” with people who were “white, black, brown, red, and yellow” and that all those on the plane were “honoring the same God Allah, all in turn giving equal honor to each other” (p. 330). This description further develops the idea of racial identity as Malcolm X sees that there was no “color problem” among Muslims, meaning that people of all races were able to “honor” each other as well as the same God.

Why does Malcolm X state he “first began to reappraise the ‘white man’” (p. 340)?

- Malcolm X describes how Dr. Azzam, who in America “would have been called a white man” (p. 338), treated Malcolm X with remarkable hospitality. Malcolm X explains, “Always in my life, if it was any white person, I could see a selfish motive” (p. 340). But he decides that Dr. Azzam had “nothing in the world to gain” (p. 340) by helping him. Malcolm X states, “That morning was when I first began to reappraise the ‘white man’” (p. 340), because Dr. Azzam’s generosity forces Malcolm X to reconsider his ideas about whether white people were capable of treating African Americans well without a “selfish motive” attached.

How does Malcolm X’s reaction to the fact that “men with white complexions were more genuinely brotherly than anyone else had ever been” (p. 340) develop an idea in the text?

- Malcolm X’s reaction develops the idea of racial identity, since he describes how white Americans treat African Americans badly because of certain “attitudes and actions” (p. 340) specific to white culture in America, which do not exist in the Muslim world. Malcolm X is discovering that the white man is capable of being genuinely brotherly, which is making him reconsider whether racial identity is as unchanging as he thought it was.

What does Malcolm X tell the other pilgrims “impressed [him] the most” about the Hajj (p. 345)? How does this revelation develop an idea in the text?

💬 Student responses should include:

- Malcolm X states, “‘The *brotherhood*! The people of all races, colors, from all over the world coming together as *one*! It has proved to me the power of the One God’” (p. 345). This revelation develops the ideas of racial identity and solidarity or “‘*brotherhood*’” by showing how Malcolm X begins to understand that racial identity is determined by the culture one lives in, and how brotherhood or solidarity is possible through the “‘power of the One God’” (p. 345). Malcolm X contrasts how Muslims treat racial identity with how white Americans do. His listeners are shocked to hear him describe the treatment of African Americans as “inhuman” and “psychological castration” (p. 345). This shock is because the same views of racial identity do not exist in the “Muslim world.” In the Muslim world, “brotherhood” exists amongst all races.

- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

55%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate for ideas and events they read and discuss the text. Remind students that annotating helps them keep track of evidence they use later in lesson assessments and the End-of-Unit Assessment.

- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard W.11-12.9.b through the process of drawing evidence from the text to support reflection and analysis.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students who have been using the Character Development and Central Ideas Tracking tools may benefit from reviewing their tools in pairs to trace the development of Malcolm X’s character and ideas over the course of the text up to this point.
- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students throughout the lesson:

How did Malcolm X’s experience in Mecca change his views about race?

Instruct student pairs to read pages 345–346 (from “I have reflected since that the letter” to “Here is what I wrote ... from my heart”).

Provide students with the following definition: *subconsciously* means “without one’s awareness.”

① Students may be familiar with this word. Consider asking students to volunteer the definition before providing it to the class.

- ▶ Students write the definition of *subconsciously* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing the students with the following definitions: *insight* means “an understanding of the true nature of something,” *dilemma* means “a situation in which you have to make a difficult choice,” and *pilgrimage* means “a journey to a holy place.”

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *insight*, *dilemma*, and *pilgrimage* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

How does the “Muslim world” (p. 345) affect Malcolm X’s thinking?

- 💬 Malcolm X describes how the “*color-blindness*” of the “Muslim world” “had each day been making a greater impact, and an increasing persuasion against [his] previous way of thinking” (p. 345). By spending time in other societies, Malcolm X starts to see that some white people treat African Americans with respect and are “color-blind” (p. 345).

For what reason does Malcolm X predict that “many would be astounded” (p. 346) by his letter?

- 💬 Malcolm X states that “many would be astounded” (p. 346) because millions had developed a “hate” image of Malcolm X.

*How does Malcolm X describe his own reaction to the letter? How does Malcolm X’s reaction to his letter further develop his character?

- 💬 Student responses should include:
 - Malcolm X admits that he was “astounded” at the change in his beliefs, but there was “precedent” in his life for the letter.
 - He explains that his “whole life had been a chronology of—*changes*” (p. 346), suggesting that Malcolm X recognizes that he has developed and changed his views throughout his life, so although this new change is surprising, it is not unusual for him to change.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posing the following scaffolding question:

How does Malcolm X’s description of his life help you to define the meaning of the word *precedent* in this context?

Malcolm X states there was “precedent” in his life for his change of views and describes how his whole life has been a “chronology of—changes” (p. 346). These quotes suggest that *precedent* means “an event that can be used as an example or rule to be followed in the future.”

- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of using context to make meaning of a word.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 346–348 (from “Never have I witnessed such sincere hospitality” to “El-Hajj Malik El-Shabazz (Malcolm X)”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definitions: *protocol* means “a system of rules that explain the correct conduct and procedures to be followed in formal situations” and *spellbound* means “giving all of your attention and interest to something or someone.”

- ① Students may be familiar with these words. Consider asking students to volunteer the definitions before providing them to the class.
- ▶ Students write the definitions of *protocol* and *spellbound* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

***How does Malcolm X introduce and develop a new idea in the first paragraph of his letter?**

Malcolm X introduces the idea of “true brotherhood” (p. 346) in this paragraph by describing how the people of all races on the Hajj interacted with one another. He writes that he has never witnessed “such sincere hospitality and the overwhelming spirit of true brotherhood as is practiced by people of all colors and races” (p. 346) in Mecca. He reiterates this idea by stating he has been “speechless and spellbound by the graciousness ... displayed all around [him] by people of all colors” (p. 346). Malcolm X also italicizes the words “of all colors” which emphasizes that his letter is going to describe how people of all races got along in Mecca.

In the third and fourth paragraphs of the letter, how does Malcolm X suggest that America might overcome its “race problem” (page 347)?

Malcolm X argues that “America needs to understand Islam, because this is the one religion that erases from its society the race problem” (p. 347). He describes how he felt “brotherhood” (p. 346) among people of all races that his “experiences in America had led [him] to believe never could exist between the white and the non-white” (p. 347). He explains that although

some of the people he was around were “white,” the “‘white’ attitude was removed from their minds by the religion of Islam” (p. 347).

What events cause Malcolm X to “re-arrange” his beliefs (page 347)?

- Malcolm X describes how, on the pilgrimage, what he has “‘seen, and experienced, has forced [him] to *re-arrange* much of [his] thought-patterns previously held” (p. 347). He describes how “‘[d]uring the past eleven days [there] in the Muslim world” he has eaten, slept, and prayed beside fellow Muslims “‘whose skin was the whitest of white” (p. 347). The pilgrimage made Malcolm X think differently about the relationship between people of different races.

What is the effect of putting “white” in quotation marks in this passage? How does the use of quotation marks help Malcolm X develop his ideas?

- Malcolm X puts “white” in quotes to show that he is describing “‘behavior” and “‘attitudes” (p. 347) of white Americans, which he previously thought were common to all white people. His experiences with white Muslims, however, convince him that it is not skin color which makes white Americans treat African Americans poorly, but rather their “‘behavior” and “‘attitudes” (p. 347). Therefore, when Malcolm X puts “white” in quotes, he is describing his concept of white as he developed it by living in America and interacting with racist white people.

How does Malcolm X describe what is “plaguing America” (page 347)? What is the impact of Malcolm X’s use of figurative language on the meaning of the text?

- Student responses may include:
 - Malcolm X uses a simile to describe racism as “‘plaguing America like an incurable cancer,” and argues the “‘so-called ‘Christian’ white-American heart should be more receptive to a proven solution to such a destructive problem” (p. 347).
 - By using a simile to compare racism to “‘incurable cancer” (p. 347), Malcolm X emphasizes how destructive and difficult to solve the problem is. The solution he offers is Islam, which he describes as “‘the *spiritual* path of *truth*—the *only* way left to America to ward off the disaster that racism inevitably must lead to” (p. 348).
- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.5.a through the process of using context to interpret the meaning of figurative language.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posing the following scaffolding question:

How does Malcolm X’s use of figurative language help you to determine the meaning of *plaguing* in the text?

Because Malcolm X talks about racism as a “cancer” “plaguing” (p. 347) America it is clear that *plaguing* means harming many people, like a disease would.

- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of using context to make meaning of a word.

***What “insights” (p. 348) has Malcolm X gained from his time in the Holy Land?**

Malcolm X explains that his time in the Holy Land “enables [him] to have greater spiritual insights into what is happening in American between black and white” (p. 348). Malcolm X explains that he now believes that “the whites of the younger generation ... will see the handwriting on the wall and many of them will turn to the *spiritual* path of *truth*” (p. 348). This statement shows that Malcolm X is hopeful that relations between the races can be improved if whites come to understand the ideas of Islam and become committed to living in brotherhood with African Americans.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

How do specific events in chapter 17 develop ideas in the letter?

Instruct students to look at their annotations to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson’s vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

- ① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt, using evidence from the text.

See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

For homework, instruct students to write a list of ideas about how they would respond to the following college interview question. Remind students to keep in mind their task, purpose, and audience as they

consider their response. Instruct students to provide reasons for their opinion. Inform students that they will practice responding to this interview question in the following lesson.

What is your favorite book?

Also for homework, instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

How does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters?

Additionally, instruct students to reread their personal narratives from 12.1.1 Lesson 18, and consider whether they would like to expand them into longer compositions, or if they would like to try a different Common Application prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 24.

► Students follow along.

① Students who have been completing their Accountable Independent Writing each night should gather their drafts to bring to class for their work in the following lesson.

Homework

Write a list of ideas about how you would respond to the following college interview question. Remember to keep in mind your task, purpose, and audience as you consider your response. Also, provide reasons for your opinion. You will practice responding to this interview question in the following lesson.

What is your favorite book?

Also, respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

How does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters?

Additionally, reread your personal narrative from 12.1.1 Lesson 18 and consider whether you would like to expand it into a longer composition or try a different prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 24.

Model Character Development Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Analyze the character development that you encounter in the text. Identify the events that are connected to this development. Cite textual evidence to support your analysis.

Character Development	Event	Evidence
Malcolm X begins to change his views about whites.	Malcolm X is treated generously by Dr. Azzam even though he would be called a “white man” (p. 338) in America and has nothing to gain by helping Malcolm X.	Malcolm X describes how, in America, Dr. Azzam “would have been called a white man” (p. 338). Malcolm X explains, “Always in my life, if it was any white person, I could see a selfish motive” (p. 340). But he decides that Dr. Azzam had “nothing in the world to gain” (p. 340) by helping him. Malcolm X states, “that morning was when I first began to reappraise the ‘white man’” (p. 340).
Malcolm X rearranges his beliefs about the relationship between races.	Malcolm X’s trip to Mecca allowed him a chance to interact with people of all races existing in “true brotherhood” (p. 347).	Malcolm X describes how, on the pilgrimage, what he has “seen, and experienced, has forced [him] to re-arrange much of [his] thought-patterns previously held” (p. 347). He describes how “[d]uring the past eleven days [there] in the Muslim world” he has eaten, slept, and prayed beside fellow Muslims “whose skin was the whitest of white” (p. 347). He explains about these whites and members of other races that “we were truly all the same (brothers)” (p. 347).

Malcolm X is “astounded” (p. 346) by his change in beliefs, and reflects on the history of dramatic changes in his life.	Malcolm X sets out to write his “Letter from Mecca” after his experiences in the Muslim world, where he experienced “brotherhood” (p. 346) with people of all races.	Malcolm X states, “Even I was myself astounded” but that his “whole life had been a chronology of—changes” (p. 346).
--	--	--

Model Central Ideas Tracking Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Identify the central ideas that you encounter throughout the text. Trace the development of those ideas by noting how the author introduces, develops, or refines these ideas in the texts. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Text:	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley
--------------	---

Page #	Central Idea	Notes and Connections
Page 328	Racial identity	Malcolm X describes how the Cairo airport was filled with people of “all complexions” and had an atmosphere of “warmth and friendliness” (p. 328). He describes how “the feeling hit [him] that there really wasn’t any color problem here. The effect was as though [he] had just stepped out of a prison” (p. 328). Malcolm X’s description of this event develops the idea of racial identity, because he sees how people in other cultures do not have the same sense of racial identity as people in America do.
Page 345	Solidarity/brotherhood	When asked what impressed him most on his travels, Malcolm X responds: “‘The brotherhood! The people of all races, colors, from all over the world coming together as one! It has proved to me the power of the One God’” (p. 345). This statement develops the ideas of racial identity and solidarity or “brotherhood.” Malcolm X contrasts how Muslims treat racial identity with how white Americans do. His listeners are shocked to hear him describe the treatment of African Americans as “inhuman” and “psychological castration” (p. 345). The same views of racial identity do not exist in the culture of his listeners. They have “brotherhood” amongst Muslims of all races.
Page 346	Solidarity/brotherhood	Malcolm X introduces the idea of “true brotherhood” (p. 346) in the paragraph beginning “never have I witnessed” by describing how people of all races on the Hajj interacted with one another. He writes that he has never witnessed “such sincere hospitality and the

		overwhelming spirit of true brotherhood as is practiced by people of all colors and races” (p. 346) in Mecca. True brotherhood seems to embody the central ideas of solidarity and brotherhood.
--	--	---

12.1.1**Lesson 24****Introduction**

In this lesson, students draft or revise a response to a Common Application essay prompt, practicing standard W.11-12.3.d as they integrate precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences or setting presented in their essay. Student learning is assessed via students' drafts. The drafts will be reviewed in relation to standard W.11-12.3.d.

For homework, students read chapter 18 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text.

Standards

Assessed Standard	
W.11-12.3.d	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. d. Use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.f	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. f. Adapt voice, awareness of audience, and use of language to accommodate a variety of cultural contexts.
W.11-12.5	Develop and strengthen writing as needed by planning, revising, editing, rewriting, or trying a new approach, focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific purpose and audience.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
Student learning is assessed via a response to the following prompt:

- Draft a paragraph in response to a Common Application essay prompt, focusing on using precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters.

 This assessment will be evaluated using the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric.

High Performance Response(s)

A High Performance Response should:

- Revise and expand upon the response to the narrative prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 18 or begin a new draft to a different Common Application prompt, including precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters (e.g., “Pairs of slim metallic gold Air Max, orange filigree embossed Foamposites, and a rare tie-dyed mash up of fabrics branded as ‘What the Dunk’ all made their way into my collection” and “A shared passion for shoes creates an instant connection with people I meet, whether in a suburban shopping mall, or a trendy neon-lit Los Angeles sneaker store.”).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)

- None.*

Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)

- None.*

Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- None.*

*Because this is not a close reading lesson, there is no specified vocabulary. However, in the process of returning to the text, students may uncover unfamiliar words. Teachers can guide students to make meaning of these words by following the protocols described in 1e of this document http://www.engageny.org/sites/default/files/resource/attachments/9-12_ela_prefatory_material.pdf.

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: W.11-12.3.d, W.11-12.3.f, W.11-12.5 Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapters 1–17 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability Writing Instruction: Precise Words and Sensory Language Drafting Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5% 20% 20% 50% 5%

Materials

- Student copies of their personal narratives from 12.1.1 Lesson 18
- Student copies of the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 2)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

5%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: W.11-12.3.d. In this lesson, students continue to develop their narrative writing skills, focusing on using precise and vivid words and phrases. This work supports W.11-12.5, which asks students to develop and strengthen writing as needed by planning, revising, editing, rewriting, or trying a new approach, focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific purpose and audience.

- ▶ Students look at agenda.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

20%

Instruct students take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Write a list of ideas about how you would respond to the following college interview question. Remember to keep in mind your task, purpose, and audience as you consider your response. Also, provide reasons for your opinion. What is your favorite book?)

Instruct students to form pairs to ask and answer the college interview question. For this practice session, students should focus on giving reasons to support their opinions.

- ▶ Students practice asking and answering the college interview question.

- ① Instruct students to keep their interview preparation notes in a writing journal or folder as a portfolio of their interview preparation throughout the module.

Instruct students to take out their responses to the second homework assignment. (Respond briefly in writing to the following prompt: How does the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters?)

Instruct student pairs to discuss their responses.

- 💬 Student responses may include:

- The author writes that “there was an instant avalanche of public reaction” (p. 242) which creates a vivid picture of how large and immediate the public reaction was.
- The author describes how “black people had been grinning and begging and ‘Yessa, Massa’ and Uncle Tomming” (p. 243) to illustrate his point about how white people expect African Americans to behave.
- The writes how “the telephone ... nearly jumped off the wall” (p. 244); the image of the telephone nearly jumping “off the wall” conveys how eager everyone was to speak with Malcolm X.

Instruct students to talk in pairs about the third homework assignment. (Reread your personal narrative from 12.1.1 Lesson 18 and consider if you would like to expand it into a longer composition or try a different prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 24.) Instruct students to review their statements of purpose from 12.1.1 Lesson 18 and consider which Common Application prompt will allow them to best achieve their purposes.

- ▶ Students discuss their decisions regarding the Common Application essay.

① Common Application prompts were introduced in 12.1.1 Lesson 2.

Activity 3: Writing Instruction: Precise Words and Sensory Language

20%

Explain that in this activity, students draft a response to a Common Application essay prompt, focusing on integrating precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters.

Ask students to form pairs to discuss the following question:

How have vivid pictures of experiences, events, setting, and/or character contributed to your experience reading *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Vivid pictures help the reader to create a mental image of a setting (“The telephone in our then small Temple Seven restaurant nearly jumped off the wall” (p. 244)). This picture conveys the energy of Temple Seven at this time.
- Vivid pictures help to show how a character feels: “I talked with my own wife, and with other people, and actually I was only mouthing words that really meant nothing to me” (p. 311). The reader can picture Malcolm X “mouthing” the words without really paying attention to what he is saying, which conveys the detached emotional state the character is in.
- Vivid pictures help to illustrate an observation the author makes about a character: “The drape and the cut of a zoot suit showed to the best advantage if you were tall—and I was over six feet. My conk was fire-red. I was really a clown, but my ignorance made me think I was sharp” (p. 81). In this example, the author paints a vivid picture of Malcolm X before making an observation that he was “really a clown.” The vivid description helps the reader to see what Malcolm X means when he states that he was “really a clown.”

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Inform students that to use “precise words and phrases” means to use specific language that most accurately describes experiences, events, setting, and/or characters. Provide students with the following sets of examples:

- 1) This was the worst thing that ever had happened to me. 2) “I felt as though something in *nature* had failed, like the sun, or the stars” (p. 311).
- 1) It made me feel terrible to realize I had been betrayed. 2) “My head felt like it was bleeding inside” (p. 309).
- 1) There were a lot of people in the bar but it wasn’t very loud. 2) “But with all these Harlemites drinking and talking, there was just a low murmur of sound” (p. 76).

How does the use of precise words and phrases in the second examples in each of the above sets convey experiences, characters, or settings more effectively than the first examples in each set?

🗨 Student responses should include:

- In the first example, the writing is vague and imprecise. In the second example, by describing the experience as if “something in *nature*” had failed and then being even more specific by writing that it was as if “sun, or the stars” had failed, the author conveys how bad and unexpected the experience was, since the sun and stars are aspects of nature that people rely on to always be there.
- In the first example, the author writes that he felt “terrible,” which is not very descriptive. In the second example, the author describes the feeling using precise sensory details. When he writes that it felt like his head “was bleeding inside” the reader has a precise sense of the pain he is feeling.
- The first example conveys the basic facts of the situation, that there were a “lot of people” but it “was not very loud.” The second example describes the action of the people “drinking and talking” and uses the precise word “murmur” to describe the sound. The second example is a more effective way of conveying what the scene looked and sounded like.

Inform students that in addition to being precise, it is important to provide “telling details” that are descriptive or revealing, in order to engage the reader. Provide students with the following example:

- “The telephone in our then small Temple Seven restaurant nearly jumped off the wall. I had a receiver against my ear five hours a day. I was listening, and jotting in my notebook, as press, radio and television people called, all of them wanting the Muslim reaction to the quoted attacks of these black ‘leaders’” (p. 244).

What effect do the details in this example have on the reader?

🗨 Student responses may include:

- The details of the phone that “nearly jumped” off the wall helps to convey how busy and urgent the scene is. By using the descriptive language of a phone “jump[ing]” the author brings objects in the scene to life.
- The details about Malcolm X having the “receiver against [his] ear five hours a day” allow the reader to picture how busy and engaged Malcolm X is in response to all the people calling. These details show the reader why the telephone is jumping “off the wall.” The author explains that the “press, radio, and television people” (p. 244) are calling to get the “Muslim reaction to the quoted attacks” of the “black ‘leaders’” (p. 244). These “telling details” explain the descriptive language of the scene.

Finally, inform students that “sensory language” engages the reader even further. Remind students that sensory language is language that appeals to the senses. Provide students with the following example:

- “The voices questioning me became to me as breathing, living devils. And I tried to pour on pure fire in return” (p. 245).

Ask students:

What effect do the sensory details in this example have on the reader?

🗨 Student responses may include:

- The sensory details of “breathing, living devils” conveys how Malcolm X feels attacked by the people phoning him. This sensory detail is vivid, so the reader can hear the “breathing” on the other end of the phone.
- The sensory details help to establish what Malcolm X means by stating, “I tried to pour on pure fire” (p. 245). The “breathing” of the devils suggests fire and anger, so the reader understands what Malcolm X means by “pure fire” in return. He speaks with as much passion and anger as the “devils” (p. 245).
- “Breathing, living devils” and “pure fire” both suggest heat and flames, which convey the intensity of the situation and how intense the conversations between Malcolm X and the press have become.

Finally, explain to students that precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language all contribute to a cohesive narrative.

- ① Remind students that they should provide the same level of information and vivid detail in their personal narratives to develop their experiences or events. However, the scope of their personal narratives may focus on a much shorter amount of time and the events may be less intense than Malcolm X’s experiences.

Explain to students that it is helpful to keep in mind the task, purpose, and audience when deciding how to use precise and sensory language. Instruct students to take out their statements of purpose from 12.1.1 Lesson 2 and consider whether they would like to revise their statements of purpose based on work they have done over the past several days. Instruct students to form pairs to discuss following questions:

How does your task inform the use of precise and sensory language in your essay?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Precise and sensory language and vivid images and details help the writer convey his or her unique personal experience more clearly.
- This essay is short (650 words), so the use of precise language is important in order to have the maximum effect within the word limit.

How does your purpose inform the use of precise and sensory language in your essay?

💬 Student responses may include:

- One of my purposes is to make myself stand out for the college admissions board. Using precise and sensory language can help me convey my unique experience, and make me more interesting, memorable, and attractive to the college admissions board.
- I want to demonstrate my writing ability in the personal essay. Using precise and sensory language shows that I understand that this kind of language is effective.

How does your audience inform the use of precise and sensory language in your essay?

💬 Student responses may include:

- The audience is a group of people who are reading my writing for the first time. Therefore, it is important that I use precise and sensory language to convey my experiences clearly.
- By using precise language, I can ensure that the college's admissions board accurately understands my personal experience.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses. Remind students to be mindful of their task, purpose, and audience as they use precise and sensory language.

Activity 4: Drafting

50%

Instruct students to use precise words and sensory language like those they analyzed in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* to continue drafting their responses to one of the Common Application

prompts. Students may expand on the personal narrative they wrote in 12.1.1 Lesson 18 or choose a new prompt.

Instruct students to work individually to respond to the following prompt:

Draft a paragraph in response to a Common Application essay prompt, focusing on using precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters.

Remind students to use the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the writing prompt.
- ① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.
- ① Consider drawing students' attention to their work with W.11-12.3.f as they adapt voice and language use to reflect an awareness of audience.

Transition to the independent writing.

- 🗣 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.
- ① Instruct students to keep their personal narratives in a writing journal or folder as a portfolio of their narrative writing throughout the module.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 18 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text (RI.11-12.2). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion. Students may also use the code WT to annotate for writing techniques that they identify in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* that they would like to use in their own writing.

- ▶ Students follow along.
- ① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they worked on during this lesson or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt. Remind students to focus on using precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters. Instruct students to practice combining sentences in their drafts as well.

Homework

Read and annotate chapter 18 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text (RI.11-12.2). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

12.1.1

Lesson 25

Introduction

In this lesson, students analyze pages 367–370 from chapter 18 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* (from “The Pan American jet which took me home” to “I don’t mind shaking hands with human beings. Are you one?”). In this passage, Malcolm X returns from his trip abroad and explains his evolving views to reporters. Students explore how Malcolm X’s explanations of his views develop central ideas in the text. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: Determine two central ideas present in pages 367–370 and analyze how they interact and build on one another.

For homework, students read and annotate chapter 19 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text.

Standards

Assessed Standard	
RI.11-12.2	Determine two or more central ideas of a text and analyze their development over the course of the text, including how they interact and build on one another to provide a complex analysis; provide an objective summary of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.2.d	Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content. d. Use precise language, domain-specific vocabulary, and techniques such as metaphor, simile, and analogy to manage the complexity of the topic.
W.11-12.9.b	Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research. b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i> , presidential addresses]”).

L.11-12.4.a, b	<p>Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i>, choosing flexibly from a range of strategies.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word’s position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase. Identify and correctly use patterns of word changes that indicate different meanings or parts of speech (e.g., <i>conceive</i>, <i>conception</i>, <i>conceivable</i>).
-------------------	---

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Determine two central ideas present in pages 367–370 and analyze how they interact and build on one another.
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Determine two central ideas present in pages 367–370 (e.g., racial identity, systemic oppression). Analyze how these ideas interact and build on one another (e.g., In this passage, Malcolm X develops the central idea of racial identity by stating that he now believes “<i>some American whites do want to help cure the rampant racism</i>” (p. 369) in America. This statement demonstrates a change from what he previously thought about whites being unable to help African Americans in their struggle to overcome racism. But Malcolm X also explains that, collectively, whites view themselves as ““superior”” (p. 369) to African Americans and this sense of superiority is a part of how they understand their racial identity. This realization about how racial identity functions in America interacts with the idea of systemic oppression, since it suggests that racism is a collective problem that exists among most whites and therefore affects all African Americans negatively.).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> scapegoat (n.) – a person or group made to bear the blame for others or to suffer in their place sociological (adj.) – dealing with social questions or problems, especially focusing on cultural and environmental factors rather than on psychological or personal characteristics

- censured (v.) – strongly expressed disapproval
- orthodox (adj.) – conforming to established doctrine especially in religion
- symbol (n.) – an action, object, event, or person that expresses or represents a particular idea or quality

Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)

- causative (adj.) – making something happen or exist; causing something

Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- subjective (adj.) – based on feelings or opinions rather than facts
- indictments (n.) – expressions or statements of strong disapproval
- authentic (adj.) – real or genuine; not copied or false

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standards: RI.11-12.2, W.11-12.2.d, W.11-12.9.b, L.11-12.4.a, b • Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 18, pages 367–370 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda 2. Homework Accountability 3. Reading and Discussion 4. Quick Write 5. Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 5% 2. 15% 3. 60% 4. 15% 5. 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)
- Student copies of the Central Ideas Tracking Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 4) (optional)—students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

5%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.2. In this lesson, students continue to read and analyze *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, focusing on an excerpt from chapter 18 in which Malcolm X returns from his trip abroad and explains his evolving views to reporters.

- Students look at the agenda.

❗ **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

Post or project standards W.11-12.2.d and W.11-12.3.d. Instruct students to talk in pairs about how they think the standards apply to their writing. Lead a brief discussion about the standards. Ask students the following questions:

How does standard W.11-12.2.d compare to standard W.11-12.3.d? How do the standards differ?

💬 Student responses should include:

- Standard W.11-12.2.d requires students to use accurate language, vocabulary related to text analysis, and figurative language to convey complex ideas in their writing.
- Similarly, standard W.11-12.3.d requires students to use precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of experiences, events, setting, and/or characters.
- Both standards require students to use accurate and vivid language.
- Standard W.11-12.2.d also includes domain-specific vocabulary, whereas standard W.11-12.3.d suggests sensory language.

❗ Students were introduced to W.11-12.3.d in 12.1.1 Lesson 24.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** If necessary, discuss with students examples of domain specific vocabulary that they may use in discussions and lesson assessments such as *excerpt*, *structural techniques*, *narrative techniques*, *summarize*, *foreshadowing*, etc.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their homework responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read chapter 18 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how central ideas develop, interact, or build on one another in the text (RI.11–12.2). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to discuss in pairs the questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing how central ideas interact and build on one another (RI.11–12.2).

💬 Student questions may include:

In the two paragraphs beginning “It was there in the holy land, and later in Africa” (pp. 352–353), how does Malcolm X develop a central idea in the text?

💬 Student responses may include:

- While traveling abroad, Malcolm X learned that many of the leaders of African nations “would be glad to throw their weight behind the Negro cause” (p. 353), but they felt that the African American was “so confused and divided that he doesn’t himself know what his cause is” (p. 353). These quotes develop the central idea of racial identity by expressing Malcolm X’s view that African Americans need to develop a clearer sense of racial identity and purpose in order to achieve their goals.
- Malcolm X also develops the idea of systemic oppression by stating that “the first thing the American power structure doesn’t want any Negroes to start is thinking *internationally*” (p. 353). This quote demonstrates Malcolm X’s view that the white American power structure is trying to oppress African Americans and keep them from joining together with people from other nations.
- Malcolm X’s references to African leaders who “would be glad to throw their weight behind the Negro cause” (p. 353) and African Americans needing to start “thinking *internationally*” (p. 353) develops the idea of solidarity. The idea of “the independent nations of Africa and the American black people” (p. 353) uniting and working together to lift each other out of oppression is an expression of solidarity.

How does Malcolm X’s conversation at dinner at Professor Essien-Udom’s house develop a central idea in the text (p. 356)?

- A “young doctor” asks Malcolm X about a recent killing in Harlem of a white woman “for which, according to the press, many were blaming” Malcolm X (p. 356). Malcolm X tells the other guests that this is the first he has heard the story, but he “was not surprised when violence happened in any of America’s ghettos where black men had been living packed like animals and treated like lepers” (p. 356). This scene develops the central idea of systemic oppression, since it talks about how African Americans are treated collectively by the white social system, being forced to live “packed like animals” (p. 356).

On pages 360–361, how does Malcolm X explain his decision to use the term “Afro-American?” How does his use of the term develop a central idea in the text?

- Student responses may include:
 - Malcolm X explains how he used the word “Negro” in a press conference in Ghana and was told that “[t]he word is not favored here” and that “the term Afro-American has greater meaning, and dignity” (p. 361). Malcolm X decides to no longer use the word “Negro” while he is in Africa.
 - He explains the connection between African Americans and African nations by explaining that the “22 million Afro-Americans in the United States could become for Africa a great positive force” (p. 361), while the African countries could also help to end discrimination in the United States.
 - Student responses should include:
 - This event develops the central ideas of racial identity and solidarity by demonstrating Malcolm X’s growing conviction that African Americans and “non-white officials” (p. 353) across the world should identify with each other, unite, and work towards the same goal.
- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

60%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project the following questions for students to discuss. Instruct students to annotate the text for central ideas (CI) as they read and discuss. Remind students that annotating helps them keep track of evidence they use later in lesson assessments and the End-of-Unit Assessment.

- ① Consider drawing students' attention to their application of standard W.11-12.9.b through the process of drawing evidence from the text to support reflection and analysis.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Central Ideas Tracking Tools to record central ideas they identify and discuss.
- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students throughout the lesson:

What does Malcolm X suggest white people can do to combat racism?

Instruct student pairs to read pages 367–368 (from “The Pan American jet which took me home” to “your comment that Negroes should form rifle clubs”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

What does the author suggest by putting certain words in quotes in this passage?

- 💬 Malcolm X is quoting the “white press” when he puts the words “villain,” “revolt,” and “violence” in quotation marks. Malcolm X states that the “the white man’s press had cast [him] as a symbol” of the “revolt” and “violence” of the “black man” (p. 367). The use of quotation marks suggests a sense of irony about the words, because Malcolm X would not use these words to describe himself or the situation. By placing the words in quotation marks he is able to suggest that he does not believe they are true without saying so directly.

***How does the author’s use of the quoted words in these two paragraphs develop a central idea?**

- 💬 Student responses may include:
 - By putting these three words (“villain,” “revolt,” and “violence”) in quotes and showing how the white press uses them to portray African Americans in a negative light, the author develops the central idea of racial identity. The author’s use of the press’s words in quotation marks demonstrates how the white press turns Malcolm X into a “symbol” (p. 367) of the character traits that they attribute to African Americans in general, including the suggestions that African Americans are “violent” and in a state of “revolt” (p. 367).
 - The use of quotation marks around these words (“villain,” “revolt,” and “violence”) also develops the central idea of systemic oppression. The author provides examples of how the white press creates a negative image of African Americans, which keeps African Americans from gaining power or rights.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** If students struggle with these questions, consider posing the questions below.
- ① Provide students with the following definition: *symbol* is “an action, object, event or person that expresses or represents a particular idea or quality.”

What does Malcolm X mean when he states the “white man’s press had cast [him] as a symbol—if not a causative agent—of the ‘revolt’ and of the ‘violence’ of the American black man” (p. 367)?

💬 Malcolm X means that the press writes about him as if he personally represents or embodies the “‘revolt’” and “‘violence’” of African Americans because they “cast” or placed him in this role.

Use word parts as well as context to determine the meaning of *causative* in this context.

- 💬 The word “causative” includes the word “cause.” If he were a symbol, he would only represent the “‘violence’” and “‘revolt,’” in their current states, but to be described as “causative” means that Malcolm X is causing the “‘violence’” and “‘revolt’” (p. 367).
- ① Consider drawing students’ attention to their work with L.11-12.4.a and b as they use context clues and word parts to determine the meaning of a word.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 368–369 (from “I answered the questions. I knew I was back in America again” to “‘which is on the path to *destroying* this country!’”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the following definitions: *scapegoat* means “a person or group made to bear the blame for others or to suffer in their place,” *sociological* means “dealing with social questions or problems, especially focusing on cultural and environmental factors rather than on psychological or personal characteristics,” *censured* means “strongly expressed disapproval,” and *orthodox* means “conforming to established doctrine especially in religion.”

- ① Students may be familiar with these words. Consider asking students to volunteer the definitions before providing it to the class.
- ▶ Students write the definitions of *scapegoat*, *sociological*, *censured*, and *orthodox* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing the following definitions: *subjective* means “based on feelings or opinions rather than facts,” *indictments* means “expressions or statements of strong disapproval,” and *authentic* means “real or genuine; not copied or false.”

- ▶ Students write the definitions of *subjective*, *indictment*, and *authentic* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

What contrasts does Malcolm X establish when he describes how he “knew [he] was back in America again” (p. 368)? How do these contrasts develop central ideas in the text?

☞ Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X contrasts how whites and African Americans are portrayed with regard to the issues of murder and gun ownership. Malcolm X notes that, “New York white youth were killing victims; that was a ‘sociological’ problem. But when black youth killed somebody, the power structure was looking to hang somebody” (p. 368). The difference in these reactions shows how white American society blames African Americans individually when they commit violence whereas violence committed by whites is blamed on society.
- Malcolm X points out that when a black person has been lynched or murdered it is said, “[t]hings will get better” (p. 368). He points out that the Constitution gave whites the right to have rifles in their homes, “but when black people even spoke of having rifles in their homes, that was ‘ominous’ (p. 368). These contrasts further develop the racial divisions that let Malcolm X know he “was back in America again” (p. 386).

☞ By contrasting the reactions to crimes committed by African Americans and whites, Malcolm X shows that the racial identity of each group determines how they are portrayed. The systemic oppression by the white social structure means that African Americans are portrayed negatively.

How does Malcolm X’s “speech” further develop the central ideas in his “Letter from Mecca” (p. 368)?

☞ Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X uses the speech to further develop the idea of racial identity that he discusses in his “Letter from Mecca.” Malcolm X’s letter was a way for him to introduce his new way of thinking, and this speech is a chance for him to further develop this transformation. He clarifies, for instance, that “[i]n the past, yes, [he has] made sweeping indictments of *all* white people” but that he is now convinced that “*some* American whites do want to help cure the rampant racism” (p. 369) in the country. Malcolm X speaks directly to the “white press” when he explains this transformation, which demonstrates how he was using this “speech” to explain the ideas in his letter. He states, when asked about the letter, that he “was all set with a speech regarding that” (p. 368).
- Malcolm X develops the central idea of racial identity with his speech about the “Letter from Mecca.” He explains that Africans were happy to hear how African Americans were “‘awakening from our long sleep—after so-called ‘Christian’ white America had taught us to be *ashamed* of our African brothers and homeland” (p.368). In this way, African Americans’

racial identity is expanding and changing, according to Malcolm X, because they are overcoming the negative views of their own racial identity, which “white America” has taught them.

- Malcolm X develops the central idea of solidarity in this speech. He states that he knows “once and for all that the Black Africans look upon America’s 22 million blacks as long-lost brothers!” (p. 368). African Americans joining with people from “the independent nations of Africa” (p. 353) and around the world to fight for justice develops the central idea of solidarity.

***How does Malcolm X’s explanation of what he learned from the Hajj develop and refine central ideas in the text?**

- 🗣️ Malcolm X explains that the pilgrimage “broadened [his] scope” (p. 369). He explains how after watching people of all colors “[l]iving as one” he now believes that “some white people *are* truly sincere” and “capable of being brotherly toward a black man” (p. 369). Malcolm X develops the central idea of racial identity by showing that each race’s identity does not have to be formed in opposition to the other. Malcolm X now realizes that “some American whites do want to help cure the rampant racism” (p. 369) in America.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Central Ideas Tracking Tools to record central ideas they identify and discuss.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 369–370 (from “It was in the Holy World that my attitude was changed” to “I don’t mind shaking hands with human beings do you?”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

How does Malcolm X explain the “problem” with race in America in this passage?

- 🗣️ Malcolm X notes that in America “we meet such a small minority of individual so-called ‘good,’ or ‘brotherly’ white people” (p. 369) in comparison with the “collective 150 million white people whom the collective 22 million black people have to deal with!” (p. 369). Malcolm X shows that the number of racist whites far outweighs the number of nonracist whites. Malcolm X goes on to explain that “the seeds of racism are so deeply rooted in the white people collectively ... that these things are in the national white subconsciousness” (p.369). Malcolm X therefore sees racism as a collective and “deeply rooted” problem.

***How does Malcolm X’s analysis of racism develop a central idea?**

🗨 Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X's analysis of racism develops the central idea of racial identity because Malcolm X states that white people believe themselves "superior" to African Americans, which is a part of how they understand their racial identity.
- Malcolm X's analysis of racism develops the central idea of systemic oppression, because he explains that racism is a "collective" problem that exists in most whites and oppresses all African Americans.

***How does the story Malcolm X tells about the white man in the car clarify his views about cooperation between African Americans and whites? What might Malcolm X mean by the phrase "human being" (p. 370) given his explanations about his views?**

🗨 Student responses should include:

- Malcolm X's story about a white man asking if Malcolm X minded "shaking hands with a white man" (p. 370) demonstrates how he is willing to show signs of respect to his white counterparts if they are willing to respect him.
- Malcolm X tells the man he doesn't mind "'shaking hands with human beings'" (p. 370) and asks if the man is one. By asking if the man is a "human being," Malcolm X is asking if he is a person who is willing to treat people of other races with respect and dignity, since this is how Malcolm X would define a "human being" given the views he expresses in this passage.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Central Ideas Tracking Tools to record central ideas they identify and discuss.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Determine two central ideas present in pages 367–370 and analyze how they interact and build on one another.

Instruct students to look at their annotations and notes to find evidence. Ask students to use this lesson's vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to focus on using precise language and domain-specific vocabulary. Also, remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt, using evidence from the text.
- 🗣 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display or distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to read and annotate chapter 19 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (RI.11-12.6). Instruct students to prepare possible answers to their questions for discussion.

- ▶ Students follow along.
 - ① For Accountable Independent Writing homework, instruct students to continue drafting their personal narratives. Students may continue the draft they have been working on or choose to respond to a new Common Application prompt that will better allow them to fulfill their statements of purpose. Remind students to focus on using precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters.
- Students may post their drafts to the class's online writing community and be paired for peer review. Remind peer reviewers to consider how effectively their peer uses precise words and phrases, telling details, and sensory language to convey a vivid picture of the experiences, events, setting, and/or characters.
- Consider establishing new peer review pairs, different from those established in 12.1.1 Lesson 19, so that students can benefit from a reviewer with fresh eyes. Consider maintaining the same peer review pairs through 12.1.1 Lesson 28 so that students can provide and receive consistent feedback from a peer familiar with their work in relation to W.11-12.3.d.

Homework

Read and annotate chapter 19 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (RI.11-12.6). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.

Model Central Ideas Tracking Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Identify the central ideas that you encounter throughout the text. Trace the development of those ideas by noting how the author introduces, develops, or refines these ideas in the texts. Cite textual evidence to support your work.

Text:	<i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley
--------------	---

Page #	Central Idea	Notes and Connections
Page 367	Racial identity	By putting words in quotes (“villain,” “revolt,” and “violence”) and showing how the white press uses them to portray African Americans in a negative light, the author develops the central idea of racial identity. The author’s use of the quotes demonstrates how the white press turns Malcolm X into a “symbol” of the character traits that they attribute to African Americans, including the suggestions that African Americans are “violent” and in a state of “revolt” (p. 367).
Page 367	Systemic oppression	The use of quotes around these words (“villain,” “revolt,” and “violence”) also develops the central idea of systemic oppression. The author provides an example of how the white press creates a negative image of African Americans, which keeps them from gaining power or rights.
Page 368	Racial identity	Malcolm X develops the central idea of racial identity with his speech about the “Letter from Mecca.” He explains that Africans were happy to hear how African Americans were “‘awakening from our long sleep—after so-called ‘Christian’ white America had taught us to be <i>ashamed</i> of our African brothers and homeland” (p. 368). In this way, African Americans’ racial identity is expanding and changing, according to Malcolm X, because they are overcoming the negative views of their own racial identity that “white America” has taught them.

Page 368	Solidarity	Malcolm X also develops the central idea of solidarity in this speech. He states that he knows “‘once and for all that the Black Africans look upon America’s 22 million blacks as long-lost brothers!’” (p. 368). The idea that African Americans are joining with “Black Africans” to fight for justice develops the central idea of solidarity.
Page 369	Racial Identity	Malcolm X develops the central idea of racial identity by showing that each race’s identity does not have to be formed in opposition to the other. Malcolm X now realizes that “‘some American whites do want to help cure the rampant racism’” (p. 369) in America.
Page 369	Systemic Oppression	Malcolm X develops the idea of systemic oppression by showing that although “‘some white people <i>are</i> truly sincere’” and “‘capable of being brotherly toward a black man,’” but they are “‘such a small minority of individual so-called ‘good,’ or ‘brotherly’ white people’” (p. 369). He emphatically describes how systemic the oppression of African Americans by whites is: “‘Here in the United States, notwithstanding those few ‘good’ white people, it is the <i>collective</i> 150 million white people whom the <i>collective</i> 22 million black people have to deal with!’” (p. 369).

12.1.1

Lesson 26

Introduction

In this lesson, students analyze the closing section of text from chapter 19 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, pages 385–389 (from “Anything I do today, I regard as urgent” to “Only the mistakes have been mine”). In this passage, Malcolm X reflects on his life as well as what he hopes the book will accomplish in terms of educating others about the realities of African-American life during his time. Malcolm X speculates about his death and how he will be portrayed negatively after he passes away, but takes solace in the fact that he has worked in the “American black man’s” best interests. Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson: Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 19.

For homework, students review their notes, annotations, and optional tools on the text of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, focusing specifically on key events that interact to develop central ideas, in preparation for the End-of-Unit Assessment.

Standards

Assessed Standard	
RI.11-12.6	Determine an author’s point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.2.f	Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content. f. Provide a concluding statement or section that follows from and supports the information or explanation presented (e.g., articulating implications or the significance of the topic).
W.11-12.3.e	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. e. Provide a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced,

	observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative.
W.11-12.9.b	<p>Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research.</p> <p>b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i>, presidential addresses]”).</p>
L.11-12.4.a	<p>Determine or clarify the meaning of unknown and multiple-meaning words and phrases based on <i>grades 11–12 reading and content</i>, choosing flexibly from a range of strategies.</p> <p>a. Use context (e.g., the overall meaning of a sentence, paragraph, or text; a word’s position or function in a sentence) as a clue to the meaning of a word or phrase.</p>

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a Quick Write at the end of the lesson. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 19.
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify instances of style (e.g., figurative language and parallel structure). Identify instances of content (e.g., Malcolm X’s discussions with television hosts). Analyze how these instances of style contribute to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 19 (e.g., Malcolm X uses figurative language and parallel structure to describe the path that his life has taken and to connect this path to the struggle of the “black man” in society as a whole. After describing how difficult his life has been, Malcolm X states, “[I]t is only after the deepest darkness that the greatest joy can come; it is only after slavery and prison that the sweetest appreciation of freedom can come” (p. 387). Malcolm X is placing his life and the struggle of African Americans into a larger metaphor, which contributes to the beauty of the text.). Analyze how these instances of content contribute to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 19 (e.g., Malcolm X reflects on how the white television hosts he appeared with “let [him] see that they respected [his] mind—in a way [he] know[s] they never realized” (p. 388). Malcolm X

explains how these men “would invite [his] opinion on subjects off the race issue” (p. 388). He explains how “most whites never feel that Negroes can contribute anything to other areas of thought, and ideas” (p. 388) besides the race issue. This example demonstrates Malcolm X’s unique experience in life and also adds to the power of the text by showing how most African Americans are not shown the same respect by most white people.).

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)

- temperament (n.) – the usual attitude, mood, or behavior of a person
- propagating (v.) – spreading from person to person
- disinherited (v.) – prevented from having the legal right to receive your money or property after you die

Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)

- malignant (adj.) – very serious and dangerous; tending or likely to grow and spread in a rapid and uncontrolled way that can cause death

Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- anguish (n.) – extreme suffering, grief, or pain

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Standards: RI.11-12.6, W.11-12.2.f, W.11-12.3.e, W.11-12.9.b, L.11-12.4.a • Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley, Chapter 19, pages 385–389 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda 2. Homework Accountability 3. Reading and Discussion 4. Quick Write 5. Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 10% 2. 15% 3. 55% 4. 15% 5. 5%

Materials

- Student copies of the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1) (optional)
- Student copies of the Style and Content Tool (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 5) (optional)—students may need additional blank copies
- Student copies of the Short Response Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 1)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
💬	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
❗	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

10%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: RI.11-12.6. In this lesson, students finish reading *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, analyzing the final excerpt in order to determine the author's purpose as well as how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text.

- Students look at the agenda.

❗ **Differentiation Consideration:** If students are using the 12.1 Common Core Learning Standards Tool, instruct them to refer to it for this portion of the lesson introduction.

Post or project standards W.11-12.2.f and W.11-12.3.e. Instruct students to focus on standard W.11-12.2.f and talk in pairs about how they think the standard applies to their writing. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

- 💬 Student responses should include:

- The standard asks students to provide a conclusion that relates to the rest of the essay.

- The standard asks students to write a conclusion that explains the importance or possible outcomes of the information presented in the essay.

Instruct students to focus on standard W.11-12.3.e and talk in pairs about how they think the standard applies to their writing. Lead a brief discussion about the standard.

💬 Student responses should include:

- The standard asks us to provide a conclusion that relates to the rest of the essay.
- The standard asks us to write a conclusion that flows from and considers the rest of the essay and discusses an observation, experience, or resolution in the narrative.

Ask the whole class:

How does standard W.11-12.2.f compare to standard W.11-12.3.e? How do the standards differ?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Both standards require students to provide a conclusion that follows from the essay.
- Standard W.11-12.2.f requires students to write a conclusion for an informative or explanatory essay, whereas W.11-12.3.e requires students to write a conclusion for a narrative essay.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion.

Inform students that they will focus on W.11-12.2.f in this lesson assessment and as part of their End-of-Unit-Assessment in 12.1.1 Lesson 27. Students will focus on W.11-12.3.e for homework in 12.1.1 Lesson 27 and in 12.1.1 Lesson 28.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Read chapter 19 of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* and develop 2–3 discussion questions focused on how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (RI.11-12.6). Prepare possible answers to your questions for discussion.)

Instruct students to discuss in pairs the questions they developed for homework, specifically analyzing how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text (RI.11-12.6).

💬 Student questions may include:

How does Malcolm X's use of figurative language on page 372 add to the power or beauty of the text?

- Malcolm X explains that as he was recalling memories from his life while in Mecca: “I had played back for myself the twelve years I had spent with Elijah Muhammad as if it were a motion picture” (p. 372). This metaphor contributes to the beauty of the text by making it clear in the reader’s mind how vivid Malcolm X’s memories are for him.

How does Malcolm X explain why he has ““had enough of someone else’s propaganda”” (p. 373)? How does this description contribute to the power of the text?

- Malcolm X states, ““I’m for truth, no matter who tells it. I’m for justice, no matter who it is for or against. I’m a human being first and foremost, and as such I’m for whoever and whatever benefits humanity *as a whole*”” (p. 373). Malcolm X uses repetition to emphasize how he is ““for”” anyone who is being truthful or just, without prejudging who is saying the words. This repetition contributes to the power of the text by showing Malcolm X’s commitment to these ideals of justice, truth, and benefit to humanity.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider instructing students to read the last paragraph of the previous chapter (p. 371) and discuss the question above in relation to this paragraph. Then consider asking the following question:

How does the description on page 373 develop the idea of what it means to be a human being mentioned on page 370?

- Just as Malcolm X demonstrates a wider perspective beyond black and white to the white passenger in the car, he argues for this wider perspective on page 373. He is no longer just for African Americans or Muslims, he is ““for truth, no matter who tells it”” and he is ““for justice, no matter who it is for or against”” (p. 373). Malcolm X summarizes this more open position: ““I’m a human being first and foremost, and as such I’m for whoever and whatever benefits humanity *as a whole*”” (p. 373).
- ① If student discussion is rich, text-dependent, and building toward the assessment prompt, consider extending the discussions beyond the allotted time. Then lead a brief whole-class discussion using any additional Reading and Discussion questions necessary to ensure students are prepared for the assessment. (Key questions are marked with an asterisk*.)
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Style and Content Tools to record stylistic or content choices they identify and discuss.

Activity 3: Reading and Discussion

55%

Instruct students to form pairs. Post or project each set of questions below for students to discuss. Instruct students to continue to annotate the text for rhetorical devices using the code RD as they read

and discuss. Remind students that annotating helps them keep track of evidence they may use in the lesson assessment.

- ① Consider drawing students' attention to their application of standard W.11-12.9.b through the process of drawing evidence from the text to support reflection and analysis.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider posting or projecting the following guiding question to support students throughout the lesson:

How does Malcolm X explain his purpose for writing this book?

- ① If necessary to support comprehension and fluency, consider using a masterful reading of the focus excerpt for the lesson.

Instruct student pairs to reread pages 385–387 (from “Anything I do today, I regard as urgent” to “I know that my shortcomings are many”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

Provide students with the definitions: *temperament* means “the usual attitude, mood, or behavior of a person,” *propagating* means “spreading from person to person,” and *disinherited* means “prevented from having the legal right to receive your money or property after you die.”

- ① Students may be familiar with some of these words. Consider asking students to volunteer the definitions before providing them to the group.
 - ▶ Students write the definitions of *temperament*, *propagating*, and *disinherited* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider providing student with the following definition: *anguish* means “extreme suffering, grief, or pain.”
 - ▶ Students write the definition of *anguish* on their copies of the text or in a vocabulary journal.

Why does Malcolm X consider everything he does as “urgent” (p. 385)?

- 💬 Malcolm X states, “No man is given but so much time to accomplish whatever is his life’s work” (p. 385). He means that the time in his life is limited and there is still more that he wants to accomplish.
- ① **Differentiation Consideration:** Consider asking students to compare Malcolm X’s statement that “No man is given but so much time” (p. 385) with other instances in the text when he references feeling close to death. Consider asking the following:

How does Malcolm X’s statement that “No man is given but so much time” (p. 385) compare with how he references death on page 149 in his encounter with detective Turner?

- Malcolm X describes a confrontation with detective Turner on page 149 in which he says to him, “Don’t you know that if you play with me, you certainly will go down in history because you’ve got to kill me?” (p. 149) He is deliberately putting himself in a dangerous situation. He states, “I was walking on my own coffin” (p. 149). This statement implies that he is taking a chance that he would be killed and he knew it, almost as if he does not value his life. On page 385, however, Malcolm X is worried that he will not have enough time alive to accomplish everything he wants to, which shows that he now values his life highly.

How does the style in the first two paragraphs of this excerpt contribute to the power of the text?

- Student responses may include:
- Malcolm X discusses both himself and people in general when he talks about his feeling of urgency: “Anything I do today, I regard as urgent. No man is given but so much time to accomplish whatever is his life’s work” (p. 385). In this statement, Malcolm X communicates not only his personal urgency to complete his life goals, but a universal urgency for all people to use the time they have to accomplish their life’s work. This statement adds power to the text because it draws readers in by inviting them to join with Malcolm X in pursuing their life goals.
 - Malcolm X speaks directly to the reader to convey the sense of urgency he has about his life: “You have seen how throughout my life, I have often known unexpected drastic changes” (p. 385). Malcolm X includes the reader directly in the conversation and prompts him or her to reflect back on the text and the “drastic changes” Malcolm X has gone through.
 - After speaking generally in the first paragraph, Malcolm X states directly in the second paragraph his belief that he could die at any moment: “I am only facing the facts when I know that any moment of any day, or any night, could bring me death” (p. 385). This direct statement of his morbid thoughts also adds power to the text, by creating a sense of foreboding about Malcolm X’s death.

***How does Malcolm X use repetition to establish his purpose for the book in the first four paragraphs on page 386?**

- Student responses should include:
- Malcolm X repeats the phrase “I think that an objective reader,” and describes what he hopes an “objective reader” (p. 386) will learn from reading the book.
 - Malcolm X uses the repetition of “objective reader” to establish what he hopes his book will accomplish for someone who comes to the book without bias. Malcolm X hopes his book will be a “testimony of some social value” (p. 386) that explains the events in his life (for example, why it was “just about inevitable” that he would end up in prison and why he

responded to the phrase “[t]he white man is the devil” (p. 386) when he first heard it). Malcolm X also hopes that the reader can gain a better “understanding than he has previously had of the black ghettos” (p. 386).

What does Malcolm X describe as “almost impossible” (p. 387)? How does his use of style to refine this description contribute to the power or beauty of the excerpt?

💬 Student responses should include:

- Malcolm X argues that it would be “almost impossible” to find someone who “has lived further down in the mud of human society than I have” (p. 387).
- Malcolm X uses figurative language and parallel structure to describe the path that his life has taken and to connect this path to the struggle of the “black man” in society as a whole. He states, “[I]t is only after the deepest darkness that the greatest joy can come; it is only after slavery and prison that the sweetest appreciation of freedom can come” (p. 387). Malcolm X places his life and the struggle of African Americans into a larger metaphor, which contributes to the beauty of the text.

① Consider reminding students of their work with *parallel structure* in 12.1.1 Lesson 10.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Instruct student pairs to read pages 387–389 (from “My greatest lack has been, I believe” to “Only the mistakes have been mine”) and answer the following questions before sharing out with the class.

How does Malcolm X use figurative language to describe the way his lack of education makes him feel? What is the impact of this figurative language on the meaning of the text?

- 💬 Malcolm X uses a metaphor to explain that listening to people speak in a language he doesn’t understand makes him feel “like some little boy” (p. 387). The impact of the metaphor is to show how strongly Malcolm X’s lack of education affects him and makes him feel “ignorant” (p. 387).

How does Malcolm X’s reflection on how he was treated by the television hosts on page 388 contribute to the power of the text?

- 💬 Malcolm X describes how the hosts “let [him] see that they respected [his] mind—in a way [he] know[s] they never realized” (p. 388). Malcolm X describes how these men “would invite [his] opinion on subjects off the race issue” (p. 388). He explains how “most whites never feel that Negroes can contribute anything to other areas of thought, and ideas” other than the race issue

(p. 388). These statements demonstrate Malcolm X's unique experience in life and also add to the power of the text. By drawing attention to how unusual it was for a white person to respect an African American's mind, Malcolm X demonstrates how prejudice affects African Americans.

How does Malcolm X use the prediction of his death to contribute to the power of the text?

- Malcolm X predicts how the "white man, in his press, is going to identify me with 'hate'" (p. 389). This prediction contributes to the power of the text because it shows why it was important for Malcolm X to write the book in the first place. It was important for Malcolm X to tell his story because he fears the white press will portray him inaccurately after he dies and, therefore, this book can serve as a record of the truth.

***How does the author's use of the words "responsible" and "irresponsible" develop an idea in the text and contribute to the power of the text?**

- By putting the words "responsible" and "irresponsible" in quotation marks, the author is showing that these are labels that "the white man" has given to "the black 'leader'" (p. 389). The author explains how the words are used by the white press to portray one type of "leader" as "'responsible,'" because he is "invariably the black 'leader' who never gets any results" while calling Malcolm X "'irresponsible'" because he argues for action (p. 389). The use of the words "responsible" and "irresponsible" in quotation marks develops the idea of systemic oppression because it shows how white people try to prevent African-American leaders from acting by labeling them with positive and negative terms. The use of the words "responsible" and "irresponsible" add power to the text by using the white press's own words against them.

How does Malcolm X describe racism in the last paragraph? What effect does he hope he has had on racism?

- Malcolm X describes racism as a "cancer that is malignant in the body of America" (p. 389), explaining that if he has "exposed any meaningful truth that will help to destroy" it, then "the credit is due to Allah" (p. 389).

How does this description help you to define the word *malignant* in this context?

- Malcolm X uses *malignant* to describe how racism acts as a cancer throughout America. *Malignant* is therefore describing the way cancer grows and spreads quickly.

① Consider drawing students' attention to their application of standard L.11-12.4.a through the process of using context and to make meaning of a word.

***What stylistic choices in the last paragraph contribute to the power and purpose of the text?**

Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X uses quotation marks to indicate that other people describe him as a “demagogue,” which is a role he explains he has “cherished” (p. 389). Malcolm X describes how “societies often have killed the people who have helped to change those societies,” which explains why he has “cherished” his role as a “demagogue” (p. 389). Malcolm X uses quotation marks to take a negative word that others have used to describe him and make it something positive. This stylistic choice contributes to power and purpose of the text by contrasting how others view Malcolm X and how he views himself.
- Malcolm X uses figurative language by describing the “light” of truth and his hope that it “will help to destroy the racist cancer” in America (p. 389). This metaphor develops the purpose of the text by summarizing his hope that his life has had a positive influence in transforming America. The figurative language also contributes to the power of the text by comparing racism to cancer and developing a strong image of its negative influence in America.

① Consider reminding students of their work with the word *demagogue* in 12.1.1 Lesson 17. If necessary, remind students that *demagogue* means “a person, especially an orator or political leader, who gains power and popularity by arousing the emotions, passions, and prejudices of the people.”

① **Differentiation Consideration:** Students may use their Style and Content Tools to record examples of stylistic or content choices they identify and discuss.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Activity 4: Quick Write

15%

Instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze how style and content contribute to the power or beauty of the text in chapter 19.

Instruct students to look at their annotations and notes to find evidence. Remind students to provide a concluding statement or section that follows from and supports the information or explanation presented. Ask students to use this lesson’s vocabulary wherever possible in their written responses. Remind students to use the Short Response Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ▶ Students listen and read the Quick Write prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent Quick Write.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt, using evidence from the text.
- 🗨 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

Activity 5: Closing

5%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to review their notes, annotations, and optional tools on the text of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, focusing specifically on key events that interact to develop central ideas, in preparation for the End-of-Unit Assessment.

- ▶ Students follow along.

Homework

Review your notes, annotations, and optional tools on the text of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, focusing specifically on key events that interact to develop central ideas, in preparation for the End-of-Unit Assessment.

Model Style and Content Tool

Name:		Class:		Date:	
--------------	--	---------------	--	--------------	--

Directions: Use this tool to track the stylistic or content choices you encounter in the text, as well as examples and explanations of these choices. Be sure to note the rhetorical effect of each choice on the text.

RI.11-12.6: Determine an author's point of view or purpose in a text in which the rhetoric is particularly effective, analyzing how style and content contribute to the power, persuasiveness, or beauty of the text.

Rhetoric: the specific techniques that writers or speakers use to create meaning in a text, enhance a text or a lecture, and often, persuade readers or listeners

Style: how the author expresses content, which frequently includes the use of figurative language or rhetorical devices

Content: what the author writes, including events, ideas, and details the author chooses to include

Point of View: an author's opinion, attitude, or judgment

Purpose: an author's reason for writing

Example of style (figurative language or rhetorical device) or content (events, ideas, details) (with page reference)	Rhetorical effect (power, beauty, point of view, purpose)
Repetition: "I'm for truth, no matter who tells it. I'm for justice, no matter who it is for or against. I'm a human being first and foremost, and as such I'm for whoever and whatever benefits humanity as a whole." (p. 373)	Malcolm X uses repetition to emphasize how he is "for" anyone who is being truthful or just, without prejudging who is saying the words. This repetition contributes to the power of the text by showing Malcolm X's commitment to these ideals of justice, truth, and benefit to humanity.
Parallel Structure: "But it is only after the deepest darkness that the greatest joy can come; it is only after slavery and prison that the sweetest appreciation of freedom can come." (p. 387)	Malcolm X uses figurative language and parallel structure to describe the path that his life has taken and to connect this path to the struggle of the "black man" in society as a whole. He states, "[I]t is only after the deepest darkness that the greatest joy can come; it is only after slavery and prison that the sweetest appreciation of freedom can come" (p. 387). Malcolm X is placing his life and the struggle of African Americans into a larger metaphor, which contributes to the beauty of the

	text.
Figurative Language: Malcolm X describes his hope that if he can “die having brought any light, having exposed any meaningful truth that will help to destroy the racist cancer” in America, then “all of the credit is due to Allah” (p. 389).	Malcolm X uses figurative language, describing the light of truth and racism as a cancer. This metaphor contributes to the power of the text by demonstrating his hope that his life has had a positive influence on the negative aspects of America that he has identified throughout the text.

12.1.1

Lesson 27

Introduction

In this lesson, students complete the End-of-Unit Assessment. Students apply the writing skills they learned throughout this module and draw upon their analysis of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* to craft a formal, multi-paragraph response to the following prompt: Analyze how three key events in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* interact to develop one or more central ideas in the text.

Students review their annotated text, lesson Quick Writes, discussion notes, homework notes, and optional tools to organize their ideas. Students then develop essays that convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content. The End-of-Unit Assessment is assessed using the 12.1.1 End-of-Unit Text Analysis Rubric.

For homework, students respond in writing to the following prompt: Analyze how the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* provides a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative. Also for homework, students reread their personal narratives from 12.1.1 Lesson 24 and consider whether they would like to expand them into longer compositions or whether they would like to try a different Common Application prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 28.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
RI.11-12.2	Determine two or more central ideas of a text and analyze their development over the course of the text, including how they interact and build on one another to provide a complex analysis; provide an objective summary of the text.
RI.11-12.3	Analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.

W.11-12.2.a-f	<p>Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> a. Introduce a topic; organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; include formatting (e.g., headings), graphics (e.g., figures, tables), and multimedia when useful to aiding comprehension. b. Develop the topic thoroughly by selecting the most significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience’s knowledge of the topic. c. Use appropriate and varied transitions and syntax to link the major sections of the text, create cohesion, and clarify the relationships among complex ideas and concepts. d. Use precise language, domain-specific vocabulary, and techniques such as metaphor, simile, and analogy to manage the complexity of the topic. e. Establish and maintain a formal style and objective tone while attending to the norms and conventions of the discipline in which they are writing. f. Provide a concluding statement or section that follows from and supports the information or explanation presented (e.g., articulating implications or the significance of the topic).
W.11-12.9.b	<p>Draw evidence from literary or informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Apply <i>grades 11–12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction (e.g., “Delineate and evaluate the reasoning in seminal U.S. texts, including the application of constitutional principles and use of legal reasoning [e.g., in U.S. Supreme Court Case majority opinions and dissents] and the premises, purposes, and arguments in works of public advocacy [e.g., <i>The Federalist</i>, presidential addresses]”).
L.11-12.1	<p>Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English grammar and usage when writing or speaking.</p>
L.11-12.2.b	<p>Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English capitalization, punctuation, and spelling when writing.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> b. Spell correctly.

Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.e	<p>Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences.</p> <p>e. Provide a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative.</p>

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a multi-paragraph response to the End-of-Unit Assessment. Students respond to the following prompt, citing textual evidence to support analysis and inferences drawn from the text.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Analyze how three key events in <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> interact to develop one or more central ideas in the text. <p>① Student responses will be evaluated using the 12.1.1 End-of-Unit Text Analysis Rubric.</p>
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Identify three key events (e.g., Mr. Ostrowski's advice, Malcolm's arrest and sentencing, the press conference when Malcolm X returns from abroad). Identify one or more central ideas (e.g., systemic oppression, racial identity, integration versus separation, solidarity). Analyze how the three key events interact to develop one or more of the central ideas (for examples, see below). <p>A High Performance Response may include the following evidence in support of multi-paragraph analysis:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In seventh grade, Malcolm X tells his English teacher, Mr. Ostrowski, that he wants to become a lawyer. However, Mr. Ostrowski does not think this is an appropriate career path, instead advising Malcolm that being "[a] lawyer—that's no realistic goal for a nigger ... Why don't you plan on carpentry?" (p. 38). Through this event, the author develops the central idea of systemic oppression. Although Malcolm is "one of his top students, one of the school's top students" (p. 37), Mr. Ostrowski cannot imagine that Malcolm could ever be a lawyer because of Malcolm's race. To Mr. Ostrowski, Malcolm's race determines his role in society. Malcolm X observes that Mr. Ostrowski encourages all of the white students in his class to pursue their goals, but "all he could see for [Malcolm] was the kind of future 'in your place' that almost all white people see for black people" (p. 37). With this event, the author highlights the first time that Malcolm X self-consciously

begins to uncover the systemic oppression that he faces throughout his life. Malcolm knows he “[is] smarter than nearly all of those white kids. But apparently [he] was still not intelligent enough, in their eyes, to become whatever [he] wanted to be” (p. 38), emphasizing that it is Malcolm’s race, not his ability, that prevents him from pursuing his dreams.

- Building on Malcolm X’s previous experiences and observations, the author continues to develop the central idea of systemic oppression through the arrest and sentencing of Malcolm, Shorty, Sophia, and Sophia’s sister. Malcolm and Shorty each have bail set at \$10,000, but the women’s bail is set much lower because of their race: “[t]hey were still white—burglars or not. Their worst crime was their involvement with Negroes” (p. 152). Malcolm X expresses that the social workers and other officials were not concerned with the crime of robbery; rather, they focused on race, because “[a]ll they could see was that [Malcolm and Shorty] had taken the white man’s women” (p. 153). Indeed, Malcolm X later learns that he and Shorty should have received only about two years for first-time burglary, but Malcolm X reflects that they “weren’t going to get the average—not for [their] crime” (p. 153). Because the white court officials focus more on Malcolm’s race than his crime of robbery, they sentence him to 10 years in prison instead of two, developing the idea that systemic oppression consistently disadvantages African Americans.
- Immediately upon Malcolm X’s return to the United States following his visit to Africa and the Middle East, a large group of reporters confront him, blaming him for igniting the “long, hot summer’s predicted explosions” (p. 367). While describing this event, the author further develops the central idea of systemic oppression as Malcolm X highlights the difference between how white people and African-American people are treated in America. When young white people murdered others, he explains, this is labeled as a “‘sociological’ problem. But when black youth killed somebody, the power structure was looking to hang somebody” (p. 368). Malcolm X goes on to note that when African-American men are lynched, society is passive; however, as soon as African-American people express the same desire as white people to protect themselves by exercising their Constitutional right to “hav[e] rifles in their homes, that was ‘ominous’” (p. 368). Systemic oppression is something that Malcolm X personally experienced not only as an individual African-American in the classroom and in the courtroom, but systemic oppression is also something he witnessed throughout society.

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)

- None.*

Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)

- None.*

Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)

- None.*

*Because this is not a close reading lesson, there is no specified vocabulary. However, in the process of returning to the text, students may uncover unfamiliar words. Teachers can guide students to make meaning of these words by following the protocols described in 1e of this document http://www.engageny.org/sites/default/files/resource/attachments/9-12_ela_prefatory_material.pdf.

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: RI.11-12.2, RI.11-12.3, W.11-12.2.a-f, W.11-12.9.b, L.11-12.1, L.11-12.2.b, W.11-12.3.e Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Introduction of Lesson Agenda 2. Homework Accountability 3. 12.1.1 End-of-Unit Assessment 4. Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 5% 2. 10% 3. 75% 4. 10%

Materials

- Copies of the 12.1.1 End-of-Unit Assessment for each student
- Copies of the 12.1.1 End-of-Unit Text Analysis Rubric and Checklist for each student

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
☞	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.



Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

5%

Begin by reviewing the agenda and assessed standards for this lesson: RI.11-12.2, RI.11-12.3, W.11-12.2.a-f, W.11-12.9.b, L.11-12.1, L.11-12.2.b. In this lesson, students complete the End-of-Unit Assessment in which they present evidence identifying three key events and analyzing how these events interact to develop one or more central ideas in the text.

- ▶ Students look at the agenda.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

10%

Instruct students to take out the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Review your notes, annotations, and optional tools on the text of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*, focusing specifically on key events that interact to develop central ideas, in preparation for the End-of-Unit Assessment.)

Instruct students to talk in pairs to briefly share and compare their notes, annotations, and optional tools in preparation for the End-of-Unit Assessment.

- ▶ Student pairs discuss their notes, annotations, and tools.

Activity 3: 12.1.1 End-of-Unit Assessment

75%

Explain to students that because it is a formal writing task, the End-of-Unit Assessment should include an introductory statement, well-organized ideas supported by the most significant and relevant evidence, and a concluding statement or section. Students should use appropriate and varied transitions and syntax to clarify relationships among complex ideas, and use precise language and domain-specific vocabulary. Remind students to use this unit's vocabulary, as well as proper grammar, capitalization, punctuation, and spelling in their responses to establish a formal style and objective tone.

Instruct students to write a multi-paragraph response to the following prompt:

Analyze how three key events in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* interact to develop one or more central ideas in the text.

Distribute and review the 12.1.1 End-of-Unit Text Analysis Rubric and Checklist. Remind students to use the Text Analysis Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

- ① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Instruct students to use the remaining class period to write their End-of-Unit Assessment.

- ▶ Students independently answer the prompt using evidence from the text.

See the High Performance Response at the beginning of the lesson.

① Consider encouraging students who finish early to reread and revise their response.

Activity 4: Closing

10%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. For homework, instruct students to respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze how the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* provides a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative.

① Consider drawing students' attention to their work with W.11-12.3.e as they analyze how the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* provides a conclusion to his text.

Additionally, instruct students to reread their personal narratives from 12.1.1 Lesson 24 and consider whether they would like to expand them into longer compositions or whether they would like to try a different Common Application prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 28.

- ▶ Students follow along.

Homework

Respond briefly in writing to the following prompt:

Analyze how the author of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* provides a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative.

Additionally, reread your personal narrative from 12.1.1 Lesson 24 and consider whether you would like to expand it into a longer composition or whether you would like to try a different Common Application prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 28.

12.1.1 End-of-Unit Assessment

Text-Based Response

Your Task: Rely on your reading and analysis of *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* to write a well-developed response to the following prompt:

*Analyze how three key events in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X* interact to develop one or more central ideas in the text.*

Your response will be assessed using the 12.1.1 End-of-Unit Text Analysis Rubric.

Guidelines

Be sure to:

- Closely read the prompt
- Organize your ideas and evidence
- Develop a claim that responds directly to all parts of the prompt
- Cite strong and thorough textual evidence to support your analysis
- Follow the conventions of standard written English

CCSS: RI.11-12.2, RI.11-12.3, W.11-12.2.a-f, W.11-12.9.b, L.11-12.1, L.11-12.2.b

Commentary on the Task:

This task measures RI.11-12.2 because it demands that students:

- Determine two or more central ideas of a text and analyze their development over the course of the text, including how they interact and build on one another to provide a complex analysis; provide an objective summary of the text.

This task measures RI.11-12.3 because it demands that students:

- Analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.

This task measures W.11-12.2.a-f because it demands that students:

- Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content.
 - Introduce a topic; organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; include formatting (e.g., headings), graphics (e.g., figures, tables), and multimedia when useful to aiding comprehension.
 - Develop the topic thoroughly by selecting the most significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience's knowledge

of the topic.

- Use appropriate and varied transitions and syntax to link the major sections of the text, create cohesion, and clarify the relationships among complex ideas and concepts.
- Use precise language, domain-specific vocabulary, and techniques such as metaphor, simile, and analogy to manage the complexity of the topic.
- Establish and maintain a formal style and objective tone while attending to the norms and conventions of the discipline in which they are writing.
- Provide a concluding statement or section that follows from and supports the information or explanation presented (e.g., articulating implications or the significance of the topic).

This task measures W.11-12.9.b because it demands that students:

- Draw evidence from informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research.

This task measures L.11-12.1 because it demands that students:

- Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English grammar and usage when writing or speaking.

This task measures L.11-12.2.b because it demands that students:

- Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English capitalization, punctuation, and spelling when writing.

12.1.1 End-of-Unit Text Analysis Rubric

____/____ (Total points)

Criteria	4 – Responses at this Level:	3 – Responses at this Level:	2 – Responses at this Level:	1 – Responses at this Level:
Content and Analysis The extent to which the response determines two or more central ideas of a text and analyzes in detail their development over the course of the text, including how they interact and build on one another; and provides an objective summary of a text. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.RI.11-12.2 Determine two or more central ideas of a text and analyze their development over the course of the text, including how they interact and build on one another to provide a complex analysis; provide an objective summary of the text.	Precisely determine two or more central ideas of a text and skillfully analyze their development by providing precise and sufficient examples of how the central ideas interact and build on one another; (when necessary) provide a concise and accurate objective summary of a text.	Accurately determine two or more central ideas of a text and accurately analyze their development by providing relevant and sufficient examples of how the central ideas interact and build on one another; (when necessary) provide an accurate objective summary of a text.	Determine two central ideas of a text and with partial accuracy, analyze their development by providing relevant but insufficient examples of how the central ideas interact and build on one another; (when necessary) provide a partially accurate and somewhat objective summary of a text.	Fail to determine at least two central ideas of a text or inaccurately determine the central ideas of a text. Provide no examples or irrelevant and insufficient examples of how the central ideas interact and build on one another; (when necessary) provide a lengthy, inaccurate, or subjective summary of a text.
Content and Analysis The extent to which the response analyzes a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and explains how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.RI.11-12.3 Analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop over the course of the text.	Skillfully analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and thoroughly explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop.	Accurately analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop.	With partial accuracy, analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and partially explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop.	Inaccurately analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events and minimally explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop.

Criteria	4 – Responses at this Level:	3 – Responses at this Level:	2 – Responses at this Level:	1 – Responses at this Level:
Command of Evidence and Reasoning The extent to which the response thoroughly develops the topic through the effective selection and analysis of the most significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience’s knowledge of the topic. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.2 Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.2.b Develop the topic thoroughly by selecting the most significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience’s knowledge of the topic.	Thoroughly and skillfully develop the analysis with the most significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience’s knowledge of the topic. (W.11-12.2.b)	Develop the analysis with significant and relevant facts, extended definitions, concrete details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience’s knowledge of the topic. (W.11-12.2.b)	Partially develop the analysis with weak facts, extended definitions, details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience’s knowledge of the topic. (W.11-12.2.b)	Minimally develop the analysis, providing few or irrelevant facts, extended definitions, details, quotations, or other information and examples appropriate to the audience’s knowledge of the topic. (W.11-12.2.b)
Command of Evidence and Reasoning The extent to which the response draws evidence from informational texts to support analysis, reflection, or research.	Skillfully utilize textual evidence from informational texts to support analysis, reflection, or research.	Accurately utilize textual evidence from informational texts to support analysis, reflection, or research.	Somewhat effectively or with partial accuracy utilize textual evidence from informational texts to support analysis, reflection, or research.	Ineffectively or inaccurately utilize textual evidence from informational texts to support analysis, reflection, or research.

Criteria	4 – Responses at this Level:	3 – Responses at this Level:	2 – Responses at this Level:	1 – Responses at this Level:
CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.9.b Draw evidence from informational texts to support analysis, reflection, and research; apply <i>grades 11-12 Reading standards</i> to literary nonfiction.				
Coherence, Organization, and Style The extent to which the response introduces a topic and organizes complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; when useful to aiding comprehension, includes formatting, graphics, and multimedia. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.2 Write informative/explanatory texts to examine and convey complex ideas, concepts, and information clearly and accurately through the effective selection, organization, and analysis of content. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.2.a Introduce a topic; organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; include formatting (e.g., headings), graphics (e.g., figures, tables), and multimedia when useful to aiding comprehension.	Skillfully introduce a topic; effectively organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element clearly builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; when useful to aiding comprehension, skillfully include formatting, graphics, and multimedia. (W.11-12.2.a) Skillfully use appropriate and varied transitions and syntax to link the major sections of the text, create cohesion, and clarify the relationships among complex ideas and concepts. (W.11-12.2.c) Skillfully use precise language, domain-specific vocabulary, and techniques such as metaphor, simile, and analogy to manage the complexity of the topic. (W.11-12.2.d) Skillfully establish and maintain a formal style and objective tone that is appropriate for the norms and conventions of the discipline. (W.11-12.2.e) Provide a concluding statement or section that clearly follows from and skillfully supports the information or explanation presented. (W.11-12.2.f)	Introduce a topic; organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole; when useful to aiding comprehension, include formatting, graphics, and multimedia. (W.11-12.2.a) Effectively use appropriate and varied transitions and syntax to link the major sections of the text, create cohesion, and clarify the relationships among complex ideas and concepts. (W.11-12.2.c) Use precise language, domain-specific vocabulary, and techniques such as metaphor, simile, and analogy to manage the complexity of the topic. (W.11-12.2.d) Establish a formal style and objective tone that is appropriate for the norms and conventions of the discipline. (W.11-12.2.e) Provide a concluding statement or section that follows from and supports the information or explanation presented. (W.11-12.2.f)	Ineffectively introduce a topic; organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element partially builds on that which precedes it to create a loosely unified whole; when useful to aiding comprehension, somewhat effectively include formatting, graphics, and multimedia. (W.11-12.2.a) Somewhat effectively use transitions or use unvaried transitions and syntax to link the major sections of the text, creating limited cohesion or clarity in the relationships among complex ideas and concepts. (W.11-12.2.c) Inconsistently use precise language, domain-specific vocabulary, and techniques such as metaphor, simile, and analogy to manage the complexity of the topic. (W.11-12.2.d) Establish but fail to maintain a formal style and objective tone that is appropriate for the norms and conventions of the discipline. (W.11-12.2.e) Provide a concluding statement or section that loosely follows from and so ineffectively supports the information or explanation presented.	Lack a clear a topic; illogically arrange ideas, concepts, and information, failing to create a unified whole; when useful to aiding comprehension, ineffectively include formatting, graphics, and multimedia. (W.11-12.2.a) Ineffectively use transitions and syntax to link the major sections of the text, creating incoherent or unclear relationships among complex ideas and concepts. (W.11-12.2.c) Rarely or inaccurately use precise language, domain-specific vocabulary, simile, and analogy to manage the complexity of the topic. (W.11-12.2.d) Lack a formal style and objective tone that adheres to the norms and conventions of the discipline. (W.11-12.2.e) Provide a concluding statement or section that does not follow from or support the information or explanation presented. (W.11-12.2.f)

Criteria	4 – Responses at this Level:	3 – Responses at this Level:	2 – Responses at this Level:	1 – Responses at this Level:
<p>The extent to which the response uses appropriate and varied transitions and syntax to link the major sections of the text, create cohesion, and clarify the relationships among complex ideas and concepts.</p> <p>CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.2.c</p> <p>Use appropriate and varied transitions and syntax to link the major sections of the text, create cohesion, and clarify the relationships among complex ideas and concepts.</p> <p>The extent to which the response includes and uses precise language, domain-specific vocabulary, and techniques such as metaphor, simile, and analogy to manage the complexity of the topic.</p> <p>CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.2.d</p> <p>Use precise language, domain-specific vocabulary, and techniques such as metaphor, simile, and analogy to manage the complexity of the topic.</p> <p>The extent to which the response properly establishes and maintains a formal style and objective tone as well as adheres to the writing conventions of the discipline.</p> <p>CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.2.e</p>			(W.11-12.2.f)	

Criteria	4 – Responses at this Level:	3 – Responses at this Level:	2 – Responses at this Level:	1 – Responses at this Level:
<p>Establish and maintain a formal style and objective tone while attending to the norms and conventions of the discipline in which they are writing.</p> <p>The extent to which the response provides a concluding statement or section that follows from and supports the information or explanation presented (e.g., articulating implications or the significance of the topic).</p> <p>CCSS.ELA-Literacy.W.11-12.2.f</p> <p>Provide a concluding statement or section that follows from and supports the information or explanation presented (e.g., articulating implications or the significance of the topic).</p>				
<p>Control of Conventions</p> <p>The extent to which the response demonstrates command of the conventions of standard English grammar, usage, capitalization, punctuation, and spelling.</p> <p>CCSS.ELA-Literacy.L.11-12.1</p> <p>CCSS.ELA-Literacy.L.11-12.2</p> <p>Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English grammar, usage, capitalization, punctuation, and spelling when writing or speaking.</p>	Demonstrate skillful command of conventions with no grammar, usage, capitalization, punctuation, or spelling errors.	Demonstrate command of conventions with occasional grammar, usage, capitalization, punctuation, or spelling errors that do not hinder comprehension.	Demonstrate partial command of conventions with several grammar, usage, capitalization, punctuation, or spelling errors that hinder comprehension.	Demonstrate insufficient command of conventions with frequent grammar, usage, capitalization, punctuation, or spelling errors that make comprehension difficult.
Control of Conventions	Spell correctly with no errors. (L.11-	Often spell correctly with occasional errors that do not hinder	Occasionally spell correctly with several errors that hinder	Rarely spell correctly with frequent errors that make comprehension

Criteria	4 – Responses at this Level:	3 – Responses at this Level:	2 – Responses at this Level:	1 – Responses at this Level:
The extent to which the response is spelled correctly. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.L.11-12.2 Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English capitalization, punctuation, and spelling when writing or speaking. CCSS.ELA-Literacy.L.11-12.2.b Spell correctly.	12.2.b)	comprehension. (L.11-12.2.b)	comprehension. (L.11-12.2.b)	difficult. (L.11-12.2.b)

- A response that is a personal response and makes little or no reference to the task or text can be scored no higher than a 1.
- A response that is totally copied from the text with no original writing must be given a 0.
- A response that is totally unrelated to the task, illegible, incoherent, blank, or unrecognizable as English must be scored as a 0.

12.1.1 End-of-Unit Text Analysis Checklist

Assessed Standards: _____

	Does my response...	✓
Content and Analysis	Identify two or more central ideas from the text and analyze their development? (RI.11-12.2)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Provide examples to support analysis of how the central ideas interact and build on one another? (RI.11-12.2)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	If necessary, include a brief summary of the text to frame the development of the central ideas? (RI.11-12.2)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Analyze a complex set of ideas or sequence of events? (RI.11-12.3)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Explain how specific individuals, ideas, or events interact and develop? (RI.11-12.3)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Command of Evidence and Reasoning	Develop the response with the most significant and relevant textual evidence? (W.11-12.2.b)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Utilize textual evidence to support analysis, reflection, or research? (W.11-12.9.b)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Coherence, Organization, and Style	Introduce a topic? (W.11-12.2.a)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Organize complex ideas, concepts, and information so that each new element builds on that which precedes it to create a unified whole? (W.11-12.2.a)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	When useful to aiding comprehension, include formatting, graphics, and multimedia? (W.11-12.2.a)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Use appropriate and varied transitions and syntax to link the major sections of the text, create cohesion, and clarify the relationships among complex ideas and concepts? (W.11-12.2.c)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Use precise language, domain-specific vocabulary, and techniques such as metaphor, simile, and analogy to manage the complexity of the topic? (W.11-12.2.d)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Establish a formal style and objective tone that is appropriate for the norms and conventions of the	<input type="checkbox"/>

	discipline? (W.11-12.2.e)	
	Provide a concluding statement or section that follows from and supports the explanation or analysis? (W.11-12.2.f)	<input type="checkbox"/>
Control of Conventions	Demonstrate command of the conventions of standard English grammar, usage, capitalization, punctuation, and spelling? (L.11-12.1, L.11-12.2)	<input type="checkbox"/>
	Demonstrate accurate spelling? (L.11-12.2.b)	<input type="checkbox"/>

12.1.1

Lesson 28

Introduction


In this lesson, students draft or revise a response to a Common Application essay prompt, practicing W.11-12.3.e to help them create a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of their essays. Student learning is assessed via their draft conclusions.

For homework, students begin searching for an Accountable Independent Reading (AIR) text.

Standards

Assessed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.e	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. e. Provide a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative.
Addressed Standard(s)	
W.11-12.3.f	Write narratives to develop real or imagined experiences or events using effective technique, well-chosen details, and well-structured event sequences. f. Adapt voice, awareness of audience, and use of language to accommodate a variety of cultural contexts.
W.11-12.4	Produce clear and coherent writing in which the development, organization, and style are appropriate to task, purpose, and audience.
W.11-12.5	Develop and strengthen writing as needed by planning, revising, editing, rewriting, or trying a new approach, focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific purpose and audience.

Assessment

Assessment(s)
<p>Student learning is assessed via a response to the following prompt.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Draft a paragraph in response to a Common Application essay prompt, focusing on providing a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of their narrative. <p> This assessment will be evaluated using the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric.</p>
High Performance Response(s)
<p>A High Performance Response should:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Revise and expand upon the response to the narrative prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 24, adding a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the essay (e.g., I am eager to continue my life journey at a college where my passion, entrepreneurial spirit, and desire to effect social change can intersect and be ignited by a powerful educational experience. In business and in service to others, I can only imagine all the places my shoes will take me next.). <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Begin a new draft to a different Common Application prompt, adding a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the essay.

Vocabulary

Vocabulary to provide directly (will not include extended instruction)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*
Vocabulary to teach (may include direct word work and/or questions)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*
Additional vocabulary to support English Language Learners (to provide directly)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> None.*

*Because this is not a close reading lesson, there is no specified vocabulary. However, in the process of returning to the text, students may uncover unfamiliar words. Teachers can guide students to make meaning of these words by following the protocols described in 1e of this document http://www.engageny.org/sites/default/files/resource/attachments/9-12_ela_prefatory_material.pdf.

Lesson Agenda/Overview

Student-Facing Agenda	% of Lesson
Standards & Text: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Standards: W.11-12.3.e, W.11-12.3.f, W.11-12.4, W.11-12.5 Text: <i>The Autobiography of Malcolm X</i> as told to Alex Haley 	
Learning Sequence: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> Introduction of Lesson Agenda Homework Accountability Writing Instruction: Conclusions Drafting Closing 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5% 15% 20% 50% 10%

Materials

- Student copies of their personal narratives (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 24)
- Student copies of the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist (refer to 12.1.1 Lesson 2)

Learning Sequence

How to Use the Learning Sequence	
Symbol	Type of Text & Interpretation of the Symbol
10%	Percentage indicates the percentage of lesson time each activity should take.
no symbol	Plain text indicates teacher action.
	Bold text indicates questions for the teacher to ask students.
	<i>Italicized text indicates a vocabulary word.</i>
►	Indicates student action(s).
☞	Indicates possible student response(s) to teacher questions.
①	Indicates instructional notes for the teacher.

Activity 1: Introduction of Lesson Agenda

5%

Begin by reviewing the lesson agenda and the assessed standard for this lesson: W.11-12.3.e. Inform students that they continue their work with the Common Application essay prompts, using the assessed

standard to guide their writing. This work supports W.11-12.3.f, W.11-12.4, and W.11-12.5, which ask students to produce writing focusing on addressing what is most significant for a specific task, purpose, and audience.

- ▶ Students look at the agenda.

Activity 2: Homework Accountability

15%

Instruct students to take out their responses to the previous lesson's homework assignment. (Respond briefly in writing to the following prompt: Analyze how the author provides a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative.) Instruct students to form pairs and share their responses.

☛ Student responses should include:

- Malcolm X describes his experiences and shares his thoughts essentially in the chronological order of his life. The conclusion follows in this sequential order, ending with his thoughts in the present time of the book's ending. Malcolm X explains that "now, each day I live as if I am already dead" (p. 388), and he speculates on what will happen after his death: "that the white man, in his press, is going to identify me with 'hate'" (p. 389).
- In the conclusion, Malcolm X reflects on what he has experienced in his life and on how these experiences relate to the wider social situation. For the readers of the book, Malcolm X hopes that they "may see how in the society to which [he] was exposed as a black youth here in America, for [him] to wind up in a prison was really just about inevitable. It happens to so many thousands of black youth" (p. 386).

Instruct students to discuss in pairs the second part of the homework assignment. (Reread your personal narrative from 12.1.1 Lesson 24 and consider whether you would like to expand it into a longer composition or whether you would like to try a different Common Application prompt in 12.1.1 Lesson 28.) Instruct students to review their statements of purpose from 12.1.1 Lesson 24 and consider which Common Application prompt allows them to best complete their purposes.

- ▶ Students discuss their decisions regarding the Common Application essay.

Activity 3: Writing Instruction: Conclusions

20%

Explain to students that this part of the lesson focuses on adding to their Common Application responses by writing a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of their essay.

Ask students to Think, Pair, Share about the following question:

What is the purpose of providing a conclusion in a narrative piece of writing?

💬 Student responses may include:

- A conclusion provides an ending for a narrative, giving the author the space to finish conveying what he or she wants to communicate.
- A conclusion is the end point for the smooth progression of experiences or events established earlier in the narrative.
- A conclusion may bring together important points or settle unresolved problems.
- A conclusion may demonstrate the development of central ideas or individuals.
- A conclusion may introduce new, yet related, ideas to encourage the reader to continue thinking beyond the conclusion of the narrative.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses.

Remind students that a conclusion in a narrative piece of writing both “follows from” and “reflects on” the material preceding it in the piece. Explain that the length of a conclusion will vary depending on the length of the entire text. The conclusion to a longer piece of writing (e.g., an autobiography, novel, or memoir) may be several pages long, but the conclusion to a shorter piece of writing (e.g., a narrative essay) may be only one or two paragraphs. Although there is no set length required for a conclusion, students should always be concise and let the task, purpose, audience, and length of the entire piece guide the writer’s decision.

Inform students that to write a conclusion that “follows from ... what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative” means that the conclusion should present a logical ending to the material preceding it. The conclusion should clearly connect to the same ideas, experiences, or individuals explored in the narrative. A conclusion that follows from the preceding material may summarize, build upon, or comment on the ideas or experiences developed in the narrative. A conclusion may also settle unresolved problems or tie together separate plot lines of the narrative.

Provide students with the following example of a conclusion that “follows from ... what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative”:

- “I think that an objective reader may see how in the society to which I was exposed as a black youth here in America, for me to wind up in a prison was really just about inevitable. It happens to so many thousands of black youth. I think that an objective reader may see how when I heard ‘The white man is the devil,’ when I played back what had been my own experiences, it was inevitable that I would respond positively; then the next twelve years of my life were devoted and dedicated to propagating that phrase among the black people” (p. 386).

① Consider explaining to students that this example is not the entire conclusion; rather, it is part of a larger concluding section in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*.

Ask the whole class:

How does this section of the conclusion follow from what Malcolm X has experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative?

💬 Student responses may include:

- This example logically continues out of the narrative of Malcolm X's life, because it refers to experiences and ideas explored earlier in the narrative.
- Malcolm X comments on the central idea of systemic oppression by referring to his experiences "as a black youth" and the time he spent in prison (p. 386) to recall the past and bring the narrative toward an ending.
- Malcolm X builds on his experiences with the central idea of systematic oppression by relating his individual experiences "as a black youth" to the experiences of "many thousands of black youth" (p. 386) in the wider society.

Explain that a conclusion also "reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative." In a conclusion, the writer should convey his or her thinking about the experiences, observations, or resolutions in the narrative, telling the reader why the piece as a whole is significant. A conclusion that reflects on the text preceding it may introduce a new, yet related, idea or way of thinking about the ideas, experiences, and individuals in the narrative. A conclusion may also encourage the reader to continue thinking about the ideas or experiences explored in the text even after the text ends.

Provide students with the following example of a concluding statement that "reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative":

- "And if I can die having brought any light, having exposed any meaningful truth that will help to destroy the racist cancer that is malignant in the body of America—then, all of the credit is due to Allah. Only the mistakes have been mine" (p. 389).

① Consider reminding students that this example is not the entire conclusion; rather, it is part of a larger concluding section in *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*.

Ask the whole class:

How does Malcolm X reflect on what has experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of the narrative?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Malcolm X reflects on the purpose and importance of sharing his life's story.

- By concluding with his desire to credit Allah for any positive outcomes, Malcolm X demonstrates how influential his experience with Islam has been in his life and work.
- By repeating his desire to “destroy the racist cancer” (p. 389) that he believes is ruining America, Malcolm X encourages the reader to continue thinking about how racism negatively affects America and perhaps also encourages the reader to take action to help “destroy the racist cancer” (p. 389).
- Malcolm X provides closure to the experiences in his life by assigning “credit ... to Allah” and accepting responsibility for any “mistakes” (p. 389), thereby providing for the reader an end point in his development.

① Consider reminding students that while they should write about important moments of their lives in response to the Common Application prompts, their responses do not need to be intense as the scenes from *The Autobiography of Malcolm X*.

Inform students that they should also review their voice and language as they complete their drafts of their narrative essays. Therefore, students should ensure that their voice and use of language is appropriate for their task, purpose, and audience.

Instruct students to Think, Pair, Share about the following question:

How might your task, purpose, and audience inform the voice and language you plan to use in your conclusion?

💬 Student responses may include:

- Because the audience is a college admissions board examining an application, and the essay should demonstrate strong candidacy, the voice of the conclusion will be thoughtful, concise, and consistent with the rest of the essay.
- Because the audience is made up of professionals on a college admissions board, the language in the conclusion will be precise and formal. However, because the essay is supposed to be personal in nature, the language will not be overly academic. This use of language will show skillful use of advanced vocabulary when appropriate.

Lead a brief whole-class discussion of student responses. Remind students to revise for their use of voice and language as it pertains to their potential audience.

Activity 4: Drafting

50%

Instruct students to discuss in pairs how they will write an essay conclusion that follows from or reflects on what they experienced, observed, or resolved in their essays.

💬 Student responses will vary.

Instruct students to work individually to respond to the following prompt:

Draft a paragraph in response to a Common Application essay prompt, focusing on providing a conclusion that follows from and reflects on what is experienced, observed, or resolved over the course of their essay.

Inform students that they may expand upon their Quick Write prompt from 12.1.1 Lesson 24 or respond to a different Common Application essay prompt.

Remind students to use the 12.1 Narrative Writing Rubric and Checklist to guide their written responses.

▶ Students listen and read the writing prompt.

① Display the prompt for students to see, or provide the prompt in hard copy.

Transition to the independent writing.

💬 See the High Performance Response at the beginning of this lesson.

① Instruct students to keep their personal narratives in a writing journal or folder as a portfolio of their narrative writing throughout the module.

Activity 5: Closing

10%

Display and distribute the homework assignment. Explain to students that part of the daily homework expectation is to read outside of class. The expectation for AIR is that all students find, read, and respond to reading material written at their independent reading level. The purpose of AIR is to have students practice reading outside of the classroom and stimulate an interest and enjoyment of reading.

▶ Students listen.

① AIR is an expectation for all students at all grade levels. An AIR text should be of high interest but also a text that students can easily decode and comprehend. Give students a few days to find the correct text.

Explain to students that they need to find an appropriate text (or “just the right book”). Suggest different places where students can look for texts, including but not limited to the local or school library,

electronic books, classroom library, or home library. As the year progresses, students are held accountable for their reading in a variety of ways.

- ▶ Students listen.
- ① Because Unit 3 of this module focuses on writing a narrative essay, consider encouraging students to read a selection of essays for their AIR texts over the remainder of this module. For example, students could read Chang Rae Lee’s “Coming Home Again,” Maya Angelou’s “Wouldn’t Take Nothing for My Journey Now,” or Annie Dillard’s “The Chase” for the remainder of Module 12.1.
- ① In addition to class discussions about AIR texts, consider other methods of holding students accountable for AIR. Ideas for accountability include reading logs, reading journals, posting to a class wiki, peer/teacher conferencing, and blogging.

For homework, instruct students to begin to look for an appropriate text for their AIR. Students should have their text by 12.1.2 Lesson 4.

- ▶ Students follow along.

Homework

Look for an appropriate text for your Accountable Independent Reading.